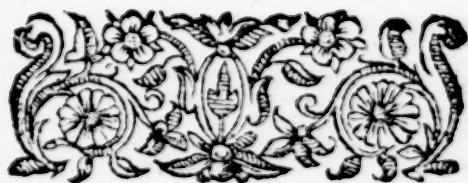


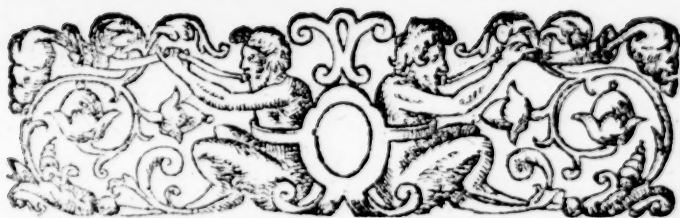
THE NINTH part of the Mirrour of Knight-hood,

Being the fourth Booke of the
third part thereof:

Wherein is declared, the high and noble actes of
the sonnes and nephewes of the Noble Emperour
Trebacius, and of the rest of the renoumed Princes and
Knights, and of the high cheualrie of the gallant
Ladies: wherein also is treated of the
most cruell warre that euer was in
Greece, with the amorous
euents, and the end
thereof.



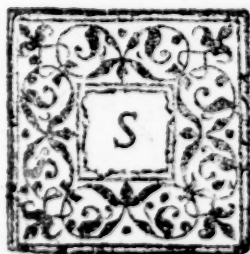
AT LONDON
Printed for Cuthbert Burbie, and are to be sold at his
shop, at the Royall Exchange
1601.



The fourth Booke of the third part
of the Mirrour of Knight-hood, wherein is de-
clared, the high and noble actes of the sonnes and
nephewes of the Noble Emperour *Trebacius*, and of the
rest of the renoumed Princes and Knights, and of the
high cheualrie of the gallant Ladyes: wherein is
treated of the most cruell warre that euer
was in *Greece*, with the amou-
rous euent, and the end
thereof.

The first Chapter.

How the Princeesse Rosselia of Rome, being deliuered from
the Inchantment, desired her father to bee reuenged on
Don Heleno, Prince of Dacia; and of that which fol-
lowed thereof.



Many were the harmes receiued of
the princes of the *Greekes*, (most Noble
Lord) that in all the *Pagans* countreys
there was no speech of any thing, but of
revenge, and that, the most cruell that
might be: for those which were grieved,
were so great Monarches, that each of
them determined to inuade *Greece* apart; particularly,
Bembo, who due his pedigree from *Iupiter*, and felt him-
selfe most toucht, seeing the *Greeke* lower to beare away
the spoyle, which were due to his worth and valour.

The fourth booke of the third Part

Well had the Pagan some body else, who like wise was grieved for him. For Proserpina below in her darke kingdom, through the malice which she bare against the Grækes, entreated her beloued Pluto, for aid in the behalf of Bembo, against the Grecians. The infernall prince was so subiect to his wifes request, that he commanded Discord to be called, whom, with the greatest company that possibly might be, he commanded presently to depart, & to leaue neither armes nor lance on end, which should not bee bent against the Grækes: for the Grecians bold attempts were not to be endured. Discord felt it selfe some thing grieved, ever since the time of the venturous Octavius Augustus; for her arme being unable to resist the valour of that yong man, he peaceably possessed the whole world; wherefore it was an easie matter to make her leaue that infernall habitation: she was well accompanied; for with her went Ambition, and Zealously, friend to the blind god, and there went Avarice and the rest of the infernall Furies. Discord sallied, armed at all pieces, in russet armour, with a sword in each hand, & upon her shoulders a bright shining Spirrit; a signe, that as she pardoned none, so would she go in safetie from her enemies, accounting all for such Couetousnes marched with her spectacles, which made all she saw seeme greater, with a monstrous aspect. The first place attempted, was in Morea, against the byzane Epirabio, to the ende y^e in service of his Liciaua he should repaire into Grecia, there nowe to recover that, which before, by his late comming he had lost. They knew how to take so good order, that although the Prince went with his confederates, al the kingdom was in an uprore, to attend the service of their soueraigne Lord. The king of Lituania was already summoned, to the ende that, with the greatest forces that he was able to make, he should draw nere vnto Niquea. Couetousnesse encountred this man, and in such sort ouercame him, that at the instant he beganne to order his people, which were many and well armed.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The faire Lisiana would not stay fro going into Greece; for not a little succeeded for her there: Good friends had they rayled against Grecia, but their chiefest trust remained in the braue Romanes. Wiscond, Couetousnesse and Suspition tooke charge of the Conquest: For the very soule of Rofilia was possessed, seeing her faith so ill rewarded, and that the Dacian had made a scoffe of her. There is no Wiper, which she weth it selfe so cruel, as a faire Ladie doth against him, whom she hath once loued as her soule. Jealousie crossed in the midst, untill she was wholly overcome, forcing her to aske cruell vengeance of her father, for that which the Dacian had committed. They made her to adde thereunto, which was, that the Emperour asking her, whether there past any promise of Marriage: She (beeing blinded with passion) answered her Father, Yea.

Wraath approached in so good a time, that a Wasillike returneth not more wraathfull, then the Romane Emperour Constantius shewed himselfe to her against the Grækes: he presently commanded a Councell to be assembled in this case: there entred therein Arliano, the braue Prince of Alman, whom Dishonour had already overcome, bringing to his minde, the disgrace wherinto Don Heleno the Prince of Dacia had brought him: and as his boyre was the first, and he well disposed thereto, hee gaue his opinion, that by fire and sword, vengeance should be taken. No man gainsaid this passionate yong man. The alarme was speedily given in Rome, and in all the Townes subject thereto.

Whither came the Kings of Zerissa, of Carthage and of Argier, all which were friends to the Romanes.

The king of Rhodes sailed not in this warre. As for the furious Almaine, he thought with his owne people alone to giue battell to the whole world: for he left not in all Alman, neyther high nor low, one man that was able for the warres.

The King of Scotland came with a mightie Hoste, in
A 3 favour

The fourth booke of the third Part

faour of the Romane Empire, for the friendship he had amongst the Daughters. Discoyd was yet of greater power; for it passed into Cibia, leading Reuenge by the hand, where she published the death of their Princes, by the hands of the Dacian Lord in Rome: their death was there already vnderstood, and mourned for.

But those infernall furies knew how to take so good order, that all that whole populous Kingdome was at an instant in an uprore: who had a yonger brother, and the most valiant man in all those kingdomes, called Brundusio the Strong, who although that hee were not a Gyant of his bodie, yet there was no man (how strong soeuer) that was able to resist his force, which yet was not knowne to be borrowed. He speedily began to leuie people, gathering together the Borderers, which were braue Knights, with many proud Gyants, which exceeded two thousand: of other people, the strong Brundusio raysed an hundred thousand fighting men, and with them hee went to ioyne himselfe with the Romanes, carrying sufficient provision for many daies, perceyuing that the warre would be of long continuance. The Emperour at his arriuall receyued him with great ioy, seeming vnto him, that with that people, and the rest which he would leuie, it were a small matter to suboue the whole world: they would not inuade the Grækes, without aduertising them of their departure, deeming that it would bee attributed to their small valour, although it followed a most cruell nauall warre, as that which passed betwene them and the Soldan of Egypt, which would giue them notice, that they were daily to expect them. Herewith was there made a most proud defiance, signed by xii kings, which were ioyned in that confederacie with the mightie Romane, who of himselfe and of his adherents, had leuied aboue foure hundred thousand most ready and expert Soldiers: for amongst them went the fierce Almaines, a people thorough all the world held for valiant. Commandement was giue for the making of many engines for the warres,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and providing of munitions, because they would not every day send for provisions. In such sort was the Roman furnished, that not of Grecia, but of all the world, he made small reckoning, promising his daughter to crown her Emperesse of Constantinople, in despite of all the Grecians. And with this preparation they secretly sent four Crants, in company with a cousin germane of Brundusio, called Coriando, a most valiant knight, & held in the second degree after his strong cousin, with a damsell called Sabina, which knew Don Heleno, for that she had invited him to the Juss, who carried the defiance signed and sealed, knowing what she had to say, as she which was one of the most discret women of the world. The messengers were about to depart, when in the great Palace entered those, which were sent by the Soldan of Niquea, advertised by Lupercio, of that which the infernall furies had gained upon the Roman Prince. There came the brother of the Prince of the Caramants, subject to the Soldan, and two other Princes, which were of Media and of Armenia, who, although they had beene in disgrace with the Soldan, about the sealing of Liriana, as is said in the first booke, the truth being knowne, that they had not been the cause, nor acquainted therewith, he received them into his friendshipp, binding them by new favours, which was, to send them for his Ambassadors to the Court of Rome: They went with such company as was fit for so great Princes, as they were. The King knowing of their coming, with the most principal that were with him, went forth to receive them, taking the King of the Caramants by the hand, to do him the greater honour: they all let them down to heare the Ambassade of so mightie a Monarch as the Soldan of Niquea. As they all expected the Ambassade of the Soldan, the valiant King of the Caramants, making a little reverence, drew out a sealed Letter of credence, and giving it to the great Emperour of Rome, Constantius took it, and with a loud voice a King of Armes read it, which said thus:

The fourth booke of the third Part

*A Letter from the Soldan of Niquea, to the mightie
Emperour of the Romanes.*



Smoriano, Soldan of Niquea, and Lord of the
twelue Kingdomes, euen to the Persian seas
To the great Emperour of Rome, greeting.
So grieuous are the displeasures receiued
(mightie Monarch) of the Greeke Nation,
that knowing thee to haue no lesse cause to
complaine of them, then my selfe, I send to entreat thee,
that we may make this iourney together, to the end that we
may once wholly make an ende wth them, without giuing
them time to take heart; so as not content with their owne
Kingdomes, they may come to bereaue vs of those, which
with the price of our blood we haue purchased. To the bea-
rers hereof thou mayest giue credite, as to my selfe in per-
son, being Princes worthy thereof. The gods haue thee in
keeping, and behold the equitie of our proceedings.

There was no man in all the Hal, which held not Grace
for lost & brought to ruine, seeing so great power assem-
bled & combined together against it. The Emperour com-
manded a Councell to be holden in this case, and being en-
tered into the Hall appointed for the purpose, it was conclu-
ded to satisfie the Soldans demaund, seeing their quarrels
were alike, although his owne forces were sufficient for
that enterprize alone, but with all this, it might be the more
easily perfozmed; and procuring new friends from thence-
forth, whereby, what was gottē, might be the better defend-
ed: for all men held the victorie for certaine. With this re-
solution the Emperour came forth, and told them what in
his Counsell of war was determined. They received much
content, although calling to remēbrance y^e duty they ought
vnto Rosabel: which did much allay and cōle them, seeing it
fitted not the worth of knights to make war against those
which had exposed their persons for their liues & liberty. But
they were not to be blamed, seeing they perfozmed but the
allegeance

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

allegiance, which they ought to their soueraigne Prince.

Four dayes they remayned in Rome, highly feasted in the house of the Almayne Prince Arfiano, who entertained them with such Hospitality as hee was able: for Captaine of the Gallies they nominated him of Almanie; and Brundusio the Strong, for the land; who reioyced thereat in his soule, for the great desire he had to proue himselfe against the Crækes, who then were so renowned. His desire was speedily accomplished, yea, and made him soze that euer he had it: for he mette with a Ladie, who made him to sweat drops of blood.

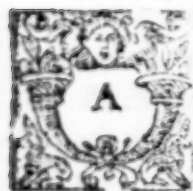
The next day they parted from Rome, with the answer which the Emperour gave them: The whole host of Piquea reioyced at the newes, seeming vnto them that they should assuredly be reuenged. A thousand times would the brave Bembo haue departed, but the Soldan withheld him, untill he could no longer dissemble it, neither how much it grieved him to stay for leaue, taking in his company Brabecante, who with his Barke was arrived at the Port of Piquea: for his aduersarie Brusaldoro was gone into Mauritania, to leuie new forces. The Soldan was very soze for his departure, but Lupercio told him, that he would returne, before they went out of the Port: for the same of Piquea, it was requisite, that those two famous Warriours should depart. They bare new Armes, because they would not be knowne, purposing to passe into Grecia, and to see with pleasure how they triumphed ouer fortune. The fourth day of their navigation, sayling by a winde, they saw a Gallie, comming with great furie, it seemed to them, to be the Flowze of Chualrie: and commanding to wend about, they made towards her, who speedily drew nigh: and seeing the Armes of the Romanes, which the Galley bare, Bembo commanded his Squire, to know who was within. So bearing a flagge of truce, he leaped into the skiffe, and drawing nere to the Galley, he sayd, that hee came from certaine Knights, which much desired to know who

The fourth booke of the third Part

was therein. The valorous Coriandro, who went in company with the foure Gyants & the Damsell, answered him, that therein went certaine Knights of Rome, into Grecia, to defie the Grekes. Such were they pleased with the answer of those Princes, and seeing they held that course, having so good occasion, they said they would accompany them; for no lesser displeasures had they also received of y^e Grekes. It appeared what they were, by their Armes: and so those of Rome also reioyced in their soules, to have so valiant Knights (as they seemed to be) in their company, not seeing the houre to meet thē in Grecia: where we will leave them untill their time, for they will bring in matter enough to talke of.

CHAP. II.

Of that which happened vnto the Prince *Poliphebus* of Tinacria, with the Damsell which caried him into the kingdom of Samogacia.



All those which have weighed the great travell of Imagination, with such sound consideration, and so advisedly, as is requisite, (most noble Prince) have iudged it very great; and not without much reason: for he who will please many, must seeke out matter different: for that which to one is loathsome, another holdeth for pleasant and sweet; and to hit right to please many, is impossible: for even betwene three that are invited, there is great difference in taste: as he saith, who had wel experimented the same, Horace. I say so, because it is not possible in so large an historie as this, which I now have in hand, but to bee tedious, with the diversitie of Chapters: although that if men impatient should be Judges therein, this is the most certaine meane to entertaine that can be.

But of force, seeing I take this way, I must have recourse
to

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

to pardon, and to treat somewhat (leaving so many defiances) of the noble Tinacrian, who with some amorous griefe took his leave of Rosabel, both wondering at what they saw the one in the other: but it made it the lighter, to see the valorous kinsmen which he had, and what it behoued him to doe, to be called brother to so great Princes, and Uncle to such a Knight; for yet to Claridiano he was unknowne. With this conceit he retyred to embarke him, where his Damsel attended his coming, feareful that his long staying might be the occasion, that he should not come in time with his succours; for the most accomplished Lady in all Samogacia, had grounded her hopes vpon him. At his coming, she told him, what paine she endured, and the cause thereof. Great griefe would it be to me, faire Damsel (said the resolute yong man) if my staying should giue occasion of any defect, and I should be very glad if you would shew me your necessitie; for since our coming out of Greece, we haue had no place for it: and seeing that now the Seas and fortune haue giuen it, I should bee very glad thereof. All shall be perfourmed, valorous Prince of Tinacria, seeing the life of her which sent me to seeke, resteth in your hands: and because you shall be the more willing to procure her remedie, harken, and you shall heare the greatest and most unreasonable, that euer was vsed to Lady: for if you be sworne to the lawes of loue, you shall vnderstand how vniustly my Lady is condemned to an infamous death: and vnderstand, that in the great and populous kingdome of Samogacia, there is a King, who for his valour and person is worthe to be King of the vniuersall world; it pleased the Heauens to giue him sonnes and daughters, which is the greatest pleasure in the world, and fortune willing to try his valour, with taking them all away from him, leaving him one onely daughter, of whom it is said, that the summe and full perfection of beautie, and accomplishment of qualities, is included in her shape and goodly proportion: for in her, beautie is no hinderance to her discretion, with both which

The fourth booke of the third Part

graces she is adorned in the highest degree that may be, and so haue they giuen her a name consofmeable to her constitution, (calling her Celibella:) for her beautie seemeth rather heauenly, then of the earth; where, if ought be excellent, yet it bringeth with it some ill-fauoured abatement. With this Lady, the Princes of Podolia fell in loue, Knights to whom nature had shewed her selfe very bountifull, endowing them with what is most desired: she made them equals, so the end that as brothers, and so like in proportion, but that by their names, no man could haue knowne them: the elder was called Daritico of Podolia, and the yonger Rosaner: Both at their comming affected the Kinges faire Daughter, wooing her with many Tiltings and Turneyes, which they caused for her sake, wherein they were both commended in equall degree. As to subiect the mind in these louers cases, is reserved to loue onely, it ordained for the greater euill, that Celibella most affected the yonger, not for that he had more then the other, but that fortune thought it an honourable trophe to triumph of these two louers: with her eyes did this faire Dame giue her beloued gallant to vnderstand, to what estate fortune had brought her: but they had so small hope of being beloued, that notwithstanding that she shewed it with a thousand good countenances, yet he could neuer be perswaded, that she loued him: for as that Lady is the Phoenix of beautie, hee held a fauour from her hand, to be such a thing, as loue it selfe could not deserue, and so they proceeded in their loues a-bie, without acquainting the one the other with the secret of their mindes. It was no small grieue to the Ladie, that Rosaner could not perceiue how well she loued him; and for the Lady to make shew thereof by any signes or other meanes, she would not for any thing in the world, well knowing, how much she should therein prejudice her honour: with the often fauours and publike prayse, which she gaue to whatsoeuer this gallant did, he was partly perswaded that she loued him: but yet he could hardly telque, if fortune would be so fauorable.

At

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

At this instant, wherein Celibella shewed her selfe most affected vnto him, accepting of the endeouours and exployts which Rosaner performed in her service, there was brought to the Court a kinswoman of this Ladies, who was the beginning and ending of all these mishaps: She truly was sayze; for somewhat being of kinne to the Kings daughter, claue to her. As my Lady was young, and a nouice in loue, she was of opinion, that it was much ease to disclose it: some others are of the same opinion: but for my part, I bitterly condemne it: for there is no greater grieke, then to reueyle the secrets of the heart, whereby the knowne may be touched, and from whence nothing is drawne, but the Lady to subiect her selfe to the party to whome she reueyleth her secret, who also (peradventure) will hold her for moze light in discovering it, then for being in loue. This hapned sometimes. The vnwarie Lady trode these reasons vnder foot, & told all to Felina, for so was her kinswoman called. The discovery of this secret serued not to yeeld any ease to the Lady, but to incite her kinswoman to fall in loue with the Prince Daristeo, and that in so good earnest, that she speedily made it appeare. But as hee was so engoulfed in the loue of Celibella, he tooke no notice with what affection Felina shewed her selfe to be his. The Lady Princesse perceyued it well, and receyued no small pleasure therein, imagining that therewith Daristeo would leaue to bee so enamored of her, for the beauty of her kinswoman was well worthy to be beloued. There were often meetings in the hall betwene these foure louers: but I know not who is able to agree them, for with my tongue I am not able; for neyther partie left to leue, though it were not accepted. It appeared in their eyes: for the two brothers fixed theirs vpon the Princesse, and she with new spoyles beholdeth her Rosaner, making her eyes fat with beholding him. But her cousin being touched to the quick, with apparant signes giueth testimony of her loue, in beholding her Daristeo, in whom she onely delighteth, and from whom she draweth

B 3

her

The fourth booke of the third Part

her life; and although she were but a novice in that occupation, the carelesnes wherewith the prince answered her, put her in such care, as I thinke no body hath bene more carefull: for from that time forward, her grieve was such, as her cousin was very soye soe. This amorous passion did so much pinch her, that she knew no meanes how to remedie it, neither saw any possibilitie; for the prince neuer took any regard of the favours which she shewed him: which was worse then death to this afflicted Lady, who growing desperate, would have taken any course for remedy, although somewhat dishonourable.

As the king loved these Princes, holding them in place of sonnes, although he had not yet determined upon whom he would bestow his daughter Celibella: so had they opportunity to discourse with the lady, who seeing that her father was well pleased therewith, forbore it not, making shewe that to be the cause, concealing the truth. Rosaner being the man who wore the palme, his brother could neuer imagine it, thinking with himselfe, that if the Ladies affection were guided by reason, he was rather to be beloved then his brother: but love led it another way, without respect of the large kingdome whereof he was prince; for to him which perfectly loveth, it never representeth the qualities of the thing beloved: but only what is in self, which otherwise were but a fayned love: and so the Lady loved the fortunate young man, not with a little enuy of love, seeing what was enjoyed.

The passionate cousin was she, who sped worst in this businesse; for although that the Princeesse loved not Darisco, yet he was never perswaded that she loathed him: for the discreet Lady bestowed some favours upon him, which were a meane to entertaine the Prince, and she held himselfe happy, to obtaine so much at her handes. But poor Felina neither perceived any shew that she was beloved, neither was there any end in understanding her ill hap in being not regarded by him, whom she loved better then her selfe. In this meane while, the braue Furandro, haughty
sonne

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

sonne to the king of Podolia (which hee gat in his yong
 yeres, vpon a most strong woman in the mountaines Rifei)
 came to y^e court to seeke these 2. brothers: he proued so fierce
 and valiant, (that they say) that in valour he doeth exceede
 the great god Mars; for there is no knight, no, although they
 be ten, nay twenty, that are able to keep y^e field against him,
 neither any Gyant, how fierce soeuer he be: he is beloued of
 the common people; for hee is not of that condition, which
 such men commonly are of, which exceede all other in force
 and strength of body: but he is rather courteous and a great
 friend & sauourer of Ladies, although that in this occasion
 (I maruaile not) he haue shewed himselfe cruell to Cehel-
 la. Much did the princeesse reioyce at his comming, & all the
 whole court; for the feastes were renewed, wherein it is in-
 credible & not to be belieued, what that furious knight did:
 for he was saine at one blow, to strike downe both horse and
 man; all men gaue him the prize for valiant. The king re-
 spected him according as was reason, for his valour & good
 gouernment; for that was it, which most aduanced him a-
 boue all others. All this was nothing, neither the assurance
 which shee saw of her paine, to cause Felina to giue ouer her
 determination, but rather increase it, attempting one of the
 boldest & most presumptuous enterprises of the world, from
 whence could ensue no other thing, but that which followed:
 for unable to endure to see her self so little respected, she adue-
 tured to say vnto the prince Daristeo, y^e the princeesse would
 expect him y^e night in the garden, to confer with him of mat-
 ter of importance. There could nothing happē more pleasing
 to y^e infortunate prince, then such a message; for as it was a
 thing vnloked for, now holding him selfe assured thereof, he
 held himself y^e most happy mā in the world: he held y^e day for
 as long as a mans life: he thought the night fled from him: eu-
 ery minute he held for a yere, such was his desire to meet y^e la-
 dy princeesse. The subtil Felina, seeing her plot to take effect,
 took a suite of Cehellias, which did best set out her beauty,
 & clad her self therewith: & as y^e heauens would not frustrate

The fourth booke of the third Part

What she had exployted, so could not the gallant see, whether it were the Princess, or she. But hee coming into the garden, lesse armed she was needfull, went to the window, so passionate, that he knew her not. The cruell damsell counterfeyted her speech, and sayd, I haue hitherto, Oh prince of Rodolia, dissembled how much I haue loued you, for some respects which haue forced me thereto: but seeing your great deserts, I could not forbear (holding it vntrust) but to impart my faith vnto you, and to say, that you are more beloued, then all the men in the world. As he should haue made an answer, in an alley among those trees, (silently armed) came Rosaner: for as hee was wise, so would hee not come into so suspicious a place, carelesly and in danger of his person: he had besyetime there spokē with the Princess, and seeing a knight there, and that shee was talking with him, well may a man iudge what he felt, who held himselfe beloued, and with so great affection: hee was come somewhat nēre, when the vnlucky Daristeo said, My deare Lady, I could neuer imagine, that the loue which I haue euer borne you, could haue bene so highly rewarded, neither can it yet sinke into my head, that I could euer deserue so great a good, as thus to see you to bestow such and so particular fauours, which wholly is to be attributed to your generosity, more then to my loue or desert, although y I might hope much: for I beleue, that no man euer loued with greater affection then I. The cause hereof is the little confidence which I repose in my owne deserts and worthinesse, to attain to so great a good, as to bee beloued by your beauty, neyther can I leaue to consider the high estate you hold, without vnderstanding who he was, or imagining any thing of his brother: for now Fortune would needs shewe her mutability against these two Louers: with the greatest suddennesse of the world, the beloued Rosaner ranne vpon his deare brother, not knowing who hee was. Fewer Eagle turned with greater liuelynesse, then did Daristeo against his brother; and as they were very ballant, so began there betwene

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

betwene them a most cruell battaile, but the elder had the worser, not through want of force, but of armes & fortune. Although the other had received some hurts, yet they were but small. The furious lover would haue close with Daristeo; but therein he sought his owne death: for the desperate yong man being deadly wounded, before hee gaue up the ghost, reuenged himselfe, by bereauing life from his most deare brother Rosaner: for stumbling forwards by reason of his wounds, he thrust out his sword arme, and by chance hit him right in the face. The elder brother had not yet so much lost his memorie, but that he followed the blow, until the point of the sword pierced through his brothers braines.

These faithfull louers came to fall iust together, losing with one onely blow, their liues, ielousies, and loue, and the greatest good of the worlde, which was the sayre Lady. The unhappy Felina stood beholding this battaile, untill that she saw them fall: then sorrowing their death, with her out-cries shee disqueted all the Palace, and falling doونه in the euill which shee had done, without dissembling it, neither had she strength to auoid the punishment, she her selfe being her owne executioner; for even in the same attyre as shee stood, she cast her selfe headlong out at the window, falling upon her head betwene them, and in their death kept them company. The greatest part of the people in the Palace, ran into the garden, and the king with the furious Forrinder; who when he saw the cruell happe of his two brothers, was likely to haue lost his wits, which was the cause of altering his condition, imagining with himselfe, that they were dead through Celibellas occasion. Some others did suspect it, to see the brotherly death betwene two louers.

It caused extreme sorrow in all the court: for the king shewed himselfe very sorrowfull (as was reason) to see so pitifull a chance. What the Princeesse did in her chamber, I would rather that some other body would report it, then I which saw it. A thousand times would she haue ended with one death, y many deaths which she should endure through

The fourth booke of the third Part

the absence of her Rosamer, which she beganne presently to
 shew: for the company of her damselfs was displeasing vnto
 her, wherein she was wont chiefly to delight: the sight
 of knights and gallants was loathsome, and their discour-
 ses yskome; so as her whole delight was to be solitarie, re-
 ceiving some pleasure in mee, discarding of her cruelty which
 fortune had shewed her. There was nothing but did put her
 in minde of her knight; and to remember him, it was death
 to her: and having no more comfort but what shee reaped
 from her teares, which were so many which she shed, for
 that lamentable mischance, that it bereaved her of a great
 part of her beauty. All the Court was in an uproare; the
 king in making search for her murderers, could take no rest,
 so as in the citie there was nothing but suspicion and mour-
 ning. The most valiant Furiauder disturbed all, forgetting
 what he had promised when he took the othe of knighthood,
 that hee should neuer take part against any Lady; for as
 eech of his brothers had discovered vnto him part of his loue,
 and seeing how much they were tormented, and how care-
 lesse she was thereof, which was not for want of affection,
 but rather of discretion, he fully perswaded himselfe, that to
 be rid of their importunities, she had procured their deaths;
 he conceived it with such apprehension, that nothing could
 dissuade him, neither to see the sorrowfull signes which the
 princeesse gave for the death of the two brothers: for this fu-
 rious young man had determined what he would do, & would
 draw his comfort for the losse of the two princes brothers,
 from the death of a lady, whom to behold, I know not who
 but would haue betured his life for her. It hapned (most va-
 liant prince) that one day the king being despiter, for that
 he could not be certified concerning the death of these princes,
 as he had newly dined, the fierce Furiauder, armed at all pieces
 in blacke, of bright and shining Steele armour, without any
 helme, saving onely in the midst of his shield hee bare re-
 venge most lively painted. Being thus furnished, his com-
 ming into the Hall, made al those which beheld him, change
 countenances.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

counsauntes, who with the fiercenesse wherewith nature had endoweb him, making a little reuerence, and a little listening by his bisez, said with a hoarse voyce, (for yet I haue not forgotten, what feare I was in to heare him) mightie king of Samogacia, notwithstanding that I am of opinion that my coming, & in this maner, will not a little offend you, the great grieffe which I endure to see the most dearly beloued princes of the world slaine in y^e palace, both enforce me a thing, even the heauens should lament for so briske a death: y^e gods doe knowe how much it grieueth me to come in this maner, considering how much my deare brothers were bounde vnto thee: but the feare that I am in to returne againe to Rodolia to y^e king my father, who sent me to seek the, hath forced me, seeing that nothing can be done against that which the heauens haue decreed: and to the end that the common people shall not say, that they dyed, and that no man would reuenge their death; and seeing the many certaine signes which in their life, and since I haue perceiued, I say, that I will maintaine against any one, two, three, or foure knights together, with my horse and armes, that they were slaine by order from your daughter the princeesse Celi-bella: which from this day, to the end of 4. moneths, I will maintaine, because the princeesse shall vnderstand, that I desire not to preuaile by reason of the shortnes of the time; but that she may haue time to send whither & for whom she will, to defend her honour, so as shee may not be accounted murderer of princes.

The swinish knight held his peace, and there was no man so valiant, that durst so much as moue. The king stood somewhat in a doubt, pondering on the weight of the case, and at length resolved, and I beleue hee was forced (seeing how much Furiauder was feared) to admit the challenge, and so he caused the princeesse to be called, which God knowes, was so troublesome enough for their deaths; she imagined straight what the matter was; and so halfe amazed, with she came.

The fourth booke of the third Part

The king propounded vnto her the Pagans occasion: she could not answer (for I thinke no body could) vntill the qualme was past, which had almost bereaued her of her life, and then she answered with so great stomake, as made mee wonder; it was the equitie of the cause and the great wrong that was done her, did thus animate her thereto, saying, that it was a lye, & that she would take such order as should be requisite, to recover the honor whereat she was thus robbed with so great treachery, she being innocent of the death of those Princes, but seeing the one failed, she was to seeke who might giue account of her honour. Her father the king commanded her presently to be committed to prison, because he would shew himself a Iudicer, notwithstanding it was against his owne daughter whom he so dearly loued, and of whose life depended his own: for it was y^e kings law, held inuolably, (although very rigorous) that whatsoeuer person were accused of an offence committed within the palace, that doeth not either of himself, or some knight for him answer the challenge, within the time limited in the challenge, shall be condemned to be burnt; the most cruell thing that euer was heard.

Then came your same (valorous prince) flying through Samogacia, with the highest pitch that euer knight enjoyed. The poore distressed Lady was of opinion (as in deed it is true) that she could not repaire with more reason and assurance vnto any then to you, and so she sent mee to seeke you. I came from the citie with that care, which a matter of such importance as this is, doeth require, and vnderstanding of the great feasts which were in Grecia, I was of opinion to finde you there among your brothers; for by the way I vnderstood, that you are sonne to y^e great Emperour Trebatius, with whose name y^e whole world is replenished, & seeing it was my hap to meet you in so good company, I am y^e gladdest woman in y^e world, assuring my self, y^e bringing you, I bring life to y^e princeesse, & although y^e we haue bin hindered in our sayling, with tempests, yet y^e wind being fauourable, we

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

wee shall (I doubt not) come in time to Samogaria, (for there yet remaine twentie daies, before the challenge bee expired:) and this is (Sir Knight) the cause that hath moued me to take the paines to seeke you, and I beleue it shall not bee in vaine; for seeing the wrong that is done to the Princes, you will not suffer it to procede; for the fame of your valour importeth no lesse, but that you employ it in fauour of those which are distressed, as is this Ladie.

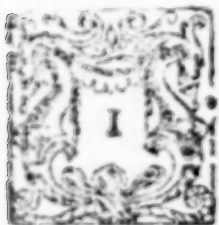
The lady hauing ended her story with some teares which fell from her eyes, remembryng how much it would grieve the Princesse seeing her long stay, & valorous Triack was herie pittifull, especially in the behalfe of women, holding it for no honour which was gotten against them; and so he answered, I would that the heauens had giuen me farre greater force (faire damsell) to the end that your businesse might be the better assured, although hauing so much equitie on her behalfe, I hope that it shall suffice to yeld that contentment, as such an excellent Ladie as she is, doth deserve, against any that without reason shall procure her grieve, and I refuse not the houre, to mate that knight of so little discretion.

Great comfort did those couragious speeches yeld to the Damzell which the Prince vied: the weather was fauourable vnto them; for foure daies before the time was expired, they landed nere the Citie of Adibia, (for so is it called) with great pleasure to them both, to see themselves so nere; she to her soueraigne Ladie bringing so good a returne; and he, which much desired to shew all his valour in defence of the Princesse: and but that it was onely his, it had neuer bene accomplished with that good hap; for the Pagan was one of the most strong men in the world. The day and a halfe did they spend in comming to the Citie, which was full of strangers, although neuer a one so valorous, as to answer the challenge, notwithstanding that Furander came daily to the hills. They passed the night in a grove of poplar trees, where, what happened vnto them, you shall heare in the next Chapter.

The fourth booke of the third Pare

CHAP. III.

Of that which hapned to the Prince of Tinacria, with a Knight much affected to Celibella, and how he ended the battell for her.



I should bee past midnight, (most Noble Lord) when a Knight with his lamentations did awake the valiant Poliphebus, who a little from him had laid him down to sleep. The sonne of the cruel Garrioflea, late vpon the greene grasse, and being free from loue, he harkned, and getting which way the complaint came, fully armed, not knowing what might follow, for he would not goe vnprouided: he saw by the Moone light, which shined very clere, at the foot of a great Oake, a great Knight stretched all along vpon the ground, richly armed in blew armour, wrought all ouer with many knots of gold, hee seemed to the Tinacrian to be some Knight of good account. In his shield, which he had fastened to his necke, was painted loue with a merry countenance, and fortune in the skirt, with y^e most piercing aspect, that euer was scene, with these letters vnderwritten.

Fortune being so contrary,
With angrie valour taking part,
Though constant loue be on my side,
Yet nothing can assure my heart.

The Knight seemed to be in a trance, seeing he moued not, as indeed he was: for the griefe to lose the faire Celibella, had put him out of his wits. But when he came againe to himselfe, with a sigh, being out of breath, he began to say, O Fortune, with how many triales dost thou shew thy mutabilitie, trying my heart with so many troubles! If I did imagine (blind Goddess) that I had euer bene rebellious against thee, that I had not respected thee, that I had not put my trust in thee, that I had doubted of thy power, and of what thou art; I should haue taken this rigorous touch for a reward for my patience. But seeing that without any
occasion

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

occasion then wilt thou to thy selfe my greatest enemy, I ha-
 ving giuen thee no iust cause thereof, I cannot so beare to
 complaine, and onely of thy mutabilitie, saying that with
 what, or for what, thou hast brought me to the point, that
 nothing but death onely can yeeld mee ease. I cowardly
 heart, saying that for being so, thou suffrest her to die, which
 might giue thee life, & in discreete succour thee! Warden mee,
 worthy Princeesse; for now I see the iniurie, which with my
 cowardise I haue done thee, in not daring to oppose my life
 in thy behalfe: and saying that so many wayes I see it lost,
 and that now sayling with thee, the remainder will be worse
 then death it selfe: the Gods defend that I see thy vnjust
 death: but rather y^e I with iustice bereaue my soule thereof:
 for in so long staying, I wrong the love I beare thee: and
 herewith, in a diuellish furie, hee snatcht vp his sword, and
 lifting vp his brasse plate, hee would haue thrust it into his
 owne bodie, saying, Herewith, soveraigne Ladie, I make
 amends, for not undertaking the battell, although that I
 had seen my death before mine eyes; by how much more
 then, being for thee, it might haue bene accounted life.
 The Timorian took hold of him, and before that hee could
 effect his diuellish intent, he seized vpon his sword, which
 he pluckt out of his hands, saying, O desperate Knight,
 and with committing so vilde an act, wilt thou sodder by
 that which thou hast done against the Ladie, whom thou so
 much lovest? The Wyre came to himselfe, who was Prince
 of Prussia, a countrey very nere adioyning to that of the
 most faire Celibella, and beholding that Knight so tall and
 so wel armed, being perswaded y^e he saw his remedy, he said
 vnto him, Doe me not Sir Knight, so great displeasure, but
 suffer me to satiffie with my life, that which I haue com-
 mitted against the most faire Lady, that the world containeth,
 saying that undertaking the battell for her, although
 with the losse of my life, I might haue done her particular
 service; but being against so furious a knight, with very co-
 wardise, I lost y^e which I might haue gotten, although I had

The fourth booke of the third Part

remained without life: and seeing that now to hold it, it will be to my further hurt, give me leave to proceede according to my determination, if you will not that I make a larger payment for the error which I haue committed which was the greatest that eu'r Knight committed, against her whom he so loued. Leave off your so much sorrow (said the warlike Timaerian) for men are not bound to undertake matters about their force; for in such case you of your part are excused. What cannot bee, said the Pagan, who owning his life, and would not venture it for her, in any danger hold doubtfull so euer the successe thereof were, cannot be excused, & therefore you cannot venie me the wrong that I haue done my Ladie. Notwithstanding all this, I will not yeeld that any such crueltie bee committed in my presence, neither is it well done, but ill (you see the end of this aduenture) to torment your selfe in such sort, as may put you in such despaire as this, which dooth so much disgrace the valour which appeareth in your person. And because I come from farre about this business, and to fight for this Ladie, I pray you be satisfied, and hold me companie to the Citie, where I will trie my lot with Furiauder.

Who can presume, Sir Knight, (said the Pagan) to come into that Citie where hee hath committed so great a fault, such as the like hath not beene seene: I haue not the power, neither can any thing make me thereto able. It hath not beene so great (said the Timaerian) but it may be amended, if fortune fauour vs. The Prince told him so many things, that in the end hee offered to hold him companie to the end that he might see the forces wherewith hee should fight for Celibella. By this time it was day, and so they toke their horses, and with the damsell and the Timaerian his squire, they toke the way towards the Citie, and by the way hee knew that this Knight was the Lord and King of Prussia, where he fel in loue with the Princesse Celibella, although he neuer knew the necessitie wherein shee was, untill hee came with his armes onely disguised to the Court, to see
her.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

her, which for her beaultie was extolled through his whole Dominion: and coming thither, he understood of Furlander his challenge: But the fame of his valour was such, that hee durst not undertake the battell for the Princesse, notwithstanding that hee loved her, much more then his owne soule: and falling into consideration of what hee had done, going forth of the Citie, he meant to haue slayne himselfe. The Timacrian recomforted him the best that hee could, and he did not a little preuaile, being the most fearefull yong man in the world. They arined, when the King was newly risen from the table, and had that day invited the famous Furlander, purposing with some good reasons to haue dissuaded him from that attempt, being very sorrowfull, for that he persevered in his determination, he saw nere at hand the certaine death of his dearely beloved daughter: for hee continued so obstinate in his vnjust challenge, that nothing could withholde him from his damned resolution. The two Princes came in, whose presence gaue no small ioy to all that were in the hall, principally the Timacrian: for no man had a greater grace in his countenance. In ouer-looking the hall with iudiciall eyes, the sonne of great Trebatius doing some reuerence, said, God saue the great King of Samogacia, and graunt thee that peace which thy personage deserueth; this Knight and I came from farre countries, onely to defend the wrong, as we haue understood, which is done by a certaine Knight vnto thy Daughter; and casting lots, whether of vs should first enter into battell for her, it fell to me, which gaue mee no small content, to doe thy daughter this seruice, and performe that, whereto by the law of Knighthood I am bounden; and therefore you may commaund her to be called, and wee shall see, whether shee will commit the equitie of her cause into my hands. The Goos requite thee the band, (Sir Knight) wheroin you haue bound me, with offering your person to such danger as this present, which is one of y greattest that you haue scene, which might be ended by some other means,

The fourth booke of the third Part

meanes, if this Knight would, who is the defendant to the challenge: but saying it must goe as fortune will appoint, there is no more to be done, but to come to the battell, which the Gods graunt may end, according to the equitie of the cause. To be of the Princesses part, (mightie King) hath compelled me to come, answered the Timaerian. The fierce Pagan being somewhat moved, rose up, saying, I would not, Sir Knight, that you should haue so great confidence in the Ladies innocencie, but that you should come so well furnished with forces, as are needfull for the battell, and so you may take this Knight to helpe you; for my challenge doth extend to foure. It shall not need, said the sene of Trebacious, to haue any more companie, the equity of my cause doth giue me: for if I be in the right, my person will iustice for a greater matter; if in the wrong, little will great forces preuaile against iustice; and I much desire, that such a Knight, which is so famous as you are, before so many people, should not make shew, to trust more in the strength of your arme, then in the equitie of your cause; which most commonly sayling, valour is of little effect. The furious Pagan being therewith offended, answered, saying, I thought not, Knight, that my curtesie had animated thee to be so proud: but because thou maist know, that I will not passe the time in words, being more fit to vse blades, we will no longer deferre the battell. As he had ended his answer, came the most faire Celibella, all clad in mourning attire, which did greatly increase her beautie. The Timaerian had neuer seene greater beautie; for there were few in the world that did excell her. Her father told her at her coming, how that Knight undertooke the battell for her. The faire Princess knew him straight, by his device of a bough which he bare in his shield, & that hee was the man for whom she had sent. She presently gaue him authoritie, with greater contentment, then can be spoke, although y when she remembred the unfortunate Princes, her most pleasing thoughts were watered with teares. These two balliant Warriours made

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and belay, for y^e fierce Tinacriā taking his leave of the King,
 went into the lists, taking with him the Prince of Prussia,
 who stood to looke on. On the other side of the lists, presently
 came in the valorous Euriander, much people accompany-
 ing him although there was no bodie that would he should
 winne the palme, or weare those armes, wherein hee had
 accused the Princesse, who was set vpon a scaffold with a
 sufficient gard; where she prayed to her false Goos, that her
 knight might obtaine the victorie, seeing y^e in so iust a cause
 he vnderooke the battell. Face to face stood these two war-
 riors, whose looks and gestures were such, that he which
 stood farthest off, did scarcely account himselfe in safetie, at
 the giuing of the fearefull signe; they drew with more swift-
 nesse, then an arrow flieth: In the midst of the place,
 was appointed the course of their Carriere, making a grea-
 ter sound in their meeting, then if two hills had runne toge-
 ther: they bowed not in their saddles, with the force of the
 lances, which brake like haires, whose splinters flew so high,
 that they were out of sight. These two rare men in valour,
 turned their horses with their swords in their hands, & ap-
 proching the one iust to the other, they gaue so fearefull
 blowes, as would haue beaten a rocke in pieces; eche of
 them could testifie his aduersaries force, they redoubled the
 second with greater courage then dexteritie: either of them
 feeling his owne blood in his mouth, they began to make be-
 nefite of the nymblenesse, wherewith they were endued,
 closing, and beating by the blowes, in such exquisite maner,
 that Mars himselfe could not haue done the like. The val-
 iant Horse spurring his horse, thinking by swiftnesse to get
 advantage, charged, carryng his sword firme, with the
 point forwarde: The great Tinacrian was well a-
 ware thereof; there was neuer seene any Eagle more
 swift then hee in giuing blowes, and making his horse
 to giue a bound, hee passed befoze the Horse, and tur-
 ned him so sobainly, that hee wondered at the Sonne of
 Trebacio: they came to ioyne, and the Horse would giue

The fourth booke of the third Part

the first blow; hee did it, which was moze swift then the wind, and strake him vpon the rich Helmet, whose fineness warranted his life, for otherwise hee had clouen him to the saddle; it sounded like a bell, and therein the Tinacrian saw a thousand starres in the skies, he fell vpon his horse necke, and the Horse doubled his blow; but if hee had giuen the third, the battell had been ended: for it came with such force, that he was quite senselesse: he had closed with him, if he had not sene, that moze furious then a Basiliske hee returned with his sword aloft. There was no man in that place, that yalued not the victorie for the Wagan; the Ladies fainting confirmed the same: for losing her Rosall colour, it became like snow, seeing the blowes which her Knight had receyued, who was nothing discouraged therewith, but casting his shield at his backe, grinding his teeth against the other, he assailed the Horse, giuing him so mightie a blow vpon his helme, that he left him at that part vnarmed, charging him so vehemently, that there mist but little to haue laid him in the dust: hee tooke hold of his horse necke. The Tinacrian ioynd with him, accounting the victorie for his owne, and with both his handes gaue him another blow, which imprinted his sword in his flesh, wounding him in the shoulour: as the Horse settled him selfe, (losing no occasion) he gaue him two thrusts, one after another, which set him on the arson of his saddle, griping him so, that it seemed, he had striken him quite out of breath. The Wagan advanced him selfe, & closing with the Tinacrian, he thought to preuaile by grasping with him; but he found the sonne of Garofilia as fast in his saddle, as if he had bene a rock: they tugged so hard together, y they both were out of breath; their horses stood moze fast in y ground, with struing in their wyes, then the most mowed roots. With one turne, they fell both to the earth. The Wagan had a mishap, because one of his feet hung in the stirrep: which if the Tinacrian had perceiued in time, he had slaine him: yet notwithstanding, before he could get it out, with his dagger he gaue him 2. cruel stabs, & left

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

left the marks in the flesh, which the Pagan held for mortal; and so turning to his enemy, who as he was higher then he, he lifted him from ground, caryng him in such sort, that the Watchelour had liſſer haue bene deadly wounded; hee did his best to encounter his aduersary, and so recover footing, whence twiſe wheeling about, they lurled together with greater force then a Coluerine shot, they gat to their weapons with such speed, that al those which were present, wondred thereat. I beleue, quoth the king, turning him selfe towards the principall of those which were with him, that in these two warriours, is disciphered the flower of chivalrie.

No pleasure can be compared to that which Celibella receiued, seeing how well her knight had acquitted himself; for on foot none of her brothers could do better: and yet oftentimes fighting with them, hee made them to doubt of the battaile. Some aduantage was perceiued in him: for striking with great rage, the Tinacrian happily crossing inwards and standing very firme on his right foote, he lopned hitting right on the ſlee of the haunt-hyce, the trenchant sword rebounded to the hollow, entring a third part in at the brest. The Pagan feeling the wound, & thinking it had bene to the death, gaue a signe thereof: for with the very paine of the wound he went crosse-leg'd, and was readie to fall: the furious yong man holpe him, doubling another blow vpon his helme, with so great might, that hee made him set his knees to the ground. There is no serpent so wyathfull, which can turne so, as Furiander returned against the sonne of Garohlea, and with the raging smart which he felt of his wound, throwing his shield to the ground, he went with such fury, with his sword in both hands, that he made more then foure lose all their colour in their faces; the blowe was with lesse heed then wisdom required to beare; for it had breake the last that euer the Tinacrian had receiued, he hit him so right vpon the gilded creſt, that hee made him to see a thousand starres in his helme, and he charged his furious sword with such force, that he made him to

The fourth booke of the third Part

As both his hands and feet were growed. The impatient
 Spoke his words with another, no less then the first. he
 had stretched him out for a prey: according as he was ströy,
 so he sudden'ly pluckt from him his brayn-brace: and Lin-
 gando saith, that he striketh his shield from him. Quales-
 nor save him, but that hee did cut the greatest part of his
 Poloyons.

If hee had bene able to haue giuen the third, I
 knowe not how this Batchelour had escaped from the bat-
 taile: but as the wound fell upon that side where his heart
 was, it made him breathles: so as hee could not thence-
 forth proceed in his furie, giuing the Batchelour place to
 rise, there was no helpe for the armour against the blowe
 which he gaue, so hee cleane caried along the creuice of
 the helme, and a piece of the head withall.

Well might the sonne of the great Trebacio haue o-
 uercome him, but hee was a Knight, who in deed did more
 affect the worth which the Pagan had shewen, saying thus
 vnto him:

I doe much desire, Sir Knight, that this battaile
 may rest in that estate, wherein it is, for I see you are
 dangerously and sore wounded, very nere vnto death,
 and in going further, any your euill fortune whatsoeuer,
 would much grieue me; for I doe neither desire your
 death nor overthrow, but perpetuall amitie and friend-
 ship, which from henceforth I offer vnto you, swearing
 and protesting vnto you, that you must intencionally be-
 hold and maintaine the wrong against a Ladie, who in
 apparant theme hath much sorowed and lamented the
 death of your brothers.

When the generositie (most noble Prince) is so discoue-
 red, & proceedeth from a gallant breast, there is no Aspique
 so fierce and cruell, but will bee therewith appeased: he
 had not bene Prince of Tinacria, neither could that haue
 bene the country of your most noble Lordship, if therein had
 not bene beene so rare a good, as was this.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

And so this valiant Prince found himselfe bound, with the reasons which the Prince offered, saying, nothing could happen to me so well as this, my life and reputation being in such danger. I would (valorous men at Armes) gladly in exchange, to purchase the friendshipp of such a knight as you are, and seeing it to be honest to see, and that of my obstinate contending there can nothing growe bute mee but perpetuall infamy and dishonour, I doe from henceforth bitterly grieve over the battaile, and finally let it intertie the Princeesse, condemning my courthight and blinde will, seeing it was not possible in so perfect a laboure, to write any thing which should so much disgrace it.

When the prince of Persia take the same league and bond of friendship concluded betwixt him and the King of Castile, he put spurs to his horse, and took his way towards his countrey with all the speed that might be, where he passed his time in great heaviness and sorow, having achieved no adventure.

The Judges were here at hand, hearing what the Pagan said, which yielded such contentment to the whole Court, that no man is able to expresse it: but it may be better imagined, then any way described.

The hidden fire in the scattered powder (my sweete valigne Lady) hath not so much power, neither is it of such effectuall force, as is settled love, to shew what it is, and what it is able to doe.

What man in the world could have confirmed a peace betwixt two Princes so much at variance, and with so great reason?

Who could have brought it to passe, that Celibella, the beauty of the world, should have bene any whit so joyfull or grined, for the spitefull Pagan turis (though never so deadly) her receiving them, in fighting to disgrace and confound her?

It cannot be imagined, that so great an alteration as this, can be attributed unto any other thing but to love. As thus

The fourth booke of the third Part

Was more favourable vnto him, then he was well aware of: for they were not yet gone forth of the field, when twenty Knights clad in mourning attyre, came into the Campe, which seeing him come forth of the lists afo'e, came to him to kisse his hands, and to acknowledge him for their Prince and soueraigne Lord; for the king had so heavily taken the death of his two sonnes, that the sorrow thereof bereaued him of his life; and he left no heire but this mightie Furian-der. Al the principal of the Realme were of opinion, to giue the crowne vnto him, and to accept him for their king, seeing his valour deserved no lesse, but was much more worthy. The valorous Pagan did not a little sorrow the death of his father, and the sonne of the most cruell Garosilea kept him company, mourning with him for the one, and reioy- zing with him for the other.

A newe life and a long, answered the Pagan, I would the heauens would grant me (noble man at Armes) to the ende, to acknowledge howe great a good it is to bee your friend; but such as it shall please the gods to bestow vpon me, assure your selfe it shall be to doe you service, as he who is no lesse indebted vnto you, then for his life and honour.

It yeeldeth me not that ioy and solace (saide the Timacrian) Soneragine prince, to see howe gentle fortune hath shewed her selfe vnto me, to gette such a friend (as I hope in the gods you will bee,) as to see with what affection, and in how good earnest you haue claimed my offer, so as if I shall be able to equall my desires with my desire, none shall know himselfe a more faithfull friend then I.

By this time, the king with the whole court, was descended to receiue and entertaine the Timacrian, who had already determined in himselfe, to entreat the king to receiue Furiander for his sonne. In approching, with his Armes displayed, he came to the faire yong man, saying Although it were for nothing else, most valiant knight, but to say that in my armes I embrace the flowre of cheualry, I hold the troubles well imployed, whereunto this Prince hath brought

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

brought vs. The faire Poliphebus wel discharged the part of the Poete, saying. It was a woorthy matter, mighty king, so to considered, in how manifest a eäger your daughter was; but herein appeareth the noblenesse of your generous breast, that you not onely pardon what is done, with the passion to see such princes to sayle, but you are now to receive him for a friend, seeing his valour deserueth, that all the princes of the world should hold him for such: greater errours then these which may be pardoned, so venturous a knight undertaking the same.

By this time was come the kings daughter, so sayze, that I know not any man of reasonable vnderstanding, but would haue giuen, rather then to haue lost the sight of her, two thousand soules, if he had them. She drew nere, giuing the prince great thanks for that which he had done for her, saying, I was well assured (valorous knight of the Bough) that committing my affayres into your victorious hands, it should haue such issue as is this. While as the sayze Tinacrian made answer vnto Celibella, loue began to stirre in the breast of the Wagan, who regarded the beautie where with the Infanta was adorned, whom in his conceit he had much offended: but loue playing his part, had obtained his pardon; for sometimes she cast her eye aside, to behold the wounds which this new-come prince had receiued: and indeed the Wagan did not so much seele it, as the Lady did, for it did ease his paine, to behold her beautie: But to her, who had already yelded her selfe tributarie to loue, euery drop of his blood, was worse then a cruell death: so farre doeth his power extend, who is called the blind god of loue.

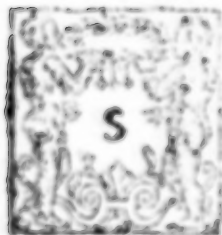
Within the Palace, were these Princes cured of their wounds; and fiftene dayes the Tinacrian there remained, in which time he behaued himselfe so well, that hee obtained of the king all that he desired; setting before his eyes the valour of Furiander, and the state which hee held: loue had so well disposed of the sayze princeesse. that it was no hard matter to winne her. The valorous Furiander knew
not

The fourth booke of the third Part

not how to value this good; for all the Court scanted him, holding it well content to receive such a knight, for prizes and honor thereof. Such did the prince tell us that the Tinacrian should have remained a longer time, but being unable to end other matters, he took his leave of the Lady, and committed himself to the voyage, with Rucio his squire alone. The first day of his navigation, with a prospering wind he arrived in the kingdom of Hilepsia, where hapned unto him, that which in the next Chapter shall be declared.

CHAP. IIII.

How the Prince of *Tinacria* neere the Fountaine of three spoutes, met with the braue *Eufronisa*, and of the battaile which hee fought with two Giants which would have robbed him.



So much did absence (most noble prince) afflict the sayre *Eufronisa*, for the losse of Rosabel, that shee took no pleasure but in coming to the fountaine where shee first saw him. It served with her, as with one which hath lost a precious treasure, who not finding it, a thousand times returneth with great care, to the place where he thinketh he lost it. And so did this sayre princeesse, being not so much afflicted for the losse of the sunnes, as for the absence of the father. In company of her discreet gentlewoman, she passed a heavy & solitarie life, although it were some ease unto her, to think y^e her father had promised to carry her with him into Grecia; for there came certaine messengers to him, from the Souldan of Niquea, to entreat his favour, which hee throughly purposed to grant, as he which was very mightie, and of great power. And imagining with her selfe that there she should see her dearly beloved, which made her to prolong some what the
rest

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

rest of her dayes, it was a world to see, and to heare, what she saw, and said, beholding her selfe in the cleere fountaine.

Loue is not such (most noble prince) as that hee who is possessed therewith, can haue any regard of reason, neither is reason of force to detain him who is enamored, from going to any place, whither his cruell bestinges shall lead him.

In the Schoole of my mishappes, I learned to discourse of the successe of Loue, and how it dealeth with those which are subiect thereto; this enamored princeesse possibely by sufficient experience thereof, whom loue so many wayes (after she was subiect thereto) tired with a thousand besallies, and being set in the place where she first became enamored, she made a thousand complaints of loue.

Oh, fierce and cruell resolution, (said the sayre Lady, and the pleasing content wherein I liued, before I saw that venturous prince the robber of my libertie! I know not of who to complaine me; not of loue; for it sheweth it selfe sauourable in my behalfe. I complaine me of his crueltie, seeing that he, seeing the sincere faith wherewith I loued him, neuer vouchsafed to giue me one sparkle of hope, but reioyced to see me for him in so sweet annoy. Oh, my sonnes, if the heauens grant you life, and by them it be determined that you become loues vassils, syle crueltie, which is that which doth most blemish and dishonour those that deale therein: In the rest I would haue you resemble your warlike father, but not in crueltie, who doeth tyrannize ouer her who bare in her wombe. Oh, my Selie, I am of opinion, (seeing the straugeness which this prince sheweth vnto mee) that so long as he is in his countrey, will yeelde him new cause of loathing; which to imagine, there is no death comparable to it.

Soueraigne Lady, (answered the Damsell) you liuing so assured, whereof would you mooue, then to loue him with your soule, which maketh you to abhorre you? But I am of opinion, that your going into Green should ease you of your sorrow, and yeeld you much content.

I shall neuer be so happy (my Selie) as to attaine to the

The fourth booke of the third Part

Sight of a thing so pleasing, as that might be, and the greatest of fortune could give me, to see him acknowledging how much I have loved him. This shall bee some ease to my paine, seeing the heavens haue made all other impossible, that he is husband of the Infanta of Niquea. Herein did this Lady passe her wearisome dayes, taking no other pleasure (as I haue said) but to walke abroad in the fresh shadow, in a grove of poplar trees.

It hapned one day, that walking abroad somewhat early, even when the sunne from the highest heavens sent his heate into the world, being somewhat annoyed there with, they came to the fountaine to refresh them, where they saw the valorous Tinacrian, who to passe the afternoones heat, was come to this fountaine. This free yong Watchelour was washing his sayre face, when they approached, being somewhat out of countenance, for that they had left their company behind them, and also to finde him so alone; hand in hand they came thither, at the instant when the sonne of Garrofica lifted vp his head to behold them. The Tinacria did somewhat resemble Rosabel, and so the new and sudden sight caused so great alteration in the enamoured Princeesse, that she certainly believed that he was her beloued prince: Joy so much surprized her amorous heart, that shee there with fell breathlesse, into a swoone, giuing an amorous scrutch, saying, Oh my Rosabel. This could not so be tolerated, but that the free Tinacrian might well vnderstand, that his deare cousin-germane had trauailed into those countries, & that this Lady much loued him: he speedily came to the place, where Selia held her in her lap with so great heaviness, that it caused the prince to accompany her therein.

What sudden mishap is happened to this Lady (said the sonne of Trebacius?) If it be anything, wherein I, with the hazard of my life, may procure her remedg, I will performe it so farre forth, as it to me shall be possible.

The cause of this disease is so inueterate (answered Selia,) marryngling to see a man so sayre, & assuring herself also that

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

that it was not Rosabel, (for that he was moze strongly set) that notwithstanding that many haue attempted to remedy it, being men of much worth, yet all that they could doe, hath been but to remove the humours. The faire Ladie giuing a deepe sigh, came againe to her selfe, sheadding many bitter teares, which vpon her faire cheekes, shewed like Orientall pearles; she fixed her decciued eyes vpon the faire yong man, vntill that at y^e last she was assured that he was not Rosabel. It grieved her very soule, that shee had giuen so manifest a signe of her being another mans, and not her owne, in presence of that gentle Knight, who although that he had no experience in loue, yet he might neuerthelasse wel perceiue, that shee was in loue. Her againe reiterated the offer of his life to be employed in her seruice, for the recouerie of her delight. The Gods requite you, gentle Knight, answered the Lady, for your noble offer, which is corresponsent to the great valour, which your personage doth represent: My annoy is sorted in my scale, that any remedie whatsoeuer to be applied, will but double my sorrow: onely sometime, as now, it y^eldeth me some ease, to make shew of the euil which I endure, and it hath not been to any final purpose, soing I find, that it hath moued those to pitie me, which neuer knew me. The dutie, (faire Ladie) which I acknowledge to owe to al those which please to vse my seruice, is so generall, that it forced me (seeing the great extremitie, whereunto this euill as you say, had brought you) to offer my life in quest of some means, to breed your rest. It may be well perceined, valorous Knight (said the Ladie) that if we should entreat you to shew your valour to purchase our contentment, you would doe it, as he which best might.

The amorous reasons of the faire Ladie could no further proceed, for that they heard a most terrible great noise. This yong gallant betooke him to his weapons, because that to be found without them, it should not put in doubt that which his valour did assure: he had hardly laced his Helmet, and embraced his strong shield, when through the thickest of the

The fourth booke of the third Part

And, he ſeem approach two moſt fierce Spirits, and with them a knight of a gallant reſemblance, richly armed; he would not remaine on foot, but getting to his gallant courſer, ſtupt into the ſaddle, and with his lance in his hand, ſtaied to ſee what they would, willing the Ladies to draw nere to the fountaine; for the manner of their coming ſeemed not to bee to doe them any pleaſure. By this, they were all three armed, and the knight putting vp his beuer, ſomewhat more diſcovering his face, ſaid, Many dayes, ſo ſtraigne Princeſſe Silepia, with coſtly experience to my heart, I haue made ſhewe of my ſacrificed faith to your beautie, procuring (to my coſt) by all poſſible meanes your content, and yet could neuer obtaine any the leaſt hope; not that I would be beloued; for that were to reue my life: but you would not ſo much as once regard my paine, not withſtanding y you were y cauſe thereof: The heuens haue now permitted me to come ſo in the nick, to vnderſtand how little you ſhal loſe, to anſwere to my payne: I knowing this, maruell not, though I procure that by force, which I deſerue ſhould be freely beſtowed on me; and ſo you are to haue patience, for you ſhal be mine in deſpite of all the world.

Well haue I vnderſtood, Prince of Libonia, (anſwered the Lady) the affection which you haue euer ſhewed me, and ſo be ſuch as deſerued worthy correſpondence: but neuer faithfull loue, which delighted in the conſolment of a worthy knight, took pleaſure to winne affection, which was already ſetled; for therein he ſhould rather reſemble a rigorous loue, then a man of that faith, which you ſay you haue borne vnto me; and ſo ſeeing the impoſſibility in my behalfe, I haue procured by all poſſible meanes to let you vnderſtand, how ſmall meanes I had to yeeld you remedie. Such affection as is mine (ſaid the Barbarian) acceptoth no ſuch ſained excuſes as theſe, which you make vnto me. And ſeeing the heauens beare record how much I deſire your content, there is no prolonging of time, ſeeing my fortune hath obtained it. Hee had ſcarcely ended his ſpeeches, when one

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

off the Giants daintie nose, stretched out his arme to seke
 on her; which being vsmard, giuing a great scriff, cast
 her selfe to the ground, which was the cause that the Giant
 could take no hold of her. But he had no need to see it, for
 the fierce young gallant, sonne of Garrofilea, brandishing
 his reuergefull Lauce, raising himselfe vpon his Scutrops,
 hurled it with such force, that Mars himselfe did malice to
 see how great a blow he gaue: for hitting him right (as vna-
 waies) in the middle of his spacious brest, the well as-
 sed Merchant made so great a new-gate, that the hard
 plates of Scale were not sufficient to stay it from appea-
 ring out at his backe, coloured with his fresh blood. There
 was not any great question to be made, whether the
 Ladies were glad thereof, or no, seeing it gaue her courage
 to raise vp her selfe, to see with what force the faire Timacri-
 an turned head against his two enemies, the which little
 remembred what to knights bit appertaine; both at once
 charged their Lances in the middle of his back brest:
 they made him vilely to bend in his Saddle, striking his
 head against his horse buttocke: and it was no marvaile,
 for these two valiant men charged him in great furie, to see
 their friend slaine.

The valorous Timacrian recovering againe his seate,
 and ward, returned vpon them, the Giant he found alone,
 who with a mightie Space of Scale came towards him,
 giuing place and time to the Prince to seize on the Ladies,
 who lifting her voice to heauen, cried to the Timacrian for
 helpe. The Giant gaue him so much to doe, that the Prince
 had time to depart in safetie with his prize; which so much
 despited the sonne of Trebacius, that he was ready to burst
 with anger, calling himself coward, that one Knight should
 be able to withhold him from helping that faire Ladies, so
 vnusully taken; hee doubled here with so thicke and furious
 blowes, as would haue rent the most hard rock. But he had
 before him, one, who held himselfe to haue no equall in the
 world: the faire Poliphebus desired to hazard his fortune of the
 battell

The fourth booke of the third Part

battell at one blow : and so approaching to the Wagon, made
them to stay for him; he lifted up his searefull face, and had
not fallie done it, when the Mouth flew within him, and with
a blow strake it out of his hands, and helde the victorie for
his : and seeing that delays might breed danger, redoubling
his force, hee strake him on the head, the blow was so ter-
rible, that it made him sencelesse. The Tinacrian was not
a yong man, which would let slippe oportunitie, particular-
ly in a matter of such importance, which concerned no lesse
then the Ladies libertie : and so the Horse being in this
france, hee with the greatest care of the worlde, with his
sword in both his hands, with all his power strake him up-
on the crowne of the head; the helmet could yeld no defence,
for he claue it so, as it fell at his horse fete, and dispatched
him suddenly. He turned about as swift as thought, follow-
ing the trace of the bold adventurous Prince, and fortune
was favourable unto him; for without any let, within one
mile where the battell began, hee saw the Prince with his
prayer, flying swifter then the winde; the Falcon neuer flew
so swift after the searefull Heeron, as this valorous Tina-
crian, who giuing the spurres to his horse, made him to run
swifter then the steeds of golden Apollo. And thus riding,
he called to the Prince to stay, whose voyce caused this gale-
lant louer, whose haste to himselfe seemed slow, still to spur
his horse; for it sufficed him not, to see and hold his Lady
in his armes, but with her to escape the armes of that yong
man, who as a furious Lyon (his sword died in blood) ap-
proached, and in his sight strake him vpon the rich Hel-
met; and if it had hit right, it had ended the warre with
that blow: But it was not to any small purpose, seeing it
made him (for his owne defence) to set her to the ground,
being wholly sencelesse.

The sonne of Trebacijs returned, saying, All it becometh
him, who reckoneth himselfe a worthy Knight, to doe
so vile a thing, as that which you haue committed, and a-
gainst such a Lady, as is this; he came not so little offended,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

as to stay for an answer; but that with the well steered point hee smote him in the brest with such force, that hee made him to feele his sword within his flesh. The Gyfte was most nymble and skilfull; and if hee had gone away with this blow, he might haue prolonged his life, but to his greater harme, he would needs close with the valerous Tinacrian, where al happened acrosse vnto him; and the Gyfte well perceiuing his strength, gathered new forces from his most mortall wounds, considering with himselfe, how much he lost in losing that battell, and so he suffered him to enter, and with his sword in both his handes, hee smote him vpon the rich helmet, and had reuenged the death of his two companions, and recouered the Ladie, had not the well tempered fine mettall bene betwene; the which, although it gaue the yong man his life, yet it could not defend him, but that it brought his head as low as the pommel of the saddle, casting out blood, both at his nose and mouth: he reached him yet another, which made him almost forget himselfe. Penner was Eagle more furious in defending her nest, then the Tinacrian she wedd himselfe, turning towards the furious Pagan, and hitting him vpon the helme; it sounded like a bell, and made him tremble like an Aspen leafe, being shaken with the fresh winds in Autumn: he smote off his crell, leaving him mortally wounded, and seeing him stagger, he claspt him in his well brayned armes, whose betters the world contained not; and pulling him from his saddle, he bare him in his armes, to the place where the Ladie was, being perfectly come to her selfe, who loyed to see how well he had reuenged her quarrell. Hee leapt with him from his horse, and with his ponyard ended his life and loue, in the sight of the Ladie, whom hee best loued in the world: the which ioyfull and secure, rose from the place where she sate, and with a countenance, which would haue made loue it selfe in loue, she went to the free yong man, casting her armes about his necke, which I know not who would haue refused, and with a cloth wiping his armour sparkled

The fourth booke of the third Part

With blood, said, *Which* hath my friendly fortune ordayned,
 (valorous man at armes) that although that your first offer
 serued not for a medicine to cure the wounds of my saule,
 yet with the second, restoring my life and honour, you haue
 wholly bound me vnto you; and so I entreat you in the name
 and behalfe of those things which you loue best in y^e world,
 to tell me your name, and of what countrey you are: for I
 am of opinion, that I shall yet loue you better, for some o-
 ther reason, then for all that you haue now done for mee.
Which bid this yong gallant vnderstand her; and so desiring
 thoroughly to satisfie her, hee said, *Most* thy Lady, the Gods
 do beare me record, how great ioy I conceiue for my com-
 ming into your Kingdome, in time to do you some service:
 and know, that my Countrey is *Lincaria*, and I am sonne
 to the Emperour *Trebacius*, and hee, among all my whole
 kindred, whom I loue best, is the Prince of the great *Brit-
 tany*. *Which* returned the most faire *Eutrophia* to embrace
 him, saying, *Most* valourous Prince, I say, that I will not
 rest beholding vnto you, seeing that in giuing me life, it hath
 bene to the ende I should increase my loue towards that
 most Prince, whom you say you loue so much. And as she
 left speaking, streames of teares flowed fro her faire eyes,
 & she considered her ouersight, saying, *Paradise* not, (noble
 Prince) to see the many the vias of my indiscretion: for the
 feruent affection wherewith *Rosabel* is beloued in this
 Countrey, is such, and the crueltie which hee sheweth to-
 wards me, is so rigorous, that it seareth me to complaine of
 him, seeing I haue so deercly loued him. I would not for a-
 ny thing in the world, most worthy Lady, (answered the
 Prince) that I should giue you any cause of discontent, for
 I receiue so much herein, that I know not ought, that may
 free me thereof, although that if it may be held for an excuse,
 that he haue not equalled your affection, his being elsewhere
 denoted, yet a sufficient reason it yaldeth, to cause you to
 be wth your selfe lesse passionate. I neuer desired (most va-
 liant Knight) that he should wholly requite my loue, seeing it
 impossible

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

impossible for him to doe: I onely desired that he should consider that I loved him, and how sweet a life I held it, and how much I ioyed to see him. But (O extreme dolor!) it appeareth that if I did live, but to love him, he in good earnest toke pleasure to abhorre me. Where did I furnish him with horse and armes: and here did I shew him the most faithfull sincere affection, that euer was contained in any humane breast. In my Palace did I cure him of his wounds, hoping that that would haue moued him to haue cured those which he had giuen me: but to my greater griefe, I sent him hence whole and sound, and he left me here, so, as you see me. Let it not (noble Prince) offend you to heare my passionate complaint; for I would not haue spoken it to any man in the world, but to such a one, as were so nere a kinsman, and deare friend as are you, to that cruell knight; and know, that my constancie shall serue for an example to the world: for first shall my soule forsake my body, before I leaue to be his. Behold and see vnto what estate affliction hath brought me: for in hope to see him, it doth not grieue me to see my father, in the behalfe of the Shouldan of Niquea to goe against him. And I beseech you, valorous Prince, seeing you meane to serue in those famous wars, to remember, some day to tell him, that Eufronisa is in the Campe, not in the way of an enemy, but as a tributarie. Much did the crueltie of his kinsman grieue the Prince of Tinnacia; wherefore to comfort this noble Ladie, he said, Be not dismayde (noble Lady) for I promise you on my faith, and as I am a knight, that I will so bring it to passe, that in Grecia, the prince Rosabel shall visit you, and acknowledge the fauor which in this countrie he hath receiued at your hands. I desire no greater ioy for my whole life time, answered the Ladie, but only to see him, and that, that with some acknowledgement he may vnderstand, how much I haue loued him; and herewith let vs go, so that Ladie waileth for vs, who is a witnesse of what I endure.

Upon the dead Princeesse horse, the Tinnacian set the Ladie, and himselfe mounted vpon his own; they returned

The fourth booke of the third Part

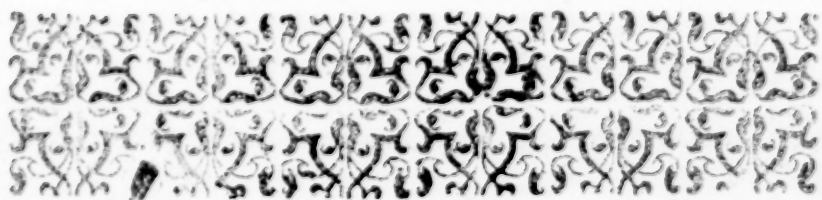
so pleasant and merry, that, but for the remembrance of the losse of her sonnes, nothing could yeld her so great ioy; of leue was all their discourse, although this Youth had small skill therein: But fortune determined to prepare him with these shewes of leue, meaning shortly to loblie him there to; holding it for base, seeing he was not yet subdued. Some horsemen they met vpon the way, of her gard, which in a great troope came galloping, fearing that they had lost the Kings daughter. Here would the Prince haue taken his leaue, without coming to the Citie of Goltberg, where the King made preparation for his departure; but at the instant request of the Princesse and the discreet Silia, he could not refuse to goe with them, vpon condition, that by no meanes they should discover who he was.

Being arriued at the Citie, it nothing amazed him to see it in armes, and the great number of Knights, which haurely arriued there, among which were many most fierce Gyants; neither the great abundance of warlike instruments, which were prepared in that Citie: for well hee knew in what readinesse his father would be. Eight dayes remained hee there, with the greatest entertainement in the world: for the King knowing in what maner he had rescued his daughter, knew not how to requite it him. At the end of which time, (with a determination to goe into Tinnacria, and there to leue the mightiest Armie, that possibly he should be able, in the behalfe of his father) hee tooke his leaue of that gallant Ladie, with such a farewell, as made him sorrowfull. He likewise within foure dayes after, tooke her way towards Grecia, with her fathers Armie, with so great a desire to bee there, that he imagined that the heavens could yeld her no greater content. The words of the Tinnacrian did much hearten her, who in a well rigd Galley directed his course towards his Countrey, with his aforesaid determination. But the third day after his being at sea, the sea began to worke in such sort, that he lost his voyage, casting him by diuine prouidence, into a streight of the Mediterra-
nean

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

neare sea, where he wandred 3. daies, & the fourth toke land
in the most sweet and pleasant countrey that euer he had
sene in his life. He leapt ashore, desirous to know in
what countrey he was arrived, commanding the Marriners
there to attend him; and with his Squire onely, he began to
enter a most pleasant shade of Poplar trees, where hee
toke pleasure in the fresh ayre thereof, saying unto him,
that there, industrious nature had taken great care to erect
all humane arte.

When hee had trauielled about a mile therein, busying
his eyes in beholding the stately Poplars and lofty Cedars,
at the end of this wood, in the midst of a fayre field, he beheld
the stateliest Palace that could be imagined; & height there-
of seemed to touch the clouds, with such varietie of stone,
that it seemed a worke of the high heauens, so that it was
the habitation of some rulers thereof. This fayre Castell
was compassed with a broad ditch, crooke the which did run
a mayne river; there were certaine bridges which led to the
Castell; the principall hee wondred at: for notwithstanding
that it had but one Arch, yet the workmanship was very
curious, for all the battlements were of most pure white
Alabaster. Here entered the sonne of Garrioflea, beholding
the fore front of the Castell, the richnes whereof he could not
vailew; it was that with most strong gates, wherein were
engrauen many Histories, with most rich chescer-worke
of golde. This Timacrian dismounted from his horse, the
better to behold the worke, & giuing his horse to his Squire,
with a very speedy pace, hee marched towards the gates,
where, of force I must leaue him; for there is so much else
to be sayd, that there is no other remedie.



The fourth booke of the third Part

CHAP. V.

Of that which happened to the Prince *Claridiano*, and to *Florsiano* of *Apulia*, in their returne from *Lucania*.



It behoueth mee, (most noble Prince) the better to giue delight in so long an History, to follo to the rule of well composed musicke, sometimes striking the sharpe and loude strings of Cupid, treating of his sundry effects, and of his power in a might subiect to a thousand passions; sometimes following the sound and churlish buzzing of angry Mars, to the end, in y^e end to make a pleasing conclusion of all together: and where I finde a louer, to conclude his constancie, seeing how much many haue beloe, not aismaying at any their beloued Lades disdain; but euen when they haue shewed themselves most froward, haue continued most kind and constant, purifying in the extreame of their torments, the forces of their hearts. And to him which will follow his libertie, and there with furious Mars his drumme, it may appeare how earnestly many haue followed it, and with how great content they haue past the gates of the hard Diamond, so as to giue consent to all, it behoueth mee to treat sometimes of loue, and sometimes of Mars his furious and horrible blowes, and hauing left the sonne of Garrifilea, so pleasant & victorious, setting *Eufrosina* at libertie, it shall not bee amisse, to prosecute the loue of the Lord of *Apulia*, which to those which delight in a sweete Victorie, is the most principall, who most faithfully loued & was least regarded, for thus shewing in him her power, what she is able to doe when she will.

The Greek much desired, that his assayes might attaine to a happy ende; for in his soule he much affected the prince *Florsiano*, who seemed to him one of the most discreet that euer dealed therein: and passing the seas, they discoursed of a thousand things, and all of loue: the wind being fauourable, they made a pleasing voyage; and being both enamoured, with discourses of loue, they passed the loathsome toyle

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

of the seas, untill the tenth day, at what time the sayre Aurora began to shew her selfe in the East, foreshewing her brothers coming. On the shores-side of Italy they discovered a very sayre Galley, which came with sayle & oares more swift then thought.

The Spake betooke him to his weapons, to the end yf retchlesnesse should yelde no ill successe, and so they sayed, untill coming nere, they heard them, bid them awayne, except they would all be dead. They did not therfore come maunde to strike their mayne sayle, but onely to saye to them, and to see who it was, that with such pride so threatened them, and so lying by the lee, they sayed, untill they might see aloft upon the poope a deformed Gyant, and about some twelve Knights, and the two Gallies approaching, they might within, heare the con-playing voyce of certaine bepronged women.

The valliant Prince of Spaine was very suspitious, and any matter that might concerne women (to whom in former time he had bowen his ayde) did much trouble him. He turned himself to the Prince of Apulia, saying, Neuer trust me, valorous Prince, but there are in this Galley, some Ladies prisoners, for their lamenting doth us entice as much, and therefore I would not for any thing in y^e world, being able to succour them, leaue them, for any hap, though neuer so dangerous. As as you thinke good (valorous knight) sayd the gentle Florimond, for I, to lose my life in your service, shall but requite the generositie wherewith you haue effred yours to yelde me comfort. I agree not hereto (said the Spake loner) but yf you remaine at word this galley, & suffer no man to enter: as for y^e rest let me alone. And herewith hopled all the sayles, & with sayles & oares made after y^e enemy, which staled for the, accounting them very ill advised, hauing as it seemed within board, but 1 armed man. And coming nere, Trebacius his neyphew sitting a little by his breuer, with a loud voice said, I desire, for knight, yf you should tell me whither you are bound: for if you saye towards Niquea, we may the more safely make our voyage

¶ 4

together

The fourth booke of the third Part

together in company from the danger on the seas, by reason of these alterations and warres which sound ouer all the world. The fierce Giant answered, saying, Our Galley, sir knight, goeth so safe from any ill successe that may happen vnto her, with those that are within board, that wee haue no need of cōpany, except you desire ours to make your boyaqe with such safetie as you desire; and therefore it sufficeth that your Galley may goe with ours.

This is superfluous saide (sayd the Briske) fading feare, and to the ende we may go the more at pleasure, I pray you take aboard you a Squire, who is in great feare, for that hee heareth that certaine Briskes scoure this coast. Let it bee as you will (sayd the Spant) and if he will, he shall see, how little I esteeme those proud knights of whom he is so much afraid; and so commanded to strike sayle, and to lay his Galley so nere to the pyntes, that he might easily (lying nere together) leape aboard where the Spant was, and did it with such dexteritie, that when they betooke them to their defence, he was already aboard, with his sword in his hand, saying, It is requisite, you traytors, that you leaue your praye and your liues, for payment for your presumption. Hee stayed for no answere, neither strained any curthe; for before they could fit themselves, he had slaine two of thē. It was wonderfull to behold, how hee cast himselfe amidst the thickest of the throng, and it is not a thing to bee written in so true an History as this which I prosecute, what this ballant youth performed. Lirgandeo saith, that at three blowes he smote downe five knights at the Spants feet, who blaspheming heauen and earth, lifting vp his terrible eye, came towards the louer, making the Knights to giue place. They neuer better performed their spacers commandement then now: for no lesse then their liues depended thereon. The fierce Spant gaue so vehement a blow, which made such noise, that it seemed to thunder in the ayre. It seemed not to the louer of Arquiflora any wisdom to stay the lighting of so rude a blow: and so winding himselfe

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

himselfe on one side, seeing the blow come from aloft, he let it slip, which came as it were thundring in the ayre: he smote it an hand deepe in the hatches of the ship, which was a very great good hap for the Brooke: for by that meanes, being unable to pull it out, so sone as hee would, he leaped with him, and with both his hands gaue him a blow on the thicke helme. It little profited him that it was three fingers thicke; for he smote the greater part thereof from his head, and left him sore wounded, and withall made him to reele, hee payde him the second time better then at the first: for hitting him right vpon the huge great armes, hee made him let goe his battaile-axe, which put him to such paine, that he had much to doe, to put his hand to his side, to draw a broad crooked scabbion, wherewith flourishing, he assailed the prince. There was no roome in the Galley to thynke swift comming therof, neither was it possible to ward the terrible blow with his most strong shield, which (for the fineness thereof) although that he could not cleaue, yet hee beat it to his helmet with so great force, that he made him set both his knees to the ground.

Neuer did knight better beare himselfe in a particular fight, then this prince did: for oftentimes, with his agility and discretion hee knew how to make his benefite of his ill happes, against his enemy, as now, without losing his warde, by reason of this great blow: for hee gaue him a great slash ouer the legs. This was it which assured him of the battaile, for hitting him a little beneath the gartering place, hee cut it almost halfe off, hee would not so giue ouer without giuing him one more, which was a very fearefull stroke, which wholly bereaued him of his right foote: he made him goe backward with lesse steadfastnesse then in battailes is required.

The valorous Watchelour rose againe on his feete, attending the fierce Bagan, who came vpon him, casting a thicke smoake out at his beuer, but wanting the assistance of his legges, hee was to strike him with his eyes; hee was constrained to set him on his knee, and in that maner to attempt:

The fourth booke of the third Part

tempt the doubtful victorie, it cannot be imagined how great contentment the Prince of Apulia received, in seeing the marvelles in armes, which that knight performed, esteeming himselfe happy to haue such a companion.

By reason of the great noyse which was made in this battaile, out of a cabin of the Galley came one of the most fayre Ladies that euer was scene, all clad in greene Sattin cut vpon most fine cloth of Gold, and her yellowish haire hanging loose about her shoulders, pouring streames of teares downe her fayre cheekes, which resembled the most rich Orientall Pearles, who seeing howe victoriously this knight had bound himselfe, to giue him the greater courage, sayd, Let these cruell and accursed cattiffes dye, and assure your selfe, I will not leave your trauals unrewarded.

The Greek needed no new fauours, for hee had already ranged the Gyant so well to his will, that hee would not giue him so much space as to breathe his breath, and desiring to make an end of the war, making amends with a mighty blow vpon his spore, he closing, came to handy griues and cast him on his backe on the spore, bereaving him at the very instant of his life, in the despite of all those knights which would haue hindered it; with which hee returned againe into a heauly battaile, but it lasted not long; for hee lost all patience.

The cruell Lyon is not more furious in the midst of the sheepe-flocke, nor a shee Beare that is robbed of her whelpes, then was hee among those which remayned; he ouerthrew thre with mortall wounds, which gaue occasion to the rest (who before with much hate did resist him) to throw away their swordes, and to fall downe and humbly entreat him to pardon them their liues.

The noble minded knight easily graunted it; for choller did neuer so much blinde him, as to make him tread that compassion vnder foote, which ought to bee held with those which yield.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

By this time the faire Prince of Apulia was come aboard the Galley, who embracing the Grecian, saide, Fortune will not now (most puissant knight) shew herselfe so cruell vnto me, seeing it hath together giuen me satisfaction for so many troubles, bringing me in due time to ioy at the view of your worthie actes.

It is sufficient glorie for mee (noble Prince) answered the Grecke, to haue deserued so generous a commendation, as what I heare from your mouth, which hath giuen me occasion to esteeme better of my selfe, then my valour hath deserued.

The gallant Ladie ended their discourse, who like a chafed Lionesse, taking notice of whom she had held for a captiue, who was also Lord of her soule, wherewith she loued him, without giuing the Grecke any thanks for the libertie which hee had giuen her, clasping her armes about his necke, she saide, I neuer thought, neither laroe, with such satisfaction, as this, to enioy thy presence, or that Fortune should haue ended my disgrace in this manner: but the heauens haue so decreed, that she who is bozne to be thine, shall be no mans else.

Now I will not complaine of laroe, for I am perswaded, hee would not haue so forgotten me, as the Prince of Apulia. With this, the gentle young man presently knew her to bee the faire Troyla, daughter to the King of Argel, where he had bene a captiue.

The gallant Ladie had made this Prince so much beholding to her, for the many signes of good will which she shewed him, being in prison, that at the instant bowing his knees to the ground, desiring to kisse her hands, he said, My troubles, noble Princeesse of Argel, haue bene such, since the destinies ordained my departure from thy presence, that I know not how they haue giuen mee leaue to liue, neither to thinke vpon laroe, but the Prince of Apulia, as he who at the last yielded himselfe more beholding, acknowledgeth the much and many saoures, which he hath receyued at your hands,

The fourth booke of the third Part

hands, offering you now anew, his life to be at your seruice, and speake I pray you, to this venturous Knight: for both ours to him is due, according to the much which he hath performed. The Lady acknowledged the error whereinto shee was fallen; but seeing it was for loue, it was to be excused.

Then began shee to discourse of this valorous Greeke, and to enquire who he might bee, and what adventures hee had past: And hearing what the prince of Apulia said of him, shee said, Pardon (most worthy Knight) my retchlesnesse, in that I haue not all this while giuen you thanks, for that which you haue done for my libertie, which euery may be esteemed a thing whereof there resteth for mee no hope to make any requitall, which the heauens reward you in your greatest necessitie. The great displeasure which I conceiued against this Knight, for departing out of my prison without my leaue, was the occasion of my ouersight.

For many errors, (worthy Lady) this onely were a sufficient excuse, if there had bene any such: how much more then, where there was none committed? Such time they spent in entertaining with these sweete discourses. To entertaine in such maner (worthy Ladies,) is no error, which I leaue to your discrete considerations, omitting therewith the tediousnesse wherewith I should proceed.

The long absence of the Prince of Apulia, had giuen no occasion to lose any part of the affection which shee bare vnto him when hee was present; her Redfast beholding him did manifest as much. All this did but increase the Greeke louers paine, to see him selfe so infortunate, and absent from his Lady, and with such disgrace banished, and not to returne into Grecia without licence, bearing the name of Claridiano.

It did somewhat grieue the Prince of Apulia, to see the discontentment of the knight of Crueltie: he was generally so

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

so called of al men; for that was his deuice in his shield. The gentle conuersation of the Princesse, did much comfort him, whom these princes entreated to declare the cause of her imprisonment. I can tel you none, valorous Knights, but that being one day in a garde, vpon the Stronds side, to recreate my selfe, in company of these foure Damels, this accursed Spant, by chance, with the furle of the winde, came to arrive at the gardens bancke side, he with these Knights entered, and coming through the thickest, they arrived at certaine fountaines, where we were solacing our selues. A small purpose serued the callings and enteries which wee made, calling for helpe, that they should not carrie vs away to their Galley. It was yesterday (welve dayes, he told me by the way, that he was of the Squadron of Ocho, bassal to the Prince of Almayne, in whose seruice hee went to the warres against the Crakes, in company of the Emperour of the Romanes, and to the same effect my Father is vpon parting with the king of Carthage, which are to ioyne with the Sculdan of Piquea, whom (as they say) this warre doth principally concerne, for the theft, which a Prince of the Crakes committed, in stealing one of his Daughters; they purpose to ruinate the whole Empire, according to the great numbers of men which they leue. This is all that I can say, concerning my imprisonment. And seeing I shal not finde the King my Father at Argel, (for by this time hee is gone) I should be very glad, if you would take me with you: for being in company with such Knights, for the present, nothing in the world could yeld mee the like content. You shall see vs (answered Florisano) great fauour, to take vs with you, for Knights of your gard. Whereto the Crak agreed, dissembling the griefe hee conceiued, to heare how great troopes of men were leued to warre against his parents; hee determined with himselfe to take his way towards Grecia, disguised with new armes secretly, without acquainting any man therewith, except the Knight of the Lions, who was the gentle Claramant. The Princes often

The fourth booke of the third Part

times discoursed concerning the success of the Prince of Apulia, and swore that it should be kept secret, without discovering to any man who he was. With faire weather they sayled five dayes, and on the seuenth they discovered the land of Lucania, with such alteration of the Prince of Apulia, that standing aloft to beholde it, the Ladie said unto him, You shall do ill, to go ashore in this land, which we haue discovered, (valorous Prince) seeing that you will land therein, with so sad and heauie countenance. So he things haue happened vnto me to my liking, answered the Prince; but the most ordinary and that which maketh me to absent my selfe from my Countrey and friends, is that which carrieth me after the currant of my hard happes. (Loue most noble Prince, is not so swete to bee endured, nor so easie to be concealed, but that howsoeuer a man will goe about to dissemble the matter, hiding the griefe of his soule, yet he will giue signes and certaine notice thereof.) The Prince of Greece was of opinion, plainly to discover it, for in his soule hee was grieved; for it was a matter to touch a man: for her beautie did deserue, that the Prince of Apulia should loue her: but he dissembled, offering himselfe to any danger that might yeld content to Florisano. They attributed it to the great generositie of his minde, desiring much, that occasion might be offered to requite the same. They leapt to shore, and he of Apulia tooke the Armes of one of the Spants Knights, which best fitted him, and a mightie horse, which was the dead Spants: other foure they tooke for the Ladies, which were with the Prince. They gaue commandement to the Mariners of the Galley, to attend them there: and licensing the Spants galley to depart, they tooke the most direct and beaten way that they saw: all the Ladies wore skarfes, which they cast ouer their faces, to goe the more unknowne. There was neuer scene a fairer company: for the Ladies were all yong maides, and the others enamoured, so as there was no discourse of any thing but of loue. From the one side to the other rode these valiant warriors, managing their horses with so great

of the Mirrour of Knighticed,

great a grace, as Mars himselfe: the Lacie taking great pleasure therein, accounting it a pleasure, to trauell all the world ouer in company of such knights, their valour assuring her from al danger. By the same way that they went, they saw eight knights coming towards them, very richly armed, to whom at their meeting, the Grecke in their owne language said (for he could speake any in the world) We shall take it for fauour, Sir knights, to know of you, what Countrey this is, and how farre it is to any Towne. Well pleased with his good speeches and behaviour, the Countrey, Sir knights, wherein you are, (answered one, who seemed to be Captaine of all the rest,) is the populous Lucania, very nere vnto the famous Citie of Treba; it would yelde you great delight, to see the marvellous stately buildings thereof: but now all the Countrey is so troubled with these warres, which are a beginning, that there is no pleasure or contentment, especially now, by reason of the importunacie of Aslernio Prince of Calabria, who hath declared himselfe for a great louer & suiter vnto the Princessesse Polinarda, although it is imagined, that she admitteth none of his seruices: But the King hath so effectually dealt in the matter, that she is promised vnto him for his wife, in stead of his brother, whom they put to death through her occasion. Greatly was the Prince of Apulia moued with the words of these knights, although he past it ouer, holding the matter as concerning himselfe, and holding such company as the Grecke Prince, who desirous to returne into Grecia, to the aid of his parents, taking leaue of these knights, thanking them for the newes which they had told them, he said, Valorous Princes, the best & most certaine means y^e know to deale in this busines, is, to remit it to the fortune of my valor, & so to bereaue this Prince (which procureth your spoiles) of the meane therto, here freeing vs frō any successe that may happē, to send a messenger to y^e King of Lucania, that I will maintaine the beauty of this Lady, against any knight that shall say the contrary, at al assaies, to be the satisfaction that is in this kingdō: which shall giue occasion to this

The fourth booke of the third Part

Knight (if he loue and be valiant, as he is reported to be) to take it in ill part, that any should bee preferred before his Ladie, and coming to blowes with him, for nothing in the world will I giue ouer the battell: and if the heauens grant vs victorie (as I hope they will) it shall bee an easie matter for you to carie the Ladie away, shee bearing you such good will, as you say she doth, and being in your Countrey, you may defend her against all the world, or otherwise make your returne into Grecia, in company with this Ladie, wherein you shall do the king of Argel great seruice, deliuering her into his hands. They all agreed to this, which the Knight of Cruelty had deuised, and so in conclusion, they dispatcht a Damsell in company with Polifandro, to deliuer the message to the King, they remayning in a wood, expecting answer, which shall be declared in the next Chapter.

CHAP. VI.

How the Damsell deliuered the ambassade to the King of Lucania, in the behalfe of the Knight of Cruelty, who admitting the same, the matter came to triall.



As Polifandro and the Damsell (as saith Gatenor) were departed from the Princes, with the Greeke Princes message, and were come within two miles of the great Citie of Troba, at what time as the King was newly risen from dinner, accompanied with many principall knights, among which was the most strong Astrenio, which was now respected of euery body as the Kings sonne: they desired leave to enter, which was granted, in the presence of many Ladies, & the faire Polinarda, with Solesia the Princessesse of Campania, and her valorous louer Lisander. The Damsell doing such reuerence, as in such cases is accustomed, the King willing her to deliuer her ambassade, shee began

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

began in this maner: Thou shalt vnderstand (mighty King of Lucania) that in the confines of the red Sea, in that part which boundeth vpon Arabia, there lyeth a most populous and rich Iland, called the Ile of plate, for the great abundance, which the earth there bringeth forth: of which Iland is Duene, one of the most accomplished Ladies of the world, called Troyla, with whom the mightie Prince of Cumagena, (travelling through the world to seek his adventures, seeing her rare beautie) fell in love, and that with such feruencie, that according to the Iyels which hee hath made thereof, nothing but death onely may suffice to diuert him from his amorous conceit: hee hath perswaded (most Soueraigne King) so many and so great matters in the service of this Ladie, that of very dutie, (and considering with her selfe, that it was no disgrace to her to accept him for her knight) hee resolved to admit his service, and him for her servant. With the fauours which she bestowed on him, he beganne againe anew to make triumphs for loy, in such manner, that she consented and promised to be wholly his: So he (valorous King) standeth so assured on her selfe and her beautie, that she requested him, in requitall of the faith which she vowed vnto him, to carie her to the Courts of the most famous Kings, for the space of two yeres, to maintaine her beautie. A small request seemed vnto her lover, that which she required, and to all others that knew him, seeing by experience the great valour which the heauens had infused into him. And now they goe, accomplishing the two yeres quest, performing such adventures therein, with so much honour to the both, that hee is held for one of the most valorous knights of the world, and hearing the fame of this Court & of the gallantrie of the Ladies of the same, he would not passe by into Grecia, before he had here made prooue of what power his adventure might bee, he yieldeth to the battell at all perils: for some hauing proceeded to the Iusts onely, haue remained throughly grieved, bringing the battell to no perfection; wherefore he hath

D

The fourth booke of the third Part

sent to entreat thee, (if it shall so please thee) to send him safe conduct, to the end he may maintaine the cause for which he cometh. Here ended the Damsell her Oration, leaving not one in all the hall, which did not wonder at her bold demands. Some rumour beganne among the young knights, making a scuffle thereof, touching that the Ladies whom they served, had attained to the highest of all beautie. Well did the King understand it, and dissembling the same, answered the Damsell, (which coming in the name of an Ambassadour, was to be honourably entertained) I doe thankfully accept (saie Damsell) of the pleasure, which this knight with his presence will doe unto this court, although (as I am perswaded) he shall here purchase more enemies then friends: for here being Princes, which delight in Ladies service, they will neuer yeeld to so generall an offence, as is this. The most strong Alfermo could not dissemble his discontentment, deeming, that therein was great disgrace done to his Polynarda, who said thus, I doe rather wish (saie Damsell) that this knight had first seene the Ladies of this Palace, that he might have perceived the error which he maintaineth, before he had with such outboldnesse, delved their gallants. I am of opinion, Sir Knight, (answered the discreet Damsell) that you have not yet made proofe of the power of love, seeing that you know not, that hee which admirerh the beautie of his beloved, speaketh according to his affection: I am of opinion, that both of the one and the other, the Prince will put you out of doubt, if it shall please the King to give him leave thereto. I graunt it, quoth the King, if he will; to the end wee may see the effect of your hopes. The Lady would have kiss the Kings hand for the favour which he granted, & returning, she said, As these Princes (mightie King) have travelled a long journey, so come they unfurnished of provision necessary; wherefore they pray thee to command a Tent to be lent thee, seeing that the challenger is to make his abode therein. Whatsoever shall please him (answered the King) I will command to be carefully provided. In this manner (saie

the

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

the Ladie with a high voice) begin you that are enamoured, to set vp your armes; for betwene this and to morrow, will come to the Lists, the Prince of Comagena, with costly experience to make shew of his great valour. And so taking her leaue of all, Polifander and she mounted on horsebacke, and with a swift pace they returned to the wood, where they had left the Princes, to whome (for by little and little they drew nere to the Citie) she deliuered the message which she brought.

Much did Claridiano reioyce, to vnderstand how well the Damsell had dispatched her businesse. It might bee about two of the clocke in the afternoone, when these valorous Princes came into the great Market place of the Citie of Troba, leading betwene them the venturous Troia, so well pleased to see the good which she hoped for, that she was as it were, overioyed. Where were none but did verie attentiuely behold the Princes, the Ladie seeming to them no lesse faire, then the Knights to be of a good constitution, particularly he in the yellew, whome by his denier in his Shield they held to be the challenger, and whome they deemed to bee the most gentle Knight that was in that place. They wore their visors perced, and bare their Launces in their hands. All the place by this time was full of people, by reason of the report of their coming; and so they approached to the beholders, where the King and all his daughters were, the one doing that reuerence to the others, as their estates did require.

The Greeke a little lifting vp his Beuer, said, Valorous King of Lucania, notwithstanding that my coming to the Court hath bene to doe thee pleasure, yet my challenge I addresse to those, which profess themselves not to be their owne. Your coming (Sir Knight) is much esteemed (answered the King,) and so at your pleasure you may begin to maintaine the beautie of this Ladie. When they all intreated to come vp to the beholders, in company of Polinarda, the two Princes desired no other thing,

19 3

accordingly

The fourth booke of the third Part

accordingly as they had agreed: and so alighting into the arms of him in the yellow, they led her vp to the place, wher Polinarda was, & he was very doubtful that Astersmo should not lose that, & which the other held so certaine.

All the courtly Ladyes iudged the sayde Troyla, to be very beautifull, Polinarda saying vnto her, I now say, gallant Lady, that I maunaille not, though your knight beare the prize in all hard aduentures, iustice being apparant on his side; wherefore all good successe is due vnto him. This (noble Lady) answered Troyla, will be through the reflection fro your beautie, mine being very little. A prince of Apulia, who could helpe thee in the perplexitie & herein thou walk? It was so much (most noble Prince) as who so had meted him, might well haue perceined it.

They spent not long time in discourses: for the Duke yet saw not the end of his businesse, pricked forward with the necessitie wherein his parents were, and so doing a short reuerence to the Ladyes, giuing his hand to the carefull souter, they came downe the staires, and mounting on their horses, they rode to a most sayde tent, which was in the middle of the place. I would not, valorous prince, (said the prince of Apulia) that any euill successe should happen vnto Lillander my friend, and brother to my Soueraigne Lady. There shall not (sayd the Duke) for I will so handle the matter in the battaile, that he shall lose nothing, but that he shall not overcome.

By this time many were come into the place, who with their Armes would yeld testimony of what they felt in their soules. The first that tried their fortunes, were two of the Kings nephewes, yong knights, and both much enamored, but losing their saddles, there rested no more aduice for battaile; for at two encounters hee put them & all the whole company out of doubt, that he wanted the flower of chivalrie. Right before him past the prince of Campana, who was but newly come to the Court, so enamored, that hee made account (trusting therein, to beate y palme from the
battaile;

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

battaile; his Armes were of the colour of the Lyon, wrought
ouer with gold; and in his Shield, a faine, wherein was a La-
dy: and beneath, faith painted, only with this Inſcription.

That in heauen which is reſerued,
Will try the due by loue reſerued
Heere below on earth.

His good geſture gaue contentment to all. The ſea bea-
ſting againſt y^e rocks, did not make ſo great noyſe, as theſe
two did at their encounter. The Prince of Campania fell
not, although in bad he made an ill ſauoured landing back-
wards in his ſaddle: he returned to waite the Oake with
his ſword in his hand; but the battaile was unequal, for
he ſecured not his blow: and the valiant Oake, with his
ſword & ſhield making amends, fiſt ioynd with him, and
with both his hands in one upon the top of his ſhield; there
was no defence, but he caſt the one halfe thereof to the
ground, the ſword lighting on his helmet with ſuch force,
that it ſet him ſenceleſſe on the aſſen of the ſaddle. The
Oake was very deſirous to end the battaile, and ſo ſpur-
ring his furious horſe, he ran againſt him with his liſt,
which caſt them both to ground: and the prince was ſo cra-
yed with the fall, that he could not get from his horſe.

The Ladies were much grieved that the prince of Cam-
pania ſhould be overcome; and moſt of all his ſiſter the gen-
tle Solerſia, whoſe brauerie had encouraged the prince Lis-
ſander to come into the liſts, ſo well armed & diſpoſed, that
the common people through affection, openly gaue him the
victory. He came armed in a reddiſh armour, wrought all
ouer with knots of gold, and in the miſt of his ſhield, Con-
tentmēt, deſcribed after the maner as they depaint the Ara-
bia Felix, ſet vpon a Globe ruling the world, encompassed
with this Scott,

Where hope is well aſſured,
And ioynd with ſtedfaſt conſtancie,
Fortunes mutabilitie
Is nothing to be feared.

The fourth booke of the third Part

Great pleasure did his mistresse receiue in his deuice, holding it done for her sake. The prince of Apulia had taken notice, that that was his deare friend: wherefore the Greek with a soft pace went to him, and said:

Valorous prince of Lucania, there resteth so little time to end so many battels as yet remaine, that I thought good to demand battaile of you vpon condition, that whether of vs that within two houres shall loose his Saddle, through a stroke of his aduersarie, shall remaine for overcome.

Be it, Sir Knight, (answered the prince) as you shall thinke good, presuming to haue the better of the battaile. They managed their horses with so good a grace, that Mars himselfe from his high throne tooke pleasure to behold it. At what time as they should encounter, in sight of the whole troupe, the valorous Greeke bare vp his lance. There were few in that land, that could so well behaue themselues, and so gallantly, as he which was before him, who smote him with such force, that it made him bend his body farther backward then he would: he past forwardes, much esteeming of that knight for his valour, and hurled his lance with greater force, then if a man had discharged a culuerine, striking the one haile thereof into the hard ground, leauing the rest shaking in the fresh winde, which did so much amaze all those that were present, as the overcoming of the prince of Campania: with a soft pace he came to the Knight.

Where was no body there, but did note the honour which the Greeke did vnto him; he was very neere vnto the prince, who he put his hand vnto his sword, more to defend himself the to offend y^e other, as he made it to be plainly seene: for the Prince of Lucania assailing him with his whole force, smote him so great a blow vpon y^e top of y^e helmet, y^e it made him bend so lowe his head so low as his brest; he came againe with another, which the Greeke tooke so ill, that had not Floriano bene present, he had forgottē his generous determination. With all this, not with the valour y^e he could, but to

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

put him fið him, he smote him euery where where he could.

This is (gallant noble Ladyes,) no ill will, said the layze
Troia, that my Knight hath shewed to his enemy, seeing
how carelesly he proceedeth in a matter that so much concerneth
him; but I beleue that þe iustice of his cause detaineth
him which he saith in þe behalte of his aduersary. They could
not answer her, for the great noise which was in the place;
which was for that that þe Crake, imagining that the time
was now expired, had closed with þe prince, clasping his booy
within his brawny armes, he did not plucke him so fane frð
his horse, as he would; for that that the balliancy of þe lover,
seeing what he had lost, did animate him so, as he did looke
what detaineth him; but it was but for a small time: for with
a strong pluck he dismounted him, desiring him þe he would
not be overcome, but that he might hold him for his friend.
I desire no more, answered the prince, then mine eyes haue
sane, that by so many wayes you haue won the palme of the
bataille: but seeing the heauens will haue it so, all is yours, &
so wil I be as long as I liue. Many thanks did the Crake
giue him for his offer, & so he mounted on horsebacke, the va-
lour of the knight of Cruellie being admired. There was
none in that place, (notwithstanding þe it was against their
prince) but did extoll with high praises þe knight in þe yellow.
The coming of the most valiant Asternio, stayed their pro-
ceedings, who in the most mightie the Mars himself came
mounted vpon a most furious flea-bittē coloured horse, at his
furnitures being of rich græne cloth of gold, sowē ouer with
hearts, which made a very faire shew; for the defence of his
horse, vnder this furniture, there was excellent fine maye:
in his crest hee bare a most faire plume, all spangled with
gold, his armour was of þe colour of his furniture, saving that
in the midst of his shield, in a field azure, he bare a Lady so
fayre and well made, as it gaue delight to al the beholders:
before her was a Knight kneeling, shewing her a burning
heart enflamed with a strange fire, & in þe border this Poet.

Well may this Sacrifice

Giue hope assurance

Of great confidence.

The fourth booke of the third Part

Much did the fayre Laydes extoll the deuice of this gallant louer: But to the fayre Polinarda, who remembered her Floriano, all this was a death; for she had yelded her self to loue, & who loueth faithfully is not forgetfull; but absence rather reuiueth the memorie of those which loue perfectly, preserving the touch of their faith.

The gentle disposition of this Gwyne did well please the Gyecke: but seeing that without his death hee could not accomplish his promise made to the prince of Apulia, without further pausing on the matter, he turned about, and went to the place where the lances were, where, with his owne hands he made choise of one of the greatest and most stiff and tough among them.

I am of opinion (sayd the fayre Troila, saying what hee did) that the affection is not alike, which my knight shewed to the prince of Lucania, to that which hee beareth to him which is now before him. The occasion should not be small (sayd the fayre Solersia) who in her soule was grieued that Asterio should by so many meanes procure Polinarda to be his wife. Let vs see (quoth she) what will become of this enmitie; I am perswaded this battaile will bee worthy the seeing.

Now were these 2. famous warriours, confronting y^e one the other, when the Gyecke with a soft pace came towards him, saying, You already know (Sir Knight,) the conditions of my demand, which are, that you tel me your name, and the name of the Lady whom you serue; for to be assured that her beautie doth excell hers which is Lady of my life, without any battaile I will yeld the prize.

I would not that wee should haue made so long delay (sayd the furious yong man) to make so long a discourse: for I am perswaded to resolute you sooner with the battaile, then to shew you in sight the Lady whom I serue: Yet vnderstand, that I am called Asterio, prince of Calabria, and the Lady whom the heauens haue ordeined for my soueraignie, is the kings daughter of this land. To haue a good foundation

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

foundation (said the balorous Greeke) for you, to haue presumed to lift your affection to so high degree, it were without question no great matter to giue you the palme of this battaile, and so I will haue it, not in regard of the beauty which the heauens haue adorne the Lady withall, but to let you know how presumptuous you haue beene, to make her to loue her.

These discourteous speeches (said the warlike Amor) deserue the fury of the braue Asterio, being as red in the face as a burning coale, without regard of what to a knight did appertaine, seeing him so neere vnto him, stung with that which he had sayd, with more force then discretion, hee hurled his well pointed lance; onely the excellence of Claridiano his shield saued his life: for being vnable to pierce it, the lance flew backe againe whole, but not in such sort, but that it was likely to haue made the Greeke to haue lost his Saddle; for it made him strike his head vpon his horse buttocks, which stood him in no lesse stead, then the earth did Anteus; for redoubling his courage, hee settled himselfe with such wrath, that nothing could be more cruell; there was neuer scene so angry countenance in any Knights, it made aboue foure of the most baltant to lose all the colour in their faces, to see their furious encounters, a good palme, he raised himselfe vpon his stirrups, & whorling his lance about his head, with greater agilitie then Mars himselfe, hee hurled it at the Pagan, who was about to draw his sword.

The thunder maketh not so great noyse in rentling the clouds, as the Greeke made, hitting in the middle of the Pagans shield. It preuailed not, that it had more foles of well tempered steale in it, then Aiax his shield had, to resist the force of this louer; for it passed thorow, and smote on his brest-plate, but found no defence therein, (for as the shield was broken, and his fortune prolonging his life to a worse end) the head of the lance turned aside vnder his arme, so as it came forth at his shoulders, an armes length and more.

The fourth booke of the third Part

The *Spoye* fell not, for he had his legges fastened to his horse, but he made him so much forget himselfe, that all the company held him for dead.

O mighty *Iupiter* (quoth the King) of what strength is this Knight! without all doubt it is not matchable in the world; for he hath at one blowe overthrowen one, whome we held for one of the most valiant in the world. Few of the Ladies were sorry for the *Spoyes* disgrace; for Mars his fury did more raigne in him, then any amorous regard: he at the first dash pretended to purchase *Polinarda*, which with great ioy sayd:

Polw, I say, saye Lady, that your businesse is in better assurance then was imagined, not through want of the beauty wherewith the high beaueus haue enriched you, but for the great accompt which was held of this Knight.

I rather attribute it to the loue (answered the Ladie) which my Knight beareth vnto mee, then for that wherein (wholly to binde mee) you would attribute to my beautie; and truly I am sorry for this Knight, onely, for that he resembled one whom in my Countrey I knew; (an example for those which are lours to admire:) for mee thought, as it appeared by him, that if loue it selfe should be enamoured, it should not possibly atteyne to that degree which his faith held, which was the most rare that euer was sene: for I neuer sawe heart so tryed with the crosses of Fortune, which so perswaded as his did, onely for that he would not lose a iote of his louely affection.

I would fayne know (sayd the saye *Soleria*) what he might be, if it may be spoken, to the end that hauing those partes which you report, we may esteeme of him accordingly, and as is reason: for here hath bene to the cost of many, another affection without comparison, and tryed with the rarest experience that can be imagined.

He whom I saw in my Countrey (answered the discrete *Troyla*) was called *Florisiano*, who for his faith,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

in my conceite, deserved any good hope: (She had scarcely made an ende of naming him, when the two Ladies imagined, that it was he whom they loved, and whose absence they so much sorrowed, especially the gentle Polinarda, who being much troubled, gave occasion to Troyla to say:

It seemeth to mee (worthy Ladies,) that this is not the knight whome I know, yet neuerthelesse, I perceiue that his name is not a little esteemed in this Countrey, seeing that the remembrance thereof is so acceptable. It is true, answered the sayre Solersia, that in time past there was a knight in this Citie, as rich in constancie, as poore in fortune, whose absence hath bene no small grieue to the chiefeest in this kingdom. The discrete Poyre Ladie, seeing the way so plainly open for that which she pretended, drew out of them all that she would.

There is nothing more easie (most noble prince) then to discover the passion of the soule, when it is griued; for by a sigh, or by asking one name, two or three times, it maketh shew of a life in loue. The kings daughter of Luccania plainly confessed all.

And as the two Ladies discoursed of the Prince of Apulia, at an instant the discrete Troyla set before her sayre eyes the plot of all the businesse, declaring vnto her with such perswasion, that hee which had bene her captiue, was Prince of Apulia, vntill at last, seeing all was in safetie, shee playnely told her, that his companion, who fought these battailes, was the same Florisano, and that if she so much loved him, she should dispose of herselfe to depart with him.

The sayre Solersia did so well discharge the part of the Prince of Apulia, that Polinarda bled these speeches:

It seemeth to mee, worthy Dames, that the fates haue disposed of this businesse, according to the desire of the Lady Princeesse of Campania; and seeing it is so, al that which the

The fourth booke of the third Part

heauens and the will, shall be accomplished in this manner (sayd the sayre Troyla) with greater passion, then at the beginning we may behold the battaile, whose successe is worthy of another Chapter.

CHAP. VII.

Of the ende of the cruell battaile betweene the Greeke Prince, and the braue *Asternio*, and of that which more succeeded,



The power which blinde passion beareth in an amorous brest (most noble Prince) is plainly set forth vnto vs in the rigorous behauiour of *Asternio*, for wrath bin so predominante in him, that it made him to tread the Lawes of Arms and knight-hood vnder foote, and therewith reason: for, for not to deserte (for a small space, his reuenge, he committed a thing neuer bled, for which he was iustly requited: for the Greeke drew new forces from his ill behauiour, to put him in the case which we left him, with opinion of all, that hee was dead: for although that the blow past smoothly by, renting his armour onely, yet to see the head out at the other side and his shield pierced, every man accounted him dead; for so hee seemed to be.

The furious *Claridiano* drew nere. Gualtenor reporteth, that hee neuer fought battell with so great malice as hee did this, (as hee plainly gaue notice) for with all the might that hee was able, hee smote him on the top of the helmet, and hit him on the bare, because that the Pagan could not lift vp his arme with his shield, there was no defence against the Greeke force: for he hurled all his feathers to the ground, & part of his crowne of his head: with the payne of the blow his valorous spirit came againe to himself, and

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and breaking his lance, as if it had bene a reed, he threw
the trunchion a great way off from him, setting hand to his
sword, and was so angry, and ashamed to be saue in such e-
state, that befoze the Crake could make benefite of his agi-
litie, he had reacht him two sound blowes, the one after the
other, with eyther of which, hee had entred the waire, had
not his armour ben good: he made him bow downe his head
to the pommel of his saddle, casting blood out at his mouth.
The Crake (out of his fathers battell) neuer met with a
more couragious aduersarie, and therefore it was a thing
worth the sight, to see him fight, hastening such mightie
blowes and so thicke, as made the Goye stand in doubt of
his safetie, and made him with his eyes to see his error, no
lesse to his cost, then the losse of his life and honour: but for
all this, he left not sometimes to giue such blowes, that the
people should not account the battell for calme or euid.
 foure houres were past since they beganne: and as at the
first, they wheeled about, drawing forces out of great
blowes, the Crake gaue the Pagan such a blow on the
shield, that he cut the one halfe cleane away, so tormenting
his arme, that hee could not lift vp the little which remai-
ned: and so he flung it to the ground, pursuing the Crake
more fiercely, then the hungrie Lyon doth the fearefull
sheepe-flocke, he reacht him vpon the toppe of the rich hel-
met, a blow with such furie, that although that he cut it not,
by reason of the good temper thereof, yet for all that, it made
him to see the twinkling starres of the skies, within the
helmet, making him for a space to forget himselfe, and ta-
king benefite of the time, he gaue him such a stabbe in his
louing breast, that it much grieved him; they were come so
close and so nere together, that being vnable to strike, and
seeing him so nere, he clapt him in his strong armes: The
Pagan refused not to wrestle, neither would he, if hee had
ben Amicus. There was neuer battell so fought; for they
were so lockt together, that they stood more firmly fixed in
the ground, then the roots of a great and wel growne Tree.

The fourth booke of the third Part

All men wondred at this rigorous combat, thinking with themselves, that there neuer was the like scene in the world: and so was the King saying to the Prince his sonne, that hee was much beholding to the Knight of Cruelty, seeing how he had dealt with him, and the like to the Prince of Campania, who maruelling much thereat, said, I doe certainly beleue, that this battell will be perpetually memorable, and much it would grieue me, that eyther of them should die, seeing how great losse their death would bring to the world. The sorrow would bee generall, (saide the gentle Lisander of Lucania) who was of opinion, that hee in the yello w would obtaine the victorie. They turned to behold the battell, which at that instant was maintained with much obstinacie, but in the end they were of flesh, and fell to the ground, they gaue ouer their hold, betaking themselves to their armes, where with they afresh renewed the battell, which was worth the seeing, although with some aduantage to the Greeke; for as he was more nymble, hee charged and rettyed with agilitie both of body and minde. The Dagan would haue relied himselfe, who, as hee was heauily armed, and corpulent of body, and the battell had lasted so long, he was out of breath, & said thus, If it please you, Sir Knight, let vs rest vs a little; for there remaineth time inough to ende the battell. I will take none (answered the cruell yong man) neither shall there be any thing to giue it me, but to see thy head in my hands, for the ill manners, which thou didst vse towards me. There is no venturous Tiper, but was to be accounted meeke and gentle, in respect of the Swore, who being perswaded that his speeches had encouraged y^e enemye, assailed him as fiercely as a Tyger, & said, Stay, and thou shalt see to thy cost, what the assurance of that god which I requested, might haue done thee. It had so stung him in minde, to see himselfe lightly regarded, that with greater force then at the beginning, he againe assailed the Greeke, giuing him with both his hands a great blow, on the toppe of his Crest, that it made him

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

to set both his hands to the ground. He hasted to him with another, & herewith hee had wholly ouerthrowne him, but that he holpe himselfe with his knees, which were so strongly fastened in the earth, that hee could not stretch himselfe out at length, to giue further place to the Pagans furie.

Without all doubt, the Greeke had bene in great danger, and the battell to him would haue bene much more costly, but that rigorous sune being past, at an instant appeared the advantage on his side, which was in the yelow.

There is no doubt to be made of y^e pleasure, which y^e gentle Sir Florisiano of Apulia, would haue receiued therein, seeing how wel the Prince had persourmed his promise: if he had there with knowne, how weil the faire Troyla had negotiated for him, no man would haue bene more glad then hee: there was no reason, but hee which had loued, and did so effectually loue, as he did, but he should be so, and so hee set himselfe, to see the end of the warre, which lasted not long: for the Greeke being extremely angry for the blowes which hee had receiued, arose more fierce then a Basiliske, often giuing him such cruell blowes, as put him cleane out of breath, making him sometimes to set his hands, and sometimes his knees to the ground; which did much moue him, seeing before his eyes, the death, wherewith the cruell Knight had threatned him, who being desirous to end the warre, defending himselfe with his shield, closed with him, and gaue him such an encounter, that it made him giue backwards; making the way of falling, hee holpe him thereto, with a strong stabbe, which was the last that hee receiued: for hee had not thoroughly vpon the ground spread his broad shoulders, when through his visor he cut from him all hope of enioying Polinarda, ending his life and his loue, both at an instant, with so much contentment to the louers, that it shall bee fitter to bee left to consideration, then any thing concerning the matter, here to be set down in writing.

The fourth booke of the third Part

waiting. The Græke entred into his tent to repose him, embracing the Prince of Apulia, who knew not what to do for joy. By this time the faire Titan had ended his journey, and the Ladie Lucina was to begin hers, when the friends of the dead Prince carried him from the place, giving, according as to him did appertain, honourable buriall. The Prince of Apulia went to the faire Troyla, who with some she-wes (although fained) of sorrow for the dead man, said, from this time forward, I will take the word from my Knight, if he please, because he shall leaue so cruel a denice, as that which he beareth for my sake. It was agreed betwene them, that on that side of the Ladies garden which Florisiano knew, they should come, where she would warrant his life, and receiue him for her husband. The young man went downe so troubled, to see himselfe in her presence, and not to lead her by the hand, which loued him as her selfe, as it were impossible, but that his alteration would be noted. To auoid tediousnes, I do not set downe how he felt himselfe, when he knew what the Ladie determined. Happie loue (said the Prince) seeing such hands haue dealt therein, bringing it to that ende which the loue deserueth, and happie Florisiano, which shal enioy the same. The contentment which I receiue with my mistresse fauour, (noble Princeesse) is no greater, then that, which to see the effect of yours, doth yeld me, and how carefully you haue procured it: it is a fauour which I haue receiued, which cannot yet bee requited, for that bringeth the payment therewith, seeing you haue accomplished it with your valour and my necessitie.

Those few houres which they past, seemed a thousand, to goe to the place appointed, where, hauing taken order for all that was to be caried, the Ladie leauing a letter for her father, contayning a thousand amorous excuses, reciting to him all the whole course of their loue past, she stayed in company of the faire Solertia, who would not part without speaking to the valiant Florisiano.

Wither

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Without the inclosure remained the faire Troyla and therest of the Ladies, with Palisander, and the two Princes, he of Apulia helping the Greeke, who in a moment gat vp to the top of the wall, and giuing his hand to Florisiano, they leapt into the garden, where y^e louers could not speake the one to the other (a common thing in the law of loue.) But the pleasant Solersia, embracing the Prince of Apulia, said, I would not valiant Prince, that that Ladie had told vs the discouerie of Iaroe, for it had bene to put vs in new grieffe, to loue you, not as the Carthagenian, but as the Lord of Apulia. I was assured, worthie Princesse, (answered the Prince) that she who then did me fauour, would now worthily accomplish it with that generositie where with you are endued. Your sight and new acquaintance (quoth she) is for so small a time, that I cannot suffer this Ladie to enioy the same, to whome your abience hath bene so grievous, that she could hardly bee comforted: But seeing that the heauens will that you come together, there is nothing to bee done but to giue thanks therfore; and wee are all glad thereof.

Those true louers embraced each other with so much joy as cannot bee imagined; it sufficeth to beleue, that it was the greatest in the world, being purchased with so much troubles, which doe season the good when it commeth to bee enioyed. About an houre they stode talking, giuing many thanks to the Greeke for that which hee had done for them, admiring his beautie and few peeres. Much it grieved the Ladies to depart; but seeing that it was requisite, giuing in charge to Solersia, to procure her Fathers good will, and excuse the Prince of Apulia, with his beloued Lisander, giuing strickt embracements they took their leaue, the Ladie returned to her lodging without being percelued. The Princes in their armes receiued the Kings daughter, which went away very feareful of her Fathers displeasure; it was good hap that she lost not her senses for sorrow; but Lisander and his beloued Solersia took so good order, that
B. they

The fourth booke of the third Part

they did not onely satisfie him, but also procured him to pardon them, seeing hee was so well married, as with the Prince of Apulia, who, with his beloved Polinarda, with the rest of the Princes, took the way towards Apulia, with determination to leuie the greatest forces, that hee should be able, and goe to the succour of Grecia, for the much that he was bounden vnto the Prince thereof. And so in a short space, he armed twentie thousand knights, entreating the Prince Claridiano, to goe into Greece with him: who yielded thereto, but vpon condition, that he should neuer speake to any man of him; for no lesse then his life depended thereon.

And so they took their course towards the great port of Grecia, where they arrived in happie time, not without many great suddaine passions of the Graeke louer, to know himselfe so nere to her whome he carried in his soule; they took land, the Emperour receiuing them with such grauntie as appertained. But the Graeke louer would neuer disco- uer his name, neither would hee see her which was Ladie of his life; and therefore took his leaue of the Ladies, promising the Emperour, that he would not depart out of Grecia befoze the warres were ended, which was then euen at their doores, the enemies comming being most certaine; with his Squire Palisander alone, accompanied with a thousand passions of loue, hee took his way into a wood, which was called, The wood of Willowes, purposing to change his armes, and so vnkowne to giue aide to his Grand-father. Hee greatly reioyced, to see the great good preparation in a readinesse, being of opinion, that with so great armies and so well armed, the land might be defended against all the rest of the world. Foure daies he wandred in that wood, without any aduenture worthie of memorie, vntill the fifth in the euening he heard a great noyse, as though it had beens of knights fighting, he mended his pace, making towards the place where he heard the noyse: but he had ridden but a little way, when an old man leaning vpon a great Bush,

tooke

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

toke his horse by the Reines, saying, Hold thee, Prince of Greece, for it behoueth thee not in any case to goe any further forwards; so, to goe, to say the truth, it is to goe to the house of death.

What art thou, honourable auncient old man (answered the Prince, beeing much abashed therewith) which knowing me, hast bound me vnto thee, for the aduertising of me of the danger wherein I went: He, valorous Prince, which many yeeres hath procured your good, as hee which most dearly loueth you; and therefore alight; for without my helpe, you shall not come to the battell, whereof you haue heard so much, neither shall you serue in the warres in the field, without being knowne to your parents, and friends, which will bee little for your ease, and somewhat hard for you to endure.

The valorous young man with a skip was on foote, verie desirous to know who this olde man was, which knew so much of his life. Hee had hardly set his fete to the ground, when the olde man with his armes displayed, in his owne likenesse of Gualtenor, came to embrace him, saying, Doe not thinke, my beloued sonne, that I take so little care for your contentment, but that I procure it moze effectually, then if it were for my selfe; and seeing I perceiue your desire to returne into Grecia, and the disgrace wherein you are with your Mistresse, and the neede that there is of your helpe, I haue enforced my selfe to come to yeeld remedie to all, aduertising you first (to the end that you may with contentment endure this long warre) that if you loue, you are beloued in good earnest, and with the soule; but the high heauens haue so ordained, that you shall not liue assured from this, untill that these warlike hands haue shed the blood of that person whome you best loue in the worlde, your sorowes being then grown to the highest, which you shall not be able to passe, and then will come the ioy which you desire, which your destinies haue prepared for you, the

The fourth booke of the third Part

most acceptable in the world: and because you shall see unknowne, I haue brought you here certaine armours, which I began to forge long before you were borne, and onely against this warre: they are such as no other Master is worthie thereof, but the Prince of the two Empires, there are onely three which equall them in value, so that that the temper of them all was given under one planet; with these and this Jewell you may see in lifetime; for you shall see knowne by no man (except such as you will.) At an instant the Armes were present, and were such as the old man had reported, all set with Pearles and blacke Checker-work and some spots of Russet. The prince had never seen a fairer thing, neither did the world containe any; so it seemed to exceede all humane workmanship. The young man put them on, remaining the same that he was before, and so well disposed, that Gualtenor could not forbear to say, O luckie Planet, under which so gracious a Knight was begotten, and happie Armours, seeing that it may well be said, that within them is incorporated the flower of chivalrie. He gave him a rich Jewell, which was of most fine Rubies, of no lesse worth, then faire in the world. In putting it about his necke, he seemed to bee of greater age, and his colour was not so white, his haire curled, and turned up in his forehead. Lirgandeo saith, that hee resembled the god Mars, when by force of armes upon the earth hee wonne Venus. Hee gave him a shield of the colour of his Armour: and in the midst of the field he set Crueltie, as hee bore it before, although with a different writing, for on the side appeared manye Ladies which tooke compassion of him, and under this Met.

If to be grieved for your loue,
Were a meane to ease your paine,
Who would deferre the same,
If he knew what t'were to loue.

In the whole campe, for this device hee was called, The Knight with the Ladies, and he was rightly called so: for the

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

the most of them did affect him.

With these (valorous prince, and my sonne) you are to defend your Countrey, which according to the perillous combates wherein you shall be, they are those which shall assure my weary old age, and your good success: that which I request, is, that you proceed not in the warre in such sort, that your doings be correspondent with your device; for there is nothing that doth so much dishonour a man, as crueltye. I can say no longer, for the much that I have to see else, where; but you may goe in safetie: for if you be in neede, I will come to your ayde, as he which most loveth you. He embraced him with as much tendernes, as if he had bene his owne carnall sonne: hee tooke his leave of Palifander, to whom he gaue a girdle which altered his complexion.

The valiant Crake saw himselfe so plaine in the shewes of his shield, that he needed no looking glasse, hee could not chuse but laugh, and say to the olde man at his departure, Assuredly, deare father, if you could as well change my lady's distressfull conditions, as the colour of my face, wholly in your hands would be reserved my contentment.

The old man presently vanished away, and the Crake returned to his begun carriere, where let vs leave him, to take our way towards Greece.

CHAP. VIII.

Howe the aduenture of the hateful Tower, with the libertie of the fayre *Linda brides* was ended; with the coming of the Ambassadors from Rome; and of that which therewith happened to the Ladies.



The Armes of the famous Athenian being lost, with his dagger onely in his hand (a most noble prince) wee left him in the end of the third booke to the noble Claramante, in the top of the hateful tower, in view of all the Crake Court, who stood there, with great
B 3 desire

The fourth booke of the third Part

desire from thence to behold the most beautifull Lindabridles, hee which most shewed himselfe, was the great Emperour Alphebus, who could not put out of his mind, how much he was indebted to that Lady, & how ingratiously hee had euer shewed himselfe, treading vnder foote that which he desired, worthy to be more esteemed of the world, then he was by him. All those which had knowen her, desired no lesse, her rare beautie leauing them affected vnto her, and the faith and loyalty which she euer bare to her prince.

They were quickly in better and more certaine hopes; so, to see the couragious Knight without Armes, had shew'd it, as with a cloud: but not to see him so, with great surp hee strake the sayle, with greater courage then before he had shewen, when his person was furnished, putting himselfe in point, not onely to defend himself, but also to offend & recouer his lost Armes. Contrary to his desire stood those of the towre, saying, There requireth more care to be taken in y^e coming in, sir Knight, then you haue yet shewen; which is a matter, which onely to haue it, will put it in your hands.

There hath not bene so great want thereof (sayd the serious yong man) as of your part there doeth wickednesse abound, wherewith you haue proceeded; and to the ende that you may see that I am not without Armes, stay, and you shall see, how costly your confinement will proue vnto you. And herewith like a royall Eagle, with a tampe hee set himselfe in the midst of the Wall, where, O Apollo, that thou hadst the describing of this battaile, to set it out in particular, the acts of this yong Queene, according as they did deserue, which were worthy of no lesse then thy wisdom, and not of his that is bare and unfurnished of grace, and method, who yet hath not had knowledge and experience of the decesses in loue, what it is to be beloved, & what to liue secure from the paine which the soule feeleth! Wanting this (worthy Dames) what courage can my wearie penne haue, seeing the teares blot the letters I write, and dolefull conceits framed in my soule: Yet notwithstanding true

Being

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ling in your fauour, I will begin to describe the doings of this Greek, to set at libertie the Lady, whom hee best loved euer in his life.

In the midst of the Hall, he stood expecting these 2. which moze swift the a Sacre flying after her prey, came, the one with a battaile-axe aloft, & the other with the well sharpened sword of Theseus. The first was moze speedy in relieuing his blow, (which stood y prince in no little dead) soz making him to lose it, with a thip he closet with him: and as for his dagger, there was neither Arm or enchantment y could resist it: and finding himselfe nere y knight of the towre, he strake him on y top of his left shoulder, & drew it out againe dyed in his blood. By this time the other was come, with moze discretion the the first: soz hauing noted the quicknes & agilitie of the enemy, he came well in breath, with his sword in his hand, y point forwaids. The yong man had good hap, y he ran him not thorow; soz he toke it vnder his arme. He of the towre thought y he had sped him; & so drawing backe his sword, which making way to y flesh, came forth, without any dangerous hurt, hee marked his fortune, & considered that it was no fearefull hurt; he would not lose occasion in a matter where it was so necessary, to see himselfe desitute of Armes, & so with the strength that he recovered aboue all others of his time, he gaue him a perillous stab in y midst of his brest, & had slaine him, if he had not giuen back, drawing out his bloody dagger, at what time as he with the battaile-axe came, wel strengthened on y left shoulder, he would haue run him in with y point: the Greek could do no moze, but with his force and his dagger, shun y fearefull halbard; but not so, but that he first wounded him shrewdly, going forth in the arme: he feared ill successe, because the battell was very unequal, with so apparant disadvantage: yet for all this, although he saw himself hurt in some places, & the hal spinkled with his blood, hee made no shew of want of courage, but rather with greater the he had held in former battailes, he charged and retyred vpon his enemies, and ranged them, covered all ouer with their owne blood.

The fourth booke of the third Part

Those which sawe the battaile, did wonder, assuring themselves that they had neuer scene the like in their liues; and it was so indeed, for fewe had there part like this, for those of the towre liue onely to fight, and our Claramant, to be feared, so as the heauens had the more enabled them both, to the end to yeld the battaile the more cruell.

I beleue (sayd the mighty Trebacijs) that the heauens doe take compassion on this Lady, seeing that to relieue her they haue sent such a knight. We are no lesse bounden (said the sayre Luciana) for this, the for the enchanted towre, that I not hauing the knight of the Lyons, could not be called your Maiesties daughter, neither see the maruailes which it performeth: God speed him, and grant him well to ende this present battaile, (said the gallant Archifilora) for there wil not want Ladies to loue him. O fortunate knight (said the gentle Clarinea of Celandia) seeing that befoze it is knowne who he is, the Ladies dispose of themselves who shall best loue him.

This followeth valour well employed, said the gallant Venus, who drew nere, although I haue knowne another knight no lesse worthie to be beloued, then he of the Lyons; and heerein the Lady Layla wil take my part. For this which is so well knowen, who would but draw nere, although with hazard of life, answered the Lady: for there would want no knights to helpe me.

I would not bee the last (sayd the venturous Dacian) for me thinketh, that with those of the towre al runneth at euery hand. It is no small matter to come to so doubtfull battaile, with this apparant disadvantage (said Claridiana) and in requital of what these Ladies haue shewed, the Prince of Dacia shall tell vs who this knight is.

He hath here so much kindred (sayd Don Heleno) that whereas he might fight for iudice, here he might doe it for affection. He presently shewed them in what maner he met with the Prince of Grecia, and Trapisonda, in Sclauonia, and what had happened vnto him concerning the sayre

Venus.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Venus. I now say, (saide the gentle Rosamundi) that I mar-
neile not, though a Lady so much beholding, returne for him,
which set her in so happy estate as it is to be beloued.

They could pzoceed no farther, for the great noyse which
the people made, which were in the Court: and beholding
the cause thereof, they saw y^e the Knight of the Lyons, after
two houres space, in a most bloody battaile, besending him-
selfe from him with the halberd toynd with him, and clasp-
ping the same nere where he held it, with a sudden touch
hee pluckt it out of his hands, thrusting him a good way off
from him: he gat it not so scot-free, but that hee receiued a
greater wound then he had of all y^e day giuen him, in one of
his thighes, so as without great paine he coulde not stir it; he
felt it not for ioy that he had gotten this wished for halberd,
wherewith hee was a Phoenix in Armes: With this peri-
lous weapon he made roome in the Hall.

There can no sorrow be compared to theirs which were
in the towre, especially his which had lost it. For al this they
would grant him no entrance: but with two poinyards with
a soft pace he made towards the Græke, and in comming
nere him, making shew with the greatest force & quicknes
in the world to come within him, he hurled one at him; the
Lord defended him, for the great good which for his sake he
should accomplish. In throwing this cruell poinyard, hee
mist his best, but strake him thorow the arme, from side to
side; the payne pierced him to the very soule, but before they
parted, he gaue him his deserued payment, welding his hal-
berd so wel as he could, hee reach him such a knocke on the
pate, that if it had bene of Diamond he had broken it, & fel-
led him dead at his feet. His companion seeking reuenge,
would needs close with him, but knowing his meaning, hee
held out his halberd before him, and the other was so blind,
that he ran vpon the point thereof, and as the yong Græke
holpe him with his due, he threw him on his back in y^e midst
of the Hall, where in a moment winning the entrance to the
last locked Chamber, hee bereaued him of his life with the

The fourth booke of the third Part

greatest ioy of the world, making account that all had bene ended. The Crake took vp the goods, and without slaying for the rest of the furnitures, he went, thinking to enter into the lodging, very desirous to see the end of this adventure: he had but one sute within the doore, when he heard a new al-arme given, so hiercally, that the Crakes were in great doubt of their liuight, laing him so shrewdly hurt: but he who feared nothing, without any mistrust, with the battell-axe in his hand, would enter: but without being able to auoide it, a fierce wild savage man, couered allouer with oke leaues, clasping him in his armes, said, Dost thou thinke (prince of Grecia) that there is as nothing els to be done: Know thou, that for thy presuming to come into my lodging, thou shalt neither see nor know thy parents, which thou hast here present. It shall be as it shall please the heauens to appoint it, (said the furious yong man) closing with him; where you might haue saue one of the most gailant wjestlings in the world; for notwithstanding y the Crake was so sorely hurt, that which this moner had layd vnto him, gaue him such courage, that he would that the moner had bene stronger then he was, to the end that he might the better haue bene able to thre his owne, although that that was such, that lifting him from ground, he drew him out of the lodging, & carried him so farre as the Hall, getting ground of him in wjestling. The youth took footing, holding himselfe disgraced to be so handled; and raysing himselfe against his enemye, recovered what he had lost, and on a sudden entered with him into the lodging, where they strugled a long space, vntill at length (fortune shewing her selfe fauorable in the behalfe of the Crake) with a strong whaling about he threw him downe nate vnto a great bowle, where vpon he set his hand, thinking to knale vpon the Savage: but before he could doe it, there was heard the greatest noyse that euer was heard in the world; a thousand visions coming out of the Wolue, appeared to those which were in the court; the skyes were darkened, and there was such lightning, that

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

that made the most couragious hartily afrayd, and much more the Ladies, which being from their gallants, gaue a thousand scriches for feare, after this earthquake which seemed as though heauen and earth should haue come together. In the towne was heard the most sweet and best tuned musick in the world: it seemed to the a thing come from heauen; none were discomfited, but such as were wounded with loue, for to those onely comfort may be giuen by those which bereaue it. And but that the great Lirandeo did recomfort the Quene of Lira, assuring her of the Princes health and safetie, telling her that it was not conuenient that they should so soone meet, without doubt this heauenly musick had bene lethsome; and but for that aduertisement, they had gone to sake him; for they could not forbear to lament his absence. This swete harmony did no lesse recomfort the warlike yong man; for therewith he thought as in deed it was true) that he was whole and cured of his hurts, and beholding with whom he had wrestled, wondering to see him selfe armed and sound, he perceyued that he was in the armes of a very sayre Lady, with a Quenes crowne vpon her head: euery body knew that it was Quene Iulia; who taking the yong man by the hand, sayd vnto him, Come with me, valorous Prince, and thou shalt see a reward worthy thy great valour, as well kept as you haue scene. He could giue her no answer, imagining that it was some enchantment, but followed her, and entring into a rich square room, two statues which stood at y^e doore, casting flowers vpon the Grekes head, at his entring bowed downe, saying, The long wished for Claramance of Grace is welcome: for with his coming are ended y^e troubles and anguishes of her whō he most dearely loued, who although she were ill requited, yet seeing her liberty gotten by so great valour, the injury which she hath endured, may be accounted happines. As y^e Greke came into the hall, he was rauished of his wits, to see y^e strange pictures, & curious workmāship: he staid a while to consider of y^e loue which that Prince he

The fourth booke of the third Part

had borne the *Cyake* prince, and the faith which she had sacrificed vnto him; and seeing how desolate he had left her, it extremely grieved him; he being a man (as *Quatenaer* sayth) who took exceeding compassion of ladies, would sayne know that *Bright* which was so ingratefull, and challenge him for it. But the *Quene* put him from it, because that the gallant *Lindabrides* was come, whom many too to see that *Bright* in her walke, where neuer any before had bene. The *Quene* slept forth wardes and late, *Scenes* raigne princeesse of the *Scythians*, remembre the King, to whom the heavens haue presented for you, in place of the ingratefull *Alphabo*. It was long since that *Lindabrides* had seene him, yet she presently knew him to be the youth *Caramante*, whom she dearly loved, for the great resemblance betwene him and *Alphabo*; and her ioue being now well cooled, she presently affected him, being of opinion, that he onely was the man, who next after his brother did vorthily deserue her beautie. The free young man escaped no better; for neither his valiant heart, neither the helious armes which had preserved him from so many dangers, could defend him from the vounts and fyre which he receiued here to; menteth his bassals; for beholding the rare beautie of the *Scythian* princeesse, and her gracious countenance, with the glorie of her most sayre face, he thought that there was nothing els to be desired in the world, nor other contentment but to ioue her: for he was ready to giue vp his Ghost, when he left to looke vpon her.

The gracious Princeesse answered *Quene* *Julia*, saying, I will not receiue this *Bright* (late *Julia*) so much because that the heavens haue sent him for my comfort, as for the gentlesse which he hath (with the hazard of his life, putting it into infinite dangers) he hath preserved my libertie, making me so much beholding vnto him, so as except I shal employ the same in that which may giue him content, altho that requitall is vnworthy of the name; for what I receiue, admitteth no comparison.

This

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

This (most worthy Princesse) sufficeth, answered the amorous young man, although I had aduentured farre greater dangers, for I was bounden to doe it for your beauties sake, without respect of the eyes, but the desire of the soule; wherefore I pray you, (kneeling downe before her) giue me your faire hands, to pay the rente which all the world oweth them, and withall, receive mee for a knight, to doe you seruice, which shall aduance mee to the highest degree, that fortune is able to giue me. He could say no more, for beholding her, neither could he make any answer: for loue had so wounded them, that they were speechlesse, leaning to the eyes, the imaginations of the heart. But hauing recovered her speech, beholding the Princes goodly proportion, considering his valour, and what hee had done for her, shee took him vp by the armes, saying, There is no reason, valorous Prince, to giue my hand to him, who hath so good of his owne, which haue set at libertie, the most sorrowfull Damzell of the world: as for the rest, I would not shew any token of ingratitude, but to my selfe, I haue had so costly experience for you so much resembling the knight, which was wont to be called Alphabo, that I am afraid (and not without reason) you will resent le i m in all; and being so, I should but lose you more, to giue you occasion to shew your selfe inconstant. I would, Soueraigne Princesse, (answered the tender-hearted Prince) that I were not so nere of kinne, as I thinke I am to that knight, to make him know his vnthankesfullnesse; for it is a sufficient defect in mee, not to know what I see, and nothing in the world can adde mee to hope for any good, but from this hand. Wherewith, answered Diane Julia) I will be free, (noble Prince) which shall intire this worthy Prince to accept you for hers, and I will be true to you for her, and to her, that you shall see thankesfull. The gallant ladies brides graunted what the Crake required, and more shee could not doe, for any thing to be wished; for Loue had made her wholly tributary to the Crakes beautie: see him

The fourth booke of the third Part

her hands with so great contentment to them both, that if hee thought that he speede well, he accounted her selfe happy, to be beloued by him. There was neuer heard sweeter musicke vpon the earth, neither better comforted, then they beare, when they made an ende of entertaining him. Although that thole, which stood thereby in the Tower, did see what pass, yet they heard not what the Princes said, but seeing them to come hand in hand out of the hall, they well knew, that the aduenture was ended. Let vs goe, (most noble Emperour, said Lirgandeo) to receiue these Princes; for you and my Lady the Emperesse, are those which get most therein; seeing that you holding Claramante for lost, who was stolne away in the Forrest, the Heauens haue pleased to bring him againe to your sight, with the extremities which you haue scene. This is he, whose name in the most remote and strange Countries shall be feared, and he, who among the greatest Monarchs shall be (and that with great reason) renowned. The Emperour was surprised with this new and sudden ioy, being hardly able to beleue it, for so great a good as this, with much reason may be suspected. There was no Knight nor Lord, which came not downe, accompanying the Ladies, who by any meanes would bee absent at this entertainment. At the descending downe the Tower staires, at the top thereof, were foure Nymphes, faire more faire then the God Apollo, which with their Instruments, made the most heavenly harmony that euer was heard, and with their voyces extolled the praises of the two Lovers, saying in this maner:

Content and pleased may you be,
Si h *loue* so much your friend you see,
Your wish effecting in euery thing,
And constant loue without wauering.
All grieue from heart you may remoue,
Sith *Claramante* is your loue.

What

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

What greater good can be desired,
Then herein plainly is deciphered?
Valorous fortune seek'th your eate,
And with delights your minde to please,
Linking you in loue most constant,
With the valiant lovely *Claramant*.

The Heauens you grant in blessed state,
Long to enioy your louing Mate,
Without suspect or ielousie,
Caus'd by the angrie Deitie,
Nothing can disliking moue,
Claramant being your loue.

Valorous Prince, whose fame doth flie
From heere beneath, euen to the skie,
Emoying beautie, and the comeliest feature,
That euer Nature wrought on creature:
Confirm this good, and wauer not,
Let faithfull loue ne're be forgot.

This swete harmonie of the simples did so amaze the
hearts, that they thought themselves taken vp into the
quires of the inhabitants of the heauens: only the faire Ar-
chilora was in greatest rate, seeing the whole companie
reioycing, and her selfe wanting the cause thereof, yet with
the hopes which the wizard had giuen her, & shewed a
most faire pleasant countenance, which serued to no small
effect to maintaine the opinion which was held of her beau-
tie. And the Tower (giuing a great cracke) vanished away,
the Princes remaining hand in hand in the place, the com-
mon people beganne to extoll her beautie, about all the
Ladies in Grecia, and I maruaile not, for according
as shee came, Venus would haue seemed ougly. The
valorous Greeke led her by the left arme without his
L 4 Helmet,

The fourth booke of the third Part

Helmet, which one of the Ladies caried, and another, Theseus his battel-axe : the Ladies traine bore the discrete Quene Iulia. Gualtenor doth not describe the Princes countenance, but he saith enough, in saying, that he resembled his brother, when in Græce he overcame the great Meridian. This most faire Ladie came clad all in white, in a gowne with foure sleeves, cut vpon cloth of gold, set with Gold-smithes worke, which shewed like Carbuncles, interlaced with certaine knots : her yellow haire was sufficient to darken the Sun-beames, which she ware after the Egyptian fashion, made vp in tresses, whereon hang many precious stones, of sundrie colours, neuer was Phœbus so curious in gulping his chariot, as at that time ; for seeing her beautie, it was feared, that faster then with a good pace, he would haue come downe to the earth : but for all that, he kept his course, beholding the beautie of the Princesse of the Scythians. I know not, (worthy Ladies) how I am entred into this deepe sea, which here presenteth it selfe to me : for if I should describe all those Ladies which came to salute the faire Lindabrides, there would be no end thereof. They did all malice her, (not so much for her beautie) as to see her matched with Claramant. Some receiue the prince, glad to renew their old acquaintance, others reioycing at the happie estate, whereto Loue had brought him. Those which hee knew, hee entertained with the grace, wherewith the heauens had endued him, and as for the rest, with such countenance as was requisite, hee not knowing what they were.

Who is able to set downe, what these two felt, being competitor in all, when they came to embrace one another, Claudiana being secure, holding her selfe assured of Alphæbo, and shee with her new Loue, contented with her change :

This is a passage. (worthy Ladies) which without your fauour, I know not how I shall get out of it.

Worthy Empresse, (said the free Princesse) I would the heauens

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

heauens would haue graunted vnto me in time past, to doe
 that with as little care as now I doe, seeing how little this
 Knight hath had of me. Mine was neuer so much (answered
 the Emperour Alphebus) supreme Princeesse of the
 Scithes, as the care which your camelinesse put mee
 to, so as to defend my selfe from the forces thereof, I was
 enforced to shield me with the beantie of my Ladie the Em-
 presse. The rest of the Ladies left not to come forwarde,
 which came to entertaine her, some to know her, and others
 to behold her brauerie. They wholly (valorous Prince) ca-
 ried away both my wit and penne after them, and it is no
 great maruaile: for where Ladies are, there Knights are
 not to be spoken of, for that were to doe them wrong, and
 were it not for Claramante, I would not returne; to whom
 his mother holding him in her armes, vttered a thousand
 pittifull speeches. But leauing at last, most glad to see him
 before her, dissembling the ioy of her heart, there came his
 senere Father, who embracing him, said, No man vpon
 earth hath more reason to be glad then I, seeing that when
 I thought least thereof, it hath pleased the high heauens to
 cherish our old age with your faire presence. The Princes
 and Knights which were there, tooke him out of the Empe-
 rours armes, saying, Let vs in part enjoy this Knight, see-
 ing hee hath bene as much desired and wished for by vs as
 you which are his parents. These were those which tolde
 him, what all those Knights were which came to speake
 with him: he receiued al with so great grace and discretion,
 that they al loued him. I should spend more time then were
 reasonable, if I should particularly set down the whole en-
 tertainment, onely this I say, that with such contentment
 as is requisite in such a case, they went into the Emperours
 hall, where each Ladie called to her, her gallant, entertai-
 ning with them the rest of the time which remained, with
 great desire to know Don Heleno and the Princeesse Rosa-
 mundi, and no lesse to know Rosabel and his beloued Liri-
 ana. In the middest were the gallant Claramante, Linda-
 99 brides,

The fourth booke of the third Part

brides, and the faire Archisilora, which sought occasion to enquire for her lover. In this sweete conuersation, the Ladies and Princes past the time, without any feare of fortunes mutabilitie, when as into the Hall there came seven Knights, whose comely constitution made them all to wonder, especially two of them, which were armed in blacke, the other foure notwithstanding that they were Giants, their countenance was not offensive, the other was armed with a skie-coloured armour, wrought with many Jewell-flores of gold, with a greene Scarfe about his necke, leading a Damzell by the hand; what they may be and wherefore they are come, shall be let downe in another Chapter, because as I suppose, I haue bene somewhat long in this.

CHAP. IX.

How the Ambassadors of Rome arriued in Grecia, and what happened in the Emperours hall, among the Greeke Ladies.



How little trust there is to be reposed in the blind woman, we haue in hand the whole triall thereof, for there cometh no good by her order, but it bringeth a thousand abatements therewith, and when she will fauour a man, is it not to doe him a further mischief? When hath there any good bin hoped for, but that the euill hath tried the perfection of our being? Finally, in her is accomplished that which Bion hath forespoken, that the fauour of fortune, is a most certaine signe of some future euil; for who would haue thought, that had seene those famous Crækes, without care, enjoying the sweete and pleasing conuersation of the Ladies, that for them should be reserved such an after reckoning, as there ensued: for the Roman Ambassadors hauing travelled with

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

With prosperous weather at the instant, as you haue heard, arined in company with the two pillars of humane power, Bembo and Beauorance, forwarde went the messenger, which was the valiant Coriandro, Nephew to the mighty Brundusio, who leading the damsell by the hand, went directly to the Emperour, where he thought to find the valorous Dacia: he left the valorous Bembo so angrie and formented in minde, to see his beloued Liriana in Rosabels armes, that he knew not whether he were in heauen, hell, or vpon earth: and, but that he would not violate the Decorum, he would haue had him by the eares; and notwithstanding though it grieved him, yet he would not commit so great an error, but rather making way with the furious Pagan, he drew neere to see how the defiance was taken. The Pagan Coriandro was naturally proud, and reposing himselfe much vpon his companions, without any curtesie at all (a thing which both so much adorne any knight) putting by his Heuer with a troubled voice, he said, Who is he heere which is called Prince of Dacia? for to him am I to doe my errand. The young man little thinking of any such thing, was sitting in his Ladies lappe, and so they shewed him vnto him: there was neuer seene a more furious thing then the Moore; for seeing him among women, holding it impossible that he should beare that mind as he had heard of him at Rome, with a deepe voice he sayd vnto him, I am very sozy, Prince of Dacia, that hauing grieved so many as you haue done, you should sitte so carelesse as I saw you; a thing which any meane knight would not should bee reported of him, how much more he that hath presumed to cozen a Ladie no lesse then the Princeesse of Rome: and because that from henceforth thou maist be better aduised, cause this defiance to be read: for thou shalt not buy the Princeesses fauour so good cheape as thou thinkest, and after to mocke her, a thing not to be endured. No lesse proud was the Dacian, then any man that ware a sword, and so standing vpon his fete, with the resolution which he held

The fourth booke of the third Part

In all things, answered him, I would not, knight, that thy coming as an Ambassadour, should haue emboldened thee to speake without any good maners, and saine I would, without offending your office, make you know how ill informed you come. But men haue patience with those which bring a message. The Duke of Thebes took the defiance, and with a high voyce read it, that all might vnderstand it, which was thus :

The defiance.

Constantins, Emperour of Rome, Lord of all the Mediterranean; and Brundus Prince of Gibia, and of the confines of the Indian sea, with the mightie Arsiano Prince of Almaine, & the rest of the Kings, Friends, and Vassals to the prince of Dacia, greeting, for that in feare thou maist see the cruell vengeance which I meane to take of thee, and of those which haue declared themselves for thy partakers in requitall of the breach of thy word, not as a Knight giuen to my deare daughter to be her husband; a thing although thou hadst entreated it, had bene very well for thee, and hauing done so, guiding thy selfe, not with reason as was requisite, but with passion, it is told me that thou art married; whereat I am nothing sory, but should haue bene, to haue had so faithlesse a sonne: This shall serue for a warning to thee, seeing the reuenge which the heauens will giue me vpon thee, which graunt thee life.

As all Grace daily expected the coming of so mighty a Prince as the Soldan of Piquea, so was there no man troubled with this defiance, except the Prince of Dacia, whose colour waxing as red as a liue coale, said, Well did I imagine, knight, that with your proud ambassade there should come some Knight which should not weigh whether iustice were on his side or not; so; although that now there be no time to make excuses, admitting the defiance, I say, that

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

that all that wherewith thou doest charge mee is false, for although that I tried the aduēture of Bruto in the name of that Princeesse; yet there was neuer any speech of her part that I should be here; and in prouoking such Princes against me, they haue done it disloyally, seeing in perils they might haue come and requested me this: that without any other occasion they will trouble the world led by their blind passion: as for the rest, I hope that the life which they wish me, to see their reuenge, but I beleue I shall see it first on them; and to the end it shall not happen, I with my parents and friends will sake them at home in their owne countreys. He said no more, for he well remembred y^e he had bene more cholericke then is vsuall with Embassadors.

But the faire Rosamundi could not dissemble her griefe, seeing her louer deſied, of whom she had vnderſtood all that which had passed at Rome, and taking occasion of what Coriander had said, she said, He thinketh (Knight) you haue offended many, with your presumptuous manner of proceeding, in scoffing in disdaine at the Cræke Ladies, for to value the Dacian Prince to be of lesse worth, for being in our company. Whereby the iustnesse of the cause, for which you come, is the more plainly to be perceived: and because you shall vnderstand, that the coming from Kings, doth not warrant you, when you haue receiued your answer, I will make you know, that there are Ladies in Cræce, whose company yeldeth honour to Knights which frequent y^e same. There will not want those which will maintaine y^e challenge (quoth the faire Archifilora burning with anger) for such a disgrace as this shall not passe unpunished. For a mediator (answered y^e gallant Emperesse Claridiana) here is mine arme which in fauour of y^e Ladies, shall shew their equitie. In so iust a cause (sayd the faire Sarmatia) there is none that will refuse the combat against any of the five. I would I had Mars his strength (quoth the faire Liriana) to let these Knights know, that it had bene better for them to haue taken some other course. Let not that offend you, (sayd the

The fourth booke of the third Part

faire Rosamundi) for I, (as most iniuried) doe in challenge
 desie this Knight, and one of his companions, to the end
 they may see how little they are esteemed. All which was
 done with such a sudden, that the Emperour, although hee
 would, yet he could not haue entermedled therein. Some-
 what milder than before, (the furious Coriandro answered)
 Faire Ladies, where the victorie is so apparantly due to
 your beauties, the Knights of Gibeia do not vse to enter in-
 to battels, but against Kerne Knights, where the valour of
 the persons may appeare, & I am very sorie, y^e whereas so
 many knights are, they haue yielded to the Ladies to main-
 taine the honour of Grecia. This did somewhat nettles the
 Greeke Princes, that together arose thre, which well shew-
 ed what they were. They were no lesse then Rosabel, the
 warlike Claramante, and the furious Dacian, who being ar-
 med, without all doubt, would haue had them by the eares.
 But to auoid the hurly burly, the old King of Macedonia a-
 rose, willing the Ambassadors to goe with him, while the
 Grekes gave answer: a thousand times was Bembo a-
 bout to drue Rosabel, in his Distresse quarrel, and had done
 it, but that he saw, it would cause him to stay longer then
 Luperio had appointed. All was left to the field battell,
 where wanted no occasion, and every man had his hands
 full, as you shall heare. The defiance being accepted, they
 dispatched the Messengers, which did not a little wonder at
 the Ladies, and much more at the great paule, which they
 saw at sea, and the innumerable armie, which they saw on
 land: and because that in the Citie there was not room e-
 nough the Captaine generall had commanded many tents
 to be erected, compassed about with deepe trenches, which
 seemed another Citie. Some dayes they layed, because that
 thither came the wise Lord of Achata who, before he would
 goe forth of Greece, desired to be informed of the state of his
 enemies; but finding many contrarieties, he much doubted
 of the good successe, according to most mens opinion, seeing
 the great and mightie armie leued against the Grekes.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The foure Ladies were so displeased with the Pagans answere, that in the night, with their Armes, they went to seek them. They were quickly mist, and for feare that any disgrace should happen unto them, armed at all pieces with most assured Armes, there went after them, Don Heleno, and Rosabel, with Captaine Aristoldo, and the valiant Bransiniano; the valorous Brandafidel was none of the last, and the gentle Tenteo, with his Uncle Bramidoro, in company of the noble Alphebo, onely Rosader stayed behind: for that evening he felt himselfe not well, and the trouble of the faire Olima did much trouble him, which that night was belimed of a daughter, no lesse faire then her mother, neither did she cost lesse blood, as with the fauour of the Muses, I will declare, in the fourth part of this Historie, where her lones shall be described, the beginning whereof shall be declared in this fourth booke.

The new enamored Claramance, with his most rich and assured armes would goe alone, and notwithstanding that he knew not the country, yet the next day he met with the, but first the Ladies; which grieue to let them know their valour, tooke such order, that the next day by nine of the clocke, they saw them descending towards the sea-shore: for Benbo desirous to know the number of his enemies, had taken that way, whereat the Ladies greatly reioiced, especially Rosamunda, who spurring her horse, saye, Follow me, valorous Ladies, for I know the country, for I haue bene a hunting here, and I will be first with them, which will make them believe that we are but newly landed. They all consented, which no lesse desired it then she, although their horses were tyred; yet within an houre they came to the sea side: the saye Rosamunda came mounted vpon her beloued Don Helenoes horse, and Archisilora vpon Cornetino, which was Rosabels: the gallant Sarmacia did not chuse the worst, for she light vpon Aristoldoes, a better now armed in the world: the Princes were nothing grieved with all, but were rather glad, seeing they should be in the more
P 4
safetie,

The fourth booke of the third Part

safetie, there they stayed some what to repose them, and to put their horses in breath, all the Ladies gaue Rosamundi the hand, not for that they did acknowledge any preeminence, (for they would not haue yielded any to Mars himselfe) but for that they held her most wronged, for her sweet hearts defiance, pulling downe their beaues, and brandishing their great lances, they went into a pleasant greene meadow, where they tried what was in their horses, charging on the one side, & then on the other, with a better grace, then Mars himselfe could haue done. Claridiana heartily laughing, said, I say, (considering well, gallant Ladies, wherefore wee come,) wee shall doe these Barbarians so much fauour, notwithstanding that they die through our hands. Well, said Sarmatia, though wee shew them this fauour, I am of opinion, our gallants will not be offended withal: rather to giue them so honourable a death, is to anger them that shall know it, said Archiflora: let eche of vs apart shew what our Armes are able to doe, said the faire Rosamundi, that if hereafter, those which shall heare thereof, be desirous to make triall, they may come into Grecia; for they which now can giue it, may hereafter procure it. In this maner, the foure pillars of strength and beautie rode discoursing, when euen hard at hand they discovered the seuen knights, who seeing them, as they were in their enemies Countrey, presently armed themselves, not knowing what they would, they chanced to meet in the midst of a great beaten way, where Rosamundi being somewhat before the rest, said as you shall heare in the other Chapter.

CHAP.



of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

CHAP. X.

Of the bloody cruell lusts, betweene the Ladies and the Romane Ambassadors; and of the comming of Claridiano and the gentle Claramante, and what followed.



It is a common opinion among wise and discret men (most noble Lord) that courtesie is the most commendable part of a man, and which doth most adorne his person, aduance his valour, and which doth most auoid dangers & fruitlesse contentions, wherof we haue an example in hand: which being wanting in Coriandro, in the presence of so many & so worthy Princes, it was the occasiō of al the strife which followed, all happening athwart vnto him, for the Ladies beeing stung therewith, determined to pursue them, & before they should returne to Rome, to teach them, how to behaue themselves before Princes: and so the faire Ladie thinking with her selfe, that she stayed too long, set her selfe in the middell of the way, and said, Sir Knights, the commandement giuen vs, by the Dames which remaine vpon the Stronds side, to iust with all those which we shal meet, for their beauties, to be the greatest and most rare in the world, doth hold vs blamelesse for presuming to desire it of such knights as you, whome Mars would not dare to encounter. Shee did so dissemble, and that with such courtesie, that it toke away all occasion from them to suspect them, although that without it, the fine did assure themselves, nothing imagining that there had beene any women in Grecia which bare armes, and that that which they heard at the Court was but a tell: and so the braue Coriandro gently answered, holding himselfe sufficient to haue overcome all the foure: Because, Sir knights, you shall accomplish the commaund of the Ladies, we accept thereof

P

(vpon

The fourth booke of the third Part

(vpon condition, that whosoever shal lose y^e Saddle at the encounter, shal not desire to come to fight with the sword: you (requiring this condition) shal not thinke it much, that we desire another in our behalfe, which is, that whosoever shal fall, shal lose his shield; for there is nothing where with the Ladies are better pleased, then to see their beauties so well defended, bringing for testimonie thereof the aduersaries armes. All (quoth one of the Giants) shal bee as you will haue it, for remaining without the shields, it shal bee no great matter, to make you beholding to vs for our good deeds. Without making any answer, the gallant Rosamundi turned the furious Iriuan, who came more swift then the Sunne beames betwene the clouds.

I would to God, worthy Ladies, seeing this matter concerneth you, that you would assist my slow hand with some new fauours, which would furnish meanes to make the matter the more easie, to recount the best ins that euer were in the world: for coming to encounter with a full carrare, (with greater noyse then the swelling Seas make beating the miserable Ships against the high Rockes) they brake their Launces as if they had bene little Reeds; but before it was done, the Pagan, who assured himselfe of the victorie, smote the Ladie in the midst of the white brest, with so great force, that hee strake her sencelesse out of the Saddle: but fortune was much her friend, and durst bee no other, for shee set her hand on the pummell of the Saddle; where shee held fast till shee recovered breath, and therewith the Saddle, wondering at the strange encounter. Vers was no lesse to be noted, for shee smiting the braue Pagan with such force, that before that her Launce brake, shee laide him on the greene field, falling with such disgrace vpon his head, that he remained sencelesse with the blow. Well may you imagine (gallant Dames) whether the three faire Ladies were well pleased, with the good beginning which the Princesse had made: shee stood with a better grace beholding the fierce Pagan, then can bee spoken, making her aduersaries,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

uersaries to make more accompt of her, then of Mars himselfe: for being mounted vpon so good a horse, and so gallantly armed, neuer had any a better presence then she; she commanded the Squire (for they all foure had but one) to take away the Doyes shield. Presently cometh forth the gallant Archiflora, giuing no lesse hope of her valour, then Rosamundi had done: one of the foure Ggants confronted her; it did nothing moue her to see him so great, as a well growne Pine tree, but rather praying the Heauens to fauour her in this encounter, she ran with her Courser more swift then a Harre falling betwixne the cloudes; there were those which bare recozd of this encounter, for y gods of the woods leauing their habitation, with their Pimphees and Tritons, came into the greene field at the very instant, that that famous Duene made the brauest encounter that euer was sene in Grece: for hitting the Wagan in the midst of the strong shield, it auailed him not that it was of stele, neither the doubles which it had, for through it and the best-plate (being a handfull thicke) it past clare, yeelding an armes length of the launce thorough his beastly shoulders, the swiftnesse wherewith her Courser came made him to misse the hocke: she past forwarde with so good a grace, as would haue intangled Mars, the countenance of Archiflora onely was sufficient to haue made him to yeld his soule captiue, and to make the god of Loue himselfe in loue to behold her. She returned, and with a soft pace came to the Ladies, which were very glad of the good encounter which she had made; onely she wished that her Greke lover had bene there. The valorous Empreesse of Trapisonda would stay no longer, but mounting vpon Cornerino her horse, came forth as swift as an arrow which is shot by a nimble Sorian at a certaine marke: she did nothing enuie the last encounters, for although that in that which she receyued, she lost one of her stirrups, yet that which she gaue was so rigorous, that she therewith sent the Giant to the ground, wounded in his best; and

The fourth booke of the third Part

but that her launce brake not, striking some what acrosse, it had cost him his life. The two famous warriors, Bembo and the great Bravorange, seeing the valour which the three had shewen, and the signes that the fourth had giuen, to be no lesse then the rest, it was euen so as they imagined: for the faire Sarmacia, with her furious horse, charged the third Gyant with such force and dexteritie, that she laid him, (though it much grieved him) in the greene field: forth shee rose, and recovered both her stirrups, which in the encounter she had lost: forwarde went the gallant Rosamundi, hauing taken vp the dead Gyants launce, and said vnto those which remained on horsebacke, I would very gladly, Sir Knights, that wee were in number equall vnto you, to the end, that with equalitie, the Jests might haue bene ended. But now me thinketh, that you seeking reuenge, for that which is done to your companions, we being but foure, of force you must beginne againe with me. The last Gyant, which was the most valiant of al, made no longer delay, but whirling a ships mast (which he bare in stead of a launce) about his head, took his carriere against the Ladie: she gaue spurres to her horse, as swift as thought, encountered the Pagan, and did better this time then the last; for his strong plaacks of stele could nothing profite him, but that shee linde him cleane thorow from side to side: the horses came to the shoocke, and made greater noise, then if two rocks had met: but as the Ladies horse had not his like in that land, so he overthrew the Gyant, horse and man, spreading them vpon the greene field: and her horse set him on his buttocks, being unable to goe any further. The valorous Dame, fearing some ill successe, (as light as an Eagle) leapt to the ground, & seeing her good horse recover, with another jumpe shee leapt into her saddle. The most strong Pagan Bravorange, blaspheming against heauen, would haue taken his course, when the Ladie said vnto him, Hold, Sir Knight, for there is time enough for our encounter; for I would speake with this Knight in the greene skarfe, pointing to Coriandro, which was the man whom she had overthrowne, who

hauing

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

hauing reconered breath, was mounted en horsebacke, but
 without speare or shield. The like had the other two Giants
 done, to whom the Ladie said, I am very sozry, Sir Knight,
 for your ill hap; but I was more sozry to see the feble maners
 which you shewed in Grecia, for you should haue had more
 respect to the great princes which were in the hall, & herein
 you grieved many Ladies, being in your proud behauiour
 farre more arrogant then valiant: if that might not haue
 moued you, it had bene sufficient for you to haue noted the
 comely and good carriage of these Knights in the blake,
 who made the w to be hartily sozry for your proud demean-
 our, which deserued that reuenge which you now haue ex-
 perimented: and because you may see the hands which haue
 wrought it, and may say y in Grecia as Knights vse jousts
 and Tournaments; so like wise Ladies also seeke reuenge,
 which peradventure may serue for a warning for you Ro-
 manes, that they come with lesse pride then their Ambassa-
 dors haue done: and so, although your pride deserue it not,
 yet we will do you this fauour, to tell you who we are, to the
 end y being well assured, you may be glad to haue left your
 armes in y keeping of such ladies, together with your hono-
 r: at y instant they took off their carkes, appearing by reaso-
 of y heate of their encounters, farre more faire the Apollo in
 y midst of his iourney: & because you may vnderstand, Knights
 (said the Lady) y in Grece there is no milke of gallants to
 serue Ladies, & yet there is not so great need of their Armes,
 but y the heauens haue imparted some valour among y La-
 dies, so as they may make some chalenge thereto: and as for
 you, valorous Knights, (hauing no occasion but what these
 Knights haue giue) we refuse to iust with you, doubting to
 lose therein, what we herein haue gottē. Fewer a one of those
 which were overcome, could answer, they were so ashamed,
 holding it the greatest disgrace that could happen, to be over-
 throwen by y hands of tender & delicate Ladies. Benbo sleep-
 forth with a grace, & being in a maze, said, Valorous dames,
 this Knight and I were very sorry for the displeasure
 which is taken, through that which these Knights sayd,



The fourth booke of the third Part

although being sent, they might be somewhat excused (if excuse may be admitted for error committed against such beautie.) But it seemeth, as it doth appeare, that who can so well take offence, can as well take reuenge, without need of any offer to be made by any your gallants: against whom rather then against your daintinesse, the challenge was made. But it is past in such sort, that you rest reuenged, making vs, being bounden vnto you for your courtesie, to giue ouer the right, which we had to the Justs, for your challenge was to all. That which you do, valorous Knight, is not of so small account, but may deserue requitall at our hands, which shall be, to leaue vs in greater doubt then before. The famous Prince would haue answered, when as not farre from them, there came along by a woods side, the flower of all humane valour, Claridiano and Claramante: who as I haue said before, hauing receyued the rich armes of his master Gualtenor, and hauing take his leaue of him, by reason of the noise which he heard, hastened so wards, till crossing a groue of high Pine trees, hee saw his valorous Uncle Claramante coming, mounted vpon a mightie horse, with his speare and shield, and at his saddle Bow, a battell-are, he knew him by his gate, and the riches of his armes, and determined to discover himselfe vnto him, to the end to goe to the warres together: they mette, Claramante wondering to see his godly constitution, thinking with himselfe, that it was the same man, which indeed it was. The Knight with the Dames, according to the deuice which he bare vpon his shield, approaching nere vnto him, said, (Sir Knight) you are without all doubt, hee which is called the Knight of the Lions, to whom I bring a message from farre hence, from a Knight which is called the Knight of Cruellie, who knowing that I came for Greece, requested mee to visit you in his behalfe, & to tell you, that he would be here with all speed possible, and told me farther, that I should bee a gainer hereby, for I should see the gallantest Knight of the world: hee told me so many things in praise of you, that hee

made

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

made mee much to affect you, with a desire to trie my small, with your much valour, and although that I bee sure to be overcome, I shall take it with the more patience, but our fight shall be without Swords or Helmes, with our daggers onely; and if you so please, we will deferre no longer time, if you will not, I have performed what I promised to that Knight, and as I desired.

For the newes (Sir Knight) which you bring me, of that warlike young man, in requitall thereof, I would rather employ mee to doe you any service, then by battell to offend you. But seeing you have challenged me, there is no reason but to yeld to your demaund, accepting the battell, and y^e presently, seeing you so please. I assured my self befoze my coming, that I should receiue so generous an answer, said the other, so as weighing and considering the fame and valour, which is bruted euerie where of you, I know not who would not refuse it, and if I had not demaunded it, I would leaue it, for these reasons haue put me in more feare, then if I had sawe the daunger and my certaine overthrow befoze mine eyes: but yet let it be, notwithstanding, that without it I will remaine your prisoner so long as I liue. The Prince of Trapisonda had unlaced his Helmet, and seeing the valorous young man busted in taking off of his, vpon a suddaine hee was transformed into the likenesse of god Mars.

By this time had Claramante fully taken off his Helmet, and being about to assaile his nephew, seeing him without a helmet, he said vnto him, Stay, valorous knight, for with my death you will offend your louing friend Claridiano. He put off his enchanted Jewel, remaining in his perfect shape, saying, Why, how now, valorous Knight, so highly hath the Prince of Grace offended you, that you should prepare your self to griene him? I repose more trust in your arme. This new lover was so surprisid with joy, seeing him befoze him whom he most dearely loued, y^e he could make him no answer; but casting his arms about his neck,

The fourth booke of the third Part

he said: O gentle gods, how favorable haue you shewn your selues in my behalfe, hauing reserved so great a good for me as is this, which is the greatest that could happen vnto me! O desired Prince! and is it possible that fortune should bee pleased, to bring mee to so happie estate? I beseech the heauens, that they season this but with some meane ill hap. I will not stand now to repeate what passed betwene these two, but of that onely which hee told, had happened vnto him in Greece, and how hee knew in that he was his vnkle. Where shall neede no great perswasion to make you believe, how great joy he conceiued of so pleasing newes: hee told him all that had happened, and of the remedie which his Father the wizard had giuen him, to the end that he should come into Greece, to the reliefe of his Grand-father, without being knowne to any body, which it behoued him to conceale, vntill such time as he should further aduise him.

The noise which was in the Juits with the Ladies, did interrupt their discourse, and so putting on their Helmes, and the Prince his rich Jewell, as hard as their horses could drine, they took their way directly towards y^e place where the noise was, arriuing inst at the instant when the Ladie Rosamundi had made an end of giuing thanks to Beinbo, for leauing the battell: but as these two approached, who did most faithfully loue in the world, O, who had a refined wit to describe what the one & the other felt in themselves, onely in beholding the one & the other: Claramance reioyced for that hee was the first which came to the rescue of these dames, if there had bene any neede thereof; he marvelled to see them without Helmes, and the two Giants, cruelly thrust through with Launces, and the Squire with fine shielles, being the spoiles of warre, vnderstanding that all this was performed by the Ladies: they knowing him, were verie glad to see him in that place, not for any neede they had of his helpe; the goodly proportion, good grace and rich attire of his copanion did much please them: but they could not imagine who it should be. I cannot tell how it came

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

came to my minde, to describe the suspicion which that Quene conceived in her heart, that that should be her beloued Claridiano: for as hee had the best grace of any mortall man, if she saw any man to excell, she presently imagined it was he. O mightie power of loue! but the houre is not yet come, to know who he was. Bembo and the great Brauorante knowing the gentle Claramante by his armes, prepared themselves to fight, being nettled with that which past at Sea. All this is nothing (gallant Dames) to that which the disguised yong man felt, seeing himselfe disguised in the presence of her, (who ruled the helme of his life,) so faire, & so surpassing excellent, that he held the griefe which he endured, well employed, seeing it was for her sake. But comming nere her, hee became more timorous, then if hee should haue attempted the most doubtfull aduenture of the world. There was not in all that land a Gallant, y more dearely loued, and therewith that liued more zealous of his honour. Hee knew not whereupon to resolve, whether hee should speake to her, or make himselfe knowne, desiring her to pardon what was past. A thousand doubts came into his minde: in the end he determined, to the end not to offend her, to passe his discontented life as well as he could, in this shape of god Mars, and to see if hee could perceiue by her looks, whether his absence were grieuous unto her or no, and whether she had so cruelly banished him from her sight. The valorous Claramante drew nere, and seeing the Greek Dames, hee suddenly put off his caske, and discovered his faire face, saying, I know not, how I could haue come, without great error (valorous Dames) but to see the work of your hands vpon these Gyants: but seeing this battell is fought in the behalfe of the gallants, I in their name doe come to giue thanks, and yeld acknowledgement for the much which they owe, for such a matter as this, which admitteth no other requitall, but what proceedeth from your valour.

He would not, Sir Prince, said Archisilora, (who loued
him.

The fourth booke of the third Part

him extremely, for hauing so long accompanied her lover) that you should discharge your selfe of the debt, wherein these Ladies haue set you. What should be too much want of acknowledgement (quoth he.) Who would not be thankesfull, and to liue onely thereof: for, what greater good can come to the Gallants of Greece, then to acknowledge, what they owe to such Soueraigne Princesses? In this manner we may then in safetie returne, with the spoiles gotten on the Romane Knights, who reposing such confidence in their pride, little regarded our valour, and (as I thinke) as little our beautie. The furious Bembo could forbear no longer, but like a Tiger, (although with mild speeches) advanced himselfe forwards, before these Dames should returne into Greece, saying, Wee would not, Knight of the Lyons, that you should haue come so assured, and with such confidence in your owne valour, that before whom you haue so much displeased, as this Knight and me, you should be disgraced: and were it not, that the order of Knighthood doth detain vs, we would with small cost take reuenge of our wrongs.

The confidens, Sir Knight, is not so much of my selfe, answered the Grake, as of these halozous Dames, who with their presence, are able to encourage and giue new valour to the arrant coward that liueth: and moreover, behauing your selues as to Knights appertaineth, you should first tell me the cause of your displeasure, because I doe not remember that I haue offended any man. What is the condition of those which doe wrongs: for they write it in the sands: but those that receiue them, imprint them in their hearts, quoth the bold Bembo.

Well, let it not grieve you, quoth Claramante, for there is time, and now the best that can be wished, hauing such witnesse, for your satisfaction, which as you say, you prosecute with such behemencie.

Why then, quoth the Wagan, there is nothing that giueth vs any cause, why wee should deferre the battell any longer,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

longer, so as there may rest time for our companions.

In stead of this knight, quoth the proud Claridiano, seeing with what pride they had desisted his Uncle, hee may fight with me, for my death will bee no lesse lamented then his, and it will ill befit vs to stand by, dallying, and see our friends maintaine fight with manifest perill.

Let it be as you wil, said the furious Pagan Brauorante, turning about his swift running horse; the like did all the thre, and that so suddenly, that notwithstanding that the Ladies would haue hindered it, seeing the matter so farre past, they durst not, for offending the Breake, assuring themselves of his valour, and that hee would end that fight with victorie. And Archisilora, rather to keepe them company, said, turning towards Coriandro, I am of opinion, that you are desirous to haue occasion to helpe your friends; and because you shall not say, when you come to Rome, that you could not come to all kinde of battels, wee giue you leaue thereto, and to that end returne you your shields againe. The Pagan was so proud, that without giuing thanks for what was offered, hee said, Why then, by and by you shall see, how shortly the Justs shal be reuenged.

The two Giants made no longer delay, but by drawing out their huge Cemisers, they made towards the Ladies, which had already put on their Helmes: they left, although against their will, the gentle Sarmacia for Iudge, and so with their swords in their hands, & their shields on their armes, they attended their coming. Face to face stood the foure most famous in armes in the whole world, whose rigorous contention I will not describe in this Chapter, for it becometh a tale.



The fourth booke of the third Part

CHAP. XI.

Of the cruell and bloodie battell, fought by the foure Knights.



If the Heauens should giue mee so long a life, as to bring to light all the bookes of this long Historie, there would (valorous Dames) be the like occasion as this, to craue your assistance, without the which, I shall but stumble at a matter, worthy to be written by no lesse personage, then Mantuan, or that Orpheus should sing it, to particularize the mightie blowes which were given, with the discret and aduised retreats and cunning assaultes: Heere might the god Mars haue learned to fight: for leauing his fifth Throne, accompanied with those which vnder him did most flourish and were most famous in armes, hee descended to behold the battell, worthy to be recorded. Venus beautified her selfe, accompanying Mars, to behold the Ladies, which made her seeme to be vgly, and Mars enuious: for hurling ouer the field (with a most fearefull noise) came these pillars of valour and fortitude, vntill the carriere being ended, they encountred in the middle of the field: neither of them mist in the encounter; for they would not haue done it so; their lines: But they mette Claramante, and the fearefull Achaian, with such a noyse, as if two Hippos had encountered, so as the splinters of their lances flew quite out of sight; there was no mouing out of their saddles, for they were fast lockt into them: they returned with their drawne swords, whereat Bembo was well pleased, for hee stood in some feare of the battell-axe, which he left when he saw him therewith; and as he was most exercised in armes, so hee gaue the first blow, which he reacht him vpon the toppe of the crest, but the good temper kept it from breaking, but not him from feeling the blow, so as it made him to bow downe
his

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

his head to the Saddle pummel: it was not possible it should bee lesse: he seconded it with another of no lesse force, so that the skies containe not so many stars, as he saw within his rich Helmet. This serued but to brge him to take reuenge; for setting himselfe in his Saddle, (considering what had passed) as fierce as a Basiliske, hee charged Bembo, who warded it with his shield, whereon hee receiued so great a blow, which was such, that it beat it to his Helmet, and made him almost sencelesse: hee holpe him with a thrust in the brest, which set him on the arson of his Saddle, and reaching at him with another, nothing doubting to ouerthrow him, but his sword winding in his hand, so as he smote him on one side of the Helmet, which holpe so bying the Bagan againe to his remembrance.

There was neuer Lion which so fiercely assailed a heard, as this young man did his aduersarie: they were close together, and at one time they smote each the other vpon the top of their Helmets, and bowed downe their heads downe to their breasts. The Moore was most nimble, and knowing that therein he had some aduantage, spurring his horse, hee ioyned with the Græke, who stood not at his defence, where the Moore gaue him two such thrusts, the one after the other, that if they had not lighted on Theseus his armes, either of them had parted the soule from the bodie, and made him (soe against his will) to fall backe on the arson of his Saddle. The Achaian knight was not a man which would lose the benefit of any occasion: for befoze that he could come vpon him againe, with all his whole power hee smote him on the middell of the visor, and made him darke blind, and yet Lirgandeo saith, that he made him readie to fall. All these blowes gaue occasion to put the young man in choler: there was no defence in the Moores armes, against the strong arme and good temper of his sword, but that hee hurled the one halfe of his Helmet to the ground: hee had scarcely done this, when with another blow no lesse furious then the last, with his sword hee smote a great peece of his shield to the
B 3 ground.

The fourth booke of the third Part

ground, and the sword lighting on his shoulder, smote away the one halfe of his Balizon. All this was nothing to that which passed betwene his nephew and the valorous Bravourante, which encountring with a greater noyse then the Thunder maketh betwene the cloudes, they smote their Raunces into little splinters, which flying in the ayre, gaue signe of the fortitude of these warriours. The Pagan lost one of his Stirrops, but he recovered it so soone againe, that no body perceiued y fault. What serued but to enflame him like a Tiper against the Christian; they both together encountred with their swordes aloft: there were no better Armes in the world then those which they two did weare, but they were not of force sufficient to keepe their Masters, being tormented with blowes, from bowing nowne their heads to their angrie breasts, they seconded them with such force as set them on their saddles pinnacles; the Breake was better in breath, and therefore he first recovered, & with such quicknesse as is requisite in such a case, hee gaue him on the side of the Helmet, such a terrible blow, that made him make a soule bending backwards in his Saddle: hee was so grable to giue him another, that hee came more nere vnto him then was requisite, and so; that cause being vnable to strike, they were constrained to make shew of friendship, being brought to this streight, as to claspe one the other with their armes; there was neuer scene a more dreadfull struggling: for although that they could not help themselves with their sate, yet they did so tug with their hands, y they were quite out of breath, & their horses kneeling on y ground, gaue two furious cries. They both came on soote, where the one to shew the other y valor of his person, with a subaaine hurled the one at the other with greater force then is in a ballet, when it lieth the fire out of the mouth of y Cannon. All the battels were renewed seeing these two on soote for y valorous Ladies, whose battel was cause sufficient to make all the battels in the world to be so; gotten: for as there was no defence against their weapons, so were their enemies con-

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

red all ever with their owne blood, especially Coriandro, who fought with Rosamundi, who seeing the Knight in the yellow in the ground, much affected to the valour which he had shewne, and assuring her selfe of the strength of her Trian, she assailed Coriandro, doing him greater saueur then he deserved; for she clasped her faire armes about his necke with such force, that she haled him out of his Saddle; he fell on his side, where againe began the battell, but with apparant aduantage, for she gaue him neuer a blow, but that she cut his armour and his flesh withall. For which had the worst happe in this furious affray, was the Emperesse Claridiano; for the great Bembo, and Brauorante, being come on foot, thinking that they had saue with some aduantage to the Queene, shee tooke her course with her horse against Bembo, who slipping aside, let her passe, whose horse stumbled so on the trunchions of the Launces, that coming to the ground, hee gaue her a Rycked fall. After hee came a Giant, who was the cause that Claramante, missing Bembo from him with a thrust, at two skips he was with the Wagen, making him lose his Saddle, and then he charged Bembo, who with a great pace went towards Claridiana, who being sore hurt with her fall, was now risen. The valorous Ladie had gottē nothing by dealing with Bembo, but the new louer approached, doing wonders incredible to any mans iudgement. The fierce Giant which had a fall on the ground, seeing his sword broken with the fall, ranne to Claramante his horse to get the Battel-axe. But hee could not do it: for the Queen of Mira, as fierce as a Serpent, met him with her horse best, so as she tumbled him to y^e ground. By that time was the braue Claridiano come, and thinking that he should doe good with his Axe on foot, he tooke it from the Saddle bow: hee was not so nimble with this terrible weapon as his vnkle was: for euery blow y^e hee gaue, was mortall; he put it in practise against the Giant, which remained on horseback, who with his monstrous sword had giuen the Queen such a blow vpon her rich helmet, y^e being unable to

The fourth booke of the third Part

broke it, (the buckles thereof being loose) hee smote it from her head, leaving her amazed at the strangenesse of the blow. The Pagan would haue seconded it, and without all doubt had slaine her, but that Claridiano came couered al ouer with a cold swate, to see the mistresse of his soule in so notable a danger, he aduanced his Battel-axe with greater furie, then discretion, fortune was his good friend, for hitting him vpon the top of the shoulder, the edge of the Axe turning inwards, it smote off his head so easily, that Mars was amazed thereat: hee came to the Quæne, who yet had not put on her Helmet, who presenting himselfe vnto her, said, keepe you alse, valorous Ladie, for although that you bee cruell to him which dooth most adoe you, yet it is not lawfull for me so long as I liue, to permit any crueltie to be done against your worthinesse. These words were so imprinted in the middelt of the Quænes heart, that shee was of opinion that without any doubt, that was hee whom shee best loued: shee had taken him by the arme and asked him a thousand questions, but that they were other wise so much busied: that notwithstanding, yet shee said vnto him with a tendernes of heart, Follow, wortheie warriour, the fortune which the heauens haue ordained for thy greater fame, such a seruice as this is not requested with thanks, but you haue made mee bounden vnto you in any thing that shall please you. Ah, Claridiano, said the gallant young man to himselfe, if the Ladie knowing shee had said this, what paine could there be which should not bee pleasing? what displeasure could the heauens doe me which herewith might not bee made tolerable? And herewith, faining that shee said so, brandishing his cruell weapon, hee assaulted his enemy. It was in good time: for he found (in an ill taking) her who had bozne him in the middelt of her intrailles: for the furious Brauorante at the verie instant of his arriuall, with a blow had made her set her hands to the ground, and was about to haue giuen her another, when the braue Græke stopt his passage, reaching him a far off such a knocke with Theseus battel-

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

battel-are, that made him runne faster backwards then he came forwards. Let your Heueraigne greatnesse hold your selfe aloofe off, balorous Emperesse of Trabisonda, said her dearely beloued sonne, for it is not reasonable that to hands so generous should happen any disgrace. The Ladie wondered to see that shee was knowne by that Knight, and imagining that it was some of her kindred, shee assailed the Giant which had salne to the ground, with whom shee returned to a most cruell battell, but it lasted not long, quenching the same with the death of the Giant. Alone remained Claridiano, Claramante, and the gallant Rosamundi, against Bembo, Brauorante, and the furious Coriandro, whose sight, O Muses of Vernassus, that a man might dip his pen in the fountain of your sacred liquoz! for much more doe these sixe most rare in valour deserue: they fell out of order, for against Rosamundi, the Achatan addrested himselfe, and Brauorante against the braue sonne of Trebatius: with Claridiano happened the wounded Coriandro, which yet with mortall wounds prolonged his fortune.

There was no fight to be seene like to Rosamundies; for although that she were not equall in force to the fierce Bagan; yet her rich and faire Armes in all supplied that want; for against the edge of her rich sword, no armour nor enchauntment could auaille; for shee neuer gaue Bembo any blow, which did not pare away his harnesse, together with his brauery flesh.

The Booz was wonderfully amazed to see his armour so sozne, knowing that shee which fought with him, was but a gallant Ladie: a thousand times would he haue withdrawn himselfe from her, accompting it a base thing to wage battell against her, but shee did so anger him with the often blowes which shee gaue him, that treading all vnder foote, he began to defend himselfe and to offend the Ladie, giuing her such sound knockes, that, but that shee tooke them vpon Semiramis armour, without doubt he had dealt but hardly with her: but if she took any blowes, it was to the

The fourth booke of the third Part

greater damage of the Pagan which gaue them: for the charging and retiring, as nymble and quicke as an Eagle, made the victorie very doubtfull, and oftentimes brought it to that passe, that it plainly appeared to be hers, shee was so furious. The battell betwene Brauorante and Claramante deserueth a Romane Theater; for eche of them knowing his enemies force, they began to make benefite of their agilitie, which was such, and employed in so good season, that neither of them could fasten a full blow: but hee which tooke any vpon his armour, it made his flesh blacke and blew, and brought him to the ground vpon his knees. Unequall was the battell betwene Claridiano and Coriandro: for as he wanted both breath and blood, his ouerthrow did plainly appeare, or his certaine death, at the instant that Archisiloraes Louer ended the battell, hitting him so hard vpon his shield, that it nothing auailed him to be of fine and well tempered Steele, but that he smote it in two pieces, sorely wounding him in the head, comming to the ground vpon all foure, and yet he was ashamed, being in choler and before his Labie, holding it but for a small blow, who hauing a thousand amorous suspitions in her head, she stood reforcing in his valour, vnable to perswade her selfe that it should be any other, then he whom she loued with her soule: but comming to shew him any fauour, her grauitie was such, that she resolved rather to die, then to shew any such lightnesse; this cost her so deare, that it made her to shedde bloody teares. The three pillars of humane fortitude arrived, when the Greeke drew nere vnto the place where Rosamundi with Bembo were together by the cares, if neede required to ayd her. They were no lesse then Don Heleno of Dacia, the faire Rotabel, and his friend, the Captaine Generall Aristoldo; who hearing the noyse of the battell, came as hard as their horses could runne. The Dacian presently alighted, and with his sword drawne, went directly to Bembo, thinking that his Lady was overmatched, & for bare not, seeing the Greeke Prince to do the like, but rather overcome

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ouercome with furie, thinking y^e he had meant to haue stricken her, as he made great haste, he cried vnto him, saying, Hold thee, uncourteous knight, for this villany shall cost thee thy life. The Greeke would scarcely haue taken these words at his owne fathers hands: he gaue no answer, but flourishing his are about his head, with such courage, that he made the al to wonder, he was so quick in deliuering his blow that Archisilora knowing that it was the Dacian, could not put her selfe betwixne them, befoze that the furious young man had stricken him with the are, on the toppe of the helmet. Brutus his Armes staid him in good stead, for otherwise, from the head to the feet, his are had split him: and notwithstanding he made him to goe thre or foure steps backward, being ready to fall, he followed him with a thrust; there was neuer a better giuen in all these battels: for hitting him on the one side of the best, he brake all y^e buckles, and within a little disarmed him, making him set one knee to the ground, to stay him vp. Hee againe lifted vp his terrible are, but not with such dexteritie, as his Uncle would haue done, for being long in bringing the blow about his head, he gaue place to the Dacian to close with him, with such force, that he lifted him from ground, and with a little moze had ouerthrowne him. The Greeke was constrained to let goe his are, the better to vse his hands. O you Princes, which delight in armes, I would haue bene glad to haue seene you at this wrestling; for neither wearinesse did any way cause y^e Greeke, to shew himself to be any other then he was wont to be: and the Dacian was so blinded with choler, that he dealt not herein with such discretioⁿ as was requisite.

The maner how they gyrded one another, the groanings they made, their sometimes clasping their bodies, sometimes parting asunder, then crossing their legges, was such as no tongue is able to declare; for if the Dacian be strong, the Greeke is no lesse. Gue care, Ladies, for there is no reason that this wrestling should passe in oblivion without witness, and these which came, were no less the the most

The fourth booke of the third Pare

mighty Alphebus, the two pillars of fortitude brought him
betwene them, Bramidoro and Brandafide! with the gen-
tle Turisco: of the other part came Torismundo, the brave
Lord of Spaine, with his senné and his valiant brother in
law: they met not the venturous Zollo, with the beloued
Lisart, and the Prince of Argentaria, so as a man may well
say, there was at that meeting the best and most tryed com-
pany that was in the vniuersall world. All this comming
could not cause them to giue ouer the battell: for the Dacian
seeing his Ladie in danger, it made him draw new forces
euen out of his wearines, and to giue the aduersarie worke
inough to doe, who condemned himselfe of cowardise, to
suffer one knight to vse him so, in the presence of his father
and other friends. They were both out of breath, and they
could not continue and maintaine their obstinate fight: but
the one thrust the other a great way off from him; the
Crake fell downe hard by, where Rosamundi stood: and
where hee had left his battell axe, he tooke it vp, and with
a wonderfull readinesse hee made towards the Dacian,
but before that he was come nere him, Archisilora kept be-
twene them, saying, Hold you out, Knight in the yellow,
for the Prince of Dacia is not a knight, with whō this bat-
tel may be suffred to be ended. The Crake stayed vpon his
Ladies words, and then knew the valorous Dacian; for he
had no desire to do ought, but what might please his Quen.
But the noise of a most fierce blow which Bembo gaue the
Ladie, suffered him neither to giue any answer, neither to
proceed forwards. The fierce Claridiano turned about, as
malicious as a serpent, to see his faire Ladie on the ground,
vpon her knees, and had somewhat lost her senses, and that
the Pagan, forgetting from whom hee came, would haue
cloied with her. There is no Ward, that more lightly ram-
peth after his pray, the the Crake did to defend her: he came
in good time, for before y his sword alighted on her, he reacht
him a blow on one side of the helmet with his axe, and made
him fall on his hands, and his axe pierce his target, smiting
him

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

him with both his hands, standing on his left foot, & againe
~~smote him a full blow on the head,~~ and ~~made him~~ (with
 greater haste then he would) withdrew himselfe three or
 foure paces from the Ladie, the which fra from danger, ha-
 uing bene busied with him, had not perceyued the people
 which the there beheld, untill the was about to as-
 saile her aduersary, her husband leapt before her, saying,
 Shall I neuer, deare Lady, leaue to haue cause to complayne
 of your crueltie; sith renning to so apparant danger, you
 would not be defected by him which was bozne to lue you
 These Ladies (good Sir) are in the fault, which alone de-
 sired to take vengeance on the Romanes; which is done in
 such sort, that those which remaine, shall haue whereto
 talke of the Crane Ladies. In like wordes she told him
 what had pass, and how they had overcome the in the Julls,
 and of the death of the two Giants, and of the conuincing of
 Claramante, with the other knight moze furious then a Li-
 on, and how they had a aged battaile with those in y black,
 to whose ayd came y rest which there remayned: and about
 had that famous company compassed those famous warri-
 ours, whose battaile seemed to Mars to be but new begun,
 according to the dexterity which with they charged, and the
 quicke retiring of them all foure. The battaile are named
 somewhat troublesome to the Crane in a private battell; &
 chiefly, because he had neuer bene used thereto: wherefore
 pitching the blunt end thereof into the ground, he left it so:
 a testimony of the owners valour: and so do, auring out his
 god sword with his shield in his hand, he assailed the migh-
 ty Bembo. O Apollo, I would thou wouldst recite this
 battaile, which made all men to wonder! for the dexterity
 of them both was without comparisson; they were both wel
 breathed, by reason of their long exercise in armes, and
 so; that cause hastening their mighty blowes so thicke, that
 it seemed to them which saw them not, that Vulcans Forge
 was theratouts; so; according to the noise, it was to bee
 thought, there had bene a great many of knights: to the

The fourth booke of the third Part

close came: these two most rare men at armes with their swords aloft: But that warre lasted but little, for both fell, which was a meane much to prolong the battell in that manner, and so againe entring with their left feete forwards, and their swords in both hands, they made hard Angles of their Helmete.

There was neuer particular battaile in the world better fought; for eche of them both was the flower of his Nation, and excelled in the Arte as well of Loue, as in this, where in no man excelled them, no not loue it selfe, nor Mars. The Spane had the worse, by reason of the Christians good Armes, but supplied that with his strength, giuing and taking blowes which would haue beate a rock to pieces, The Grecke would play the fencer, thinking with a thrust, to haue striken his aduersarie in the face, but hee had not well fastned his blow, when y^e Spane soundly gaue him a knocke on the top of the Helmet; hee looke him at vnawares, and so the blow lighted so much the heavier, & made him set one of his knees to the ground, and in that warde he stood to see if he would second his blow, which had lifted by his sword, but the young man would not attend the weight, where with it came, but with a sumpe standing on his foete, hee let slip the blow on one side, leauing the Spane deceived, who gaue so fierce a blow, y^e it turned him round about, & smote the one halfe of his sword into the hard floze. Upon the armes, the nephew of the great Trebatius gaue him a great blow, he was much distressed, being assured that hee should lose his sword; breaking the little chaine, with a skippe hee turned about, for in agilitie no man excelled him, and if the Grecke had not the better looked vnto it, the like had happened vnto himselfe. But seeing the Pagan giue way, hee let slippe one hand to weaken the blow: hee stayed but little herein, but it was enough for the nimble Pagan, who like an Eagle, seeing his sword was lost, he suddenly tooke by the Arc wherewith he was a second Mars. In many dayes befoze he had not receiued the like contentment, as

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

in seeing that in his hands, assuring himselfe now of the victorie, he now made roome in the spacious graine field. All men knew him to bee verie expert with that kind of weapon: many were sozie for it, but hee, whome it touched euen at the verie soule, was Archiloraes lover, who framed a thousand complaints against himselfe, calling himselfe coward, saying that so rechelesly he had committed so great a fault.

I doe not deserue (said that grieved Prince) to lose such a Ladie as this, who is iudge of my valentesse: I haue iustly lost her fauour, seeing that in her presence, I was not able to defend those weapons which were none of mine. Gualtenor could not end this battell without a new Chapter, supposing that he should wel ease them both of their paine, with sojbearing a little.

CHAP. XII.

Of the end of this cruell battell, and how the Greekes returned to their Citie, and of what happened vnto them vpon the way.



Hector was not so much grieved with the cruell wound giuen him by the Greeke Prince, for that it was by his hands alone, as Claudiano was to see himselfe vnfurnished of one of his weapons; & not onely for losing it, but that it happened in the presence of his parents, when it had bene requisite to haue shewed all his valour, rather then in any other part. The sight of the faire Quene was to him as sauce for his choler, tempering the same in such sorte, that it made him to fall into conceite with himselfe, how he might recover the lost Battell-axe, and so like a cruell Ward, he would haue closed with the Hoore, but hee met with the point of y^e axe: his shield was no sufficient defence to ward the
P 4 blow,

The fourth booke of the third Part

blow, but that it passed cleane thorow. This did more grieue the Cræke, then if hee had in a manner felt the fine temper thereof in his flesh: he came amazed, that there was no enchantment, that could resist the edge thereof: the Pagan doubled his blow, but before that he could fasten it, hee was gotten so nere unto him, that he seized his armes vpon him, and finding no resisting, within a little he had ouerthrowne him, and lifted him aloft from ground. The Lord of Achaia was in some doubt, and thought with him, that it were better againe to lose the gotten battell-are, then the victorie; and so letting it goe, hee did vse such force vpon the yong mans shoulders, that he made him in despite of him, to stay with his burthen, and gaue him place to take footing on the ground: he resembled the Sunne of the earth, in recovering againe his strength, againe getting that, which hee before had lost, the Cræke being unable to hinder the same, notwithstanding that he sweat drops of blood. This battell made them that were present, so much to wonder, that they took no heede to that which passed betwixne Claramante and the Sythian Prince, who were so uierce, that they seemed to beginne the battell anew. Claramante was sooy, that he had not begun with the ace, imagining that by this time he had made an end thereof: yet notwithstanding, when he hit him a fall blow, he made him to shake like an Aspin leafe vpon the tree, when the South-west wind bloweth. They were both very desirous to end the battell, for it was about sixe houres, since it beganne, and both together gaue so mightie blowes, that they both set their hands to the ground; there was little difference in their skill. But as occasion serued, the Cræke was more nimble in assailing, then the other: and so raising him with a thought, before that the Pagan could recover his ward, he gaue him so cruell a blowe vpon his great creck, that hee made him to gas creakelesse and ready to fall: hee set his right foote forward, and with a strong thrust hee hit him on the brest, striking him almost out of breath. Through the
noble

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Wayse which they in the which beheld this battaille, hee turned about his head, and seeing that those which had wrestled, were come to that ground where they were, he suddenly drew neere, and would not strike the Pagan, which all men thought much of.

By this time was the valiant Bravorange come, blaspheming against the heavens, seeing that he never proued knight in Greece that did not put him in doubt of the battaille: in approaching, he suddenly gaue him a knocke crosse the helme, which made him goe on one side; not with the good grace which the place required, where were so many beholders: hee turned against the Pagan; and being so nere that they could not strike, they closed, Claridiano was so nere to the battell-are, that strugling with Bembo, hee might haue layd hands thereon; and taking footing, hee rose, finding himselfe hard by his Uncle, for these warriors were sometime aloft, sometime vnder. The Achaian gaue him not so much leasure; who hauing recovered his sword, came towards the Greeke: he went to encounter him, beginning the battell anew. Those which stood by, had no time to talke, fearing that in shutting their eyes, they might lose the sight of some notable action, worthy eternall memory. By this time would the carefull Louer impart his light vnto the Antipodes, hiding it from our world, leauing to vs that which his sister gaue, when the foure warriors (being the floure of Armes and braverie) were most earnest: sometime the Greeke seemed to haue the advantage, but it was so little and lasted so small a time, that no man could say to whether party it would incline. In like manner was it betwene Bravorange & Lindabrides her new louer. But they all stood expecting the issue, when the heavens began to lighten, & to giue such terrible thunderclaps, that no man there present could deny that he was afraid: all was darkened, and nothing to be seene but flashes of lightning, which put great feare in those valiant knights which beheld the battell: no man was able to stirre from the place

The fourth booke of the third Part

Where the Earthquake had brought him, for any thing that hee was able to doe. Some visions appeared to them which sought the battell: and as those clouds were past, the skies remained cleare, the Sun yet shewing some sayre streames, as a certaine token of his departure. All alone remained they which had sought the battell, onely excepting Bembo and Braucante, with the wounded Contandro, which Luperius had carried away, because that the Romans Shippes being arrived at Siqua, had great neede of their presence. Guaitenor saith, that being fearefull of some ill successe, he made that enchantment to caule away his Bembo, and sought by all meanes to haue done the like by the Battell-are, had not Claudioano seized vpon it, out of whose hands he could not get it, by reason of the vertue of the rich Jewell, which was of the greatest antiquitie of any that he knew.

His griefe can bee compared to that which Bembo and Braucante conceiued, taking themselves set in Siqua (so) it seemed to them that they had saue the better of the battell, which was the cause of their sorrow: they made a thousand complaints of the Wizard, who by all meanes sought to appeale them, telling them the truth of the cause, for which hee brought them away, which did some what appease them, and promising them that he would set them in Grace, in a place where no body should part the battell. This is verie little, in respect of that which Brundusio felt, when hee vnderstande what had happened in the Justice against the Ladies; so he would not of all that day speake to his Cousin, but the next day hee came to him, saying, I knowe not, Knight, who would presume to returne againe into my presence, coming overcome by a woman, I know no reason why you should call your selfe my nephew, seeing thou hast so much shamed the repall blood of Gubia. O worthy Knight, is it possible that I should haue the patience to lookeare to put thy head to death? But I leane it to her to doe, which lastly becaused thee so much of thy shame, and were it
not

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

not for that, I would teare thee in a thousand paces with my owne hands, for þe spot wherewith thou hast stained our worthe lineage. At the loud speeches which he vsed, in came the Emperour of Rome, and the Prince of Almaine, who sought to appease the furious Dagan, whose eyes seemed burning coles: they had much adoe to get him from thence, leaving the proud Coriandro so ashamed, that a thousand times he would haue killed himselfe, and but that hee was in hope to be reuenged at his pleasure, no man could haue saued his life: But that vaine hope did serue but to prolong his life, coming againe to lose, in the same place where he had bene befoze overcome. The wizard with all possible care cured them, making them whole and sound the fourth day, because that on the fifth, they were to marshall their troopes to take the way towards Grecia. There were sundrie opinions among the Romanes, about the admitting of Bembo for Captaine generall, for Brudusio being a chiefe dealer in the matter, would not yeld thereto: But seeing that all the high Soldanes, and the Califa, with the great Assirian were contented, he was the man. They chose for Captaine generall, the braue King of Fenicia, and for his companion the expert King of Zarka, with the King of Armenia, who vndertooke a heauie burthen. They began to dispose of the Paue, which was so great, that they had neede of Bemboes helpe, who diuided it into thre squadrons: neither of the wizards both set downe the certaine number, but Lupertio saith, that it was nothing to couer the Grecke sea. There was no disagreement among them, although it be selde seen among so many strange nations as there were assembled: for Bembo promised for all with so good government, that euery man knew to what Colours to repaire, and what captaine to obey of the Almaines: seeing them so proud and well armed, their Captaine had a great opinion, purposing with them and the Achaians to make the greatest part of the warre. And coming to bee of the mind, that it may bee possible to cure the woundes of the soule, there is

The fourth booke of the third Part

no doubt, but that he will bend his free necke, to the sweete yoke of Cupid, seeing such varietie of beautifull Dames, whereof, twentie excelled the faire Princeesse of Rome; with the without second Eufronita, the faire Siliana, and a sister of Don Claribel, whose beantie was wonderful, whose name was Clabela, a childe yet not fourtene yeres olde, whose father was the mightie King of Assiria, who for his delight brought her with him.

Where came the faire Melissa of Fenicia, no lesse faire then all they, and the Sophi his daughter, sister to Torisano, called Lelia, nothing enuying at the rest of the Ladies. The Emperour of Rome, & the Soldan of Siquea were of opinion, to put them all alowd one very faire Caricke, the most faire that ever swamme vpon the Sea, with fiftie Gallies for their gard, and withinbord so many Cyants. The most famous of all the whole Armie, whose Captaine was the braue Fulgoso, who was held nothing inferiour to the braue Braucorante: In this order, which was such, as did somewhat assure them of the victorie, sayling out at the great Port of Siquea, they take their direct course towards Grecia, with such abundance of provision, as was neuer heard of. Their voyage was prosperous, for the tenth day after, they arrived nere S. Georges arme, where they cast anchour, whence they sent an hundred Gallies for scoutes, to discover the Quene of the Chyistians; which was in as good order, expecting their comming. For the peerlesse excellent Captaine Altricio, learning on thore his darest beloved Sirinda, had betaken himselfe to the Sea, with whom went the most principall of the Armie, vpon the newes of the enemies comming, so confident in his knights, and in the valour of their persons, that hee was in assured hope of good successe, and that at Sea, where the enemies held themselves for most valiant. He made three other squadrons of his great Fleet, which was no lesse then their aduersaries, but better appointed, although that therein was not so much people, for to each of them there were foure enemies: but

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

but they were so greedy of battell, that they wisht that they had been more, to the end, that they might the better haue shewen the valour of their persons: the one attending, and the others with a determination, the next day to come in sight of the great Citie of Constantinople, were well leaue, to returne to those, which in the walles remained victor-
ous.

CHAP. XIII.

How all those Princes and valorous Dames returned to Constantinople, and what happened vnto them with a strange Knight by the way.



That feareful earthquake being past (most excellent Prince) wherein the three famous Pagans were caried away by the meanes of the sage Lupertius; Gualtenor saith now, that being assured of the victorie, and seeing the Gyants alone dead, for all their helmes, (not one remaining) were taken away. Entertaining with the love which they bare one to another, and being knowne wherfore they came, the faire Rosamundi said, I say now, that seeing we are so well backt, and with so valiant Knights, it were no great matter to go to Biquea, there to receive our enemies, and although that the Lord Claramante and the Knight in the yello w had not come, there had been no great danger to haue aduentured against those Knights in the black, which without doubt, are of the most valiant in the world, & with whom I would haue been very glad the battell had been ended, which these men undertaking, the victorie would haue been certaine. and I am of opinion, that we are more bounden vnto them, then to any, seeing they first came to our aid in time of danger. Where your beautie & mightie armes are employed, gallant Ladies, said the disguised Crake, with so good a grace, as made them all affect him, there is

The fourth booke of the third Part

little need of our presence, except to looke at the sight of so high Cheualry: for when this valorous Prince and I arrived, in my conceit, the victorie was certaine, as all others will be in the world, which shall be purchased by so victorious hands as these, which haue ended this, whereto all owe dutie, as of right. All came, warlike knight, said the faire Archilora, (which without offence to Claridiano, was much affected for his valour to this unknowne gallant, seeing what he had done) through the hope that we were in, to haue you for Judges of our battell, a thing which might haue assured the greatest difficultie in the victorie which wee attempted: And I & these Ladies do much desire to know your name, and of what countrey you are, if it bee no offence to you. Greater would it be to me, to fall into your disgrace, by not discovering it, said Claridiano, then that, which I should receive, by uttering it. In this manner, it will be to your advantage, (quoth the Queene) in stead of not offending vs, and at the point to demaund it of you by battell, to make vs beholding vnto you for your courtesie. It is so long since, answered the Greeke, (glad to see himselfe so sought vnto by such Princesses, which were so and the same in beautie) that I haue bene without any will, for that I sacrificed it to Ladies, that it is not meritorious to yeld new obedience, seeing that so long since I haue given my selfe in sacrifice. My Countrey is in the confines of Scythia Liua, for it were not conuenient that a Knight of any other countrey should be entertained with such crueltie; sometimes I haue bene called the Knight of Crueltie, but now (wherein they haue hit right) the Ladies Knight, for the pictures which I beare in the midst of my shield, enduring onely the crueltie, which so much tormenteth my soule, which hath bene of such power, that the Ladies haue had a desire onely to helpe me, and my heart here with endureth new torments. You haue plainly told vs (Sir Knight) quoth the beautiful Queene, that which these Ladies did desire to know; and making shew of your obedience, you haue told vs more then

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

then wee did aske. Let not your beaultie wonder herent,
 queth Rosamondi, for no man is wounded by Cupids hand,
 which doth not presently publish it, to qualifie their faith,
 which the Gallants now adayes take for a custome, when
 their Ladies vse them a little unkindly: there is no rea-
 son, why they should complaine of them, for if they be sto-
 red, their assistance were life to the Gallant, to whom they
 yieldeth: but in their complaints, they shew themselves ex-
 cessively grieued, y^e of all the world they desire ease of their
 woundes. But because this Knight shall not say, that in
 France such crueltie is vsed, as in his Country, I here offer
 my person, to vse all means to take away that sore which
 deuice: for it is not expedient to beare it in France; for it is
 here offensive to the Ladies, which delight in pitie, and so
 would they, that those should be, whom they loue. And in
 hope to see him well, said the faire Archifilora, euery eche one
 of vs that haue netted him, shall do her best to comfort him.
 It is very reasonable, said Claridiana, that hee coming to
 our succours, should be by vs eased of his grieve, in requitall
 of his good will. His grieve from henceforth, said the faire
 Sarmatia, shall be very little, if it please you to remove it: for
 if you be of power to cause it, you may farre better ease it.
 It is so contoynd with my life, said the excellent Prince,
 that the taking away of the one, would bereaue me of the
 other: and iustly to euaine such a fauour as this is, with
 lesse then my life, it cannot be required. So as, (excellent
 Ladies) in my grieve remaineth my life; for the faithfull lo-
 uer, in needest thereof, is encouraged, making his torment
 easie, with the enely naming of the cause thereof. I should
 not for any thing in the world, said the faire Archifilora,
 that you should so lightly regard so great good will, as that,
 which these Ladies and I haue offered you. Faire Queene,
 said the secure Louer, I confesse my error, and to haue de-
 serued your disgrace, but I came to these warres with such
 desire to see you serued, y^e I determined not to be cured: for
 I am banished in most stragg manner, being to accomplish my

The fourth booke of the third Part

banish went in Grecia; and but for her sake which ruleth my life, I would take it for a fauour, seeking the graces which the heauens haue imparted vnto all the Greeke Dames, which kindeleth new fire in my sorrowfull heart, seeing it selfe absent from that which my soueraigne intoweth, which in all respects is equall to her cruelty. Now I say, that he is worthy to be pardoned, and we are sorry for him (quoth Rosamundi) seeing that if he desire to liue, it is onely to doe vs seruice. If it were not for that, gallant dames, said y^e Greeke, I would rid my selfe thereof, but I haue therein settled this hope, that I should here find some bodie, which would bee sozie for my ill happs. About this matter these faire Ladies toke discoursing, well pleased with the Knight of Licia his gentle conuersation, and no lesse were all those high Princes, for the valour which they had seene and experimented in him: the night they passed with swete discourses, that although the three Ladies, and their being in companie with their husbands, did restrain them from discoursing of loue matters, yet they delighted to refresh their memoerie, with talking of y^e most pleasing time of their whole life. For neuer man loued wel which liued not in loue: for by louing, knights are purified, they become franke, liberall, valiant, and bee which was the most carelesse, become most careful. In no part discretion holdeth so due proportion, as betwixne louers, and neuer was there any honourable end of warres, if loue were not the ground thereof. For loue, gallants attempt doubtfull enterprises, making them easie with this saying, My Ladie will take pleasure therein: and to procure her contentment, in exchange of his owne soule, is to purchase a new life, new Jewels of loue, sufficient to giue life to him that so loueth: and to conclude, Placo saith, that there is no good where is no loue.

The valorous Claridiano entertained the faire Ladies, and gallant youtnes, with discreete discourses, until the golden iouer shewed himselfe beautifying the earth, at whose coming, all on horsebacke toke their way towards the Citie,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Citie, highly extolling the valiance of the two Pagans: they all came to the place where they were which had the gard of the Towre in the sea, the after-noones heate they past in a groue of Poplars, & againe taking their short way, untill about two of the clock in the night, under a high Pine tree, they saw a Knight laid all along on the ground, whose constitution was pleasing to them all, hee was armed with blew, set with many Starres of gold, with so many precious stones of such worth, that they could not bee valued, who seeing so many coming on horse backe, rose vp, and buckling on a rich Helmet, he lightly leapt upon his horse, being caparisoned of the same colour that his armour was, on his Caske he wore a most faire plume set with Spangles of gold, hee had one of the most rich shields of the world. In the midst wherof which was of blew, he bare god Mars, and close by him his Venus, with severall crownes in her hands, as though shee gaue them to a Knight which knelt at her fete, with this sort:

For thy worth and beautie,
Receive this fauour,
Worthie thy valour.

They tooke great pleasure to behold his godly personage, and much more, that with his Launce in his hand hee came towards them, they all imagined that he would kill. If it be no other wise, said Rosamundi, it falleth to our lot to begin, saying we haue given the occasion to seek vs. No body gainsaid it, seeing it was no great aduenture: and so by that time that this gallant was come, they had taken their weapons, who shewing courtesie lifting vp his Weuer, discovered the best fauoured face in all the Pagans countrie, and said, My lot, valorous Knights hath bene so good to meet you in this place, that I cannot complaine of fortune, saying shee hath set before mine eyes what I most desired to see. I doe not tell you my Countrie, valorous companie, being so remote, neither my name, because there will be small notice of either, for there are not two dayes, since I receiued the order

The fourth booke of the third Part

of knighthood, from the hands of a most mightie warrior, who told me, that if I made haste, I should find here all the best of Greece. I desired him to tell me his name, in requitall of which fauour, I would bee readie to doe him service all the dayes of my life, for his valour deserueth it. He told me that hee is called Benibo, and that I should tell the Knights, with whome hee here had fought the battell, that they should pardon him for not ending it, and that there should not want time nor place thereto. Hee told mee so much of your force, and made me so desirous, that I purposed, if it shall not be offensive, to desire to iust with some of those which here come: I know it a great boldnesse, being the first time, yet is it a satisfaction, although I lose, to haue iusted with warriors of so great fame.

The discrete behaviour of him in the blew, gaue great delight to all, and so the gallant Rosamundi answered him, thinking with her selfe, that shee had neuer in all her life seene a gallanter Knight, except the Greeke Princes, for they were bozne to bee the wonder of the worlde. I would that of your part some harder matter to be done, had been required, to the end that you might haue seene of what power in Greece, the controuersie is which you haue bleo, and seeing it is but to iust, and to prooue the strength of your arme, let be as it shall please you, esteeming (according to reason) her courtecous answer. The young gallant turned with so good a gesture, that hee made the great Alphebus say, I neuer beleaue me, if these iusts be not worth the seeing, for me thinketh that this stranger is locked fast in his Saddle. Of the same opinion were all the rest, expecting what would follow.

It is not to bee recounted, most excellent and wortheie Dames, without hauing recourse for aide to your beauties, for such a thing is not to bee solemnized, but by him, who hath twice bozne the Lawrell: for the Eagle flyeth no swifter after her pray, then these two rare persons in valour departed. The Ladie (most excellent Hero) had a bet-
ter

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ter horse then any of those which compasse the heauens, and so they ioyned swifter then thought: neither of them mist in the encounter; the Ladies was such as would haue ouerthrowne a rocke, but could not the young man; for on horse backe few excelled him, & none among y^e Moores, yet something hee bent back wards. But the gallant Ladie losing both her stirrups and the reines, was driuen to take hold of her swift horses neck: they all doubted more then before, of the successe, seeing the faire Ladie in such case at the first encounter. In her place entred the faire Duene of Lira, sending a new Lance to the young Gallant. The sage Lirgandeo passeth ouer all these encounters, saying, that in none of them hee had the worse: hee aduanced himselfe farther, and ouerthrewe the Princes of Charlis, both the father and the sonne, and the braue Captaine Aristoldo, he was likely to haue brought to the same predicament.

Finally, notwithstanding that the braue Torisundo, & his warlike sone vnderooke the charge; yet he lost no ground, nor any part of his honour. Alone remained the Emperour Alphebus; who would not rust, because there should want no lances for Don Heleno, Rosabel, Claramante, and Claridiano; foure of y^e best knights vpon the earth. The Prince of Hungarie had scarcely ended his course, whē, with an excellent swiftnesse the Dacian began y^e carriere: he could not haue wonne much honor, although he had ouercome y^e strange Gallant: for y^e he had already run sixtē courses against y^e most mighty knights, who without any shew of wearines, came against y^e Dacian. The raging sea maketh no greater noise, persecuting the shippes readie to wracke, then these two most famous warriors made at their encounter in the middest of their carriere: there was neuer scene any better encounter in Grece: for the greedie Dacian smote him somewhat lowe, and so the blowe was nothing lightly, and withall, hee made him make the foulest bending back wards, that hee had made in all the rest of his courses before, & was faine to let go the reynes out of his hands,

The fourth booke of the third Part

and to keepe the Saddle, hee seized on the horse necke, hee encountred Don Heleno in the midst of the shield, and being unable to pierce it, by reason of the most fine temper thereof, hee shokke with the Helme with such force, as made him forget himselfe, hee was so angrie for this encounter, that had not the Araunger had equitie on his side, the battell had past at outraunce. You would not beleene how those which stood by did wonder, seeing the great strength of the Knight with the Starres without flaying, that Claramante or Rosabel should doe it, the unknowne Græke took the matter in hand, purifying his valour in his Ladies face.

The sparkles flie not so thicke from Vulcans Anvile, as from these two famous warriors Helmes, either knowing the others courage. He in the blew encountred the valiant Claudiano, in the midst of the strong brest, but as in that place love onely did preedminate, so it could not receive any further wounds from any other hand, he smote him so furiously, shivering his Launce into small splinters, as made him lose one of his Stirrups, and make such a backward bending, as was strange to that young gallant: Archiloraes lover got not much by his fierce encounter, which might have set him on the graine field: and had hee met him in the beginning of the Jousts, hee had not escaped so good cheape, but being wearie, it was no great matter to overbeare him, with the Saddle betweene his legges. In faire greater estimation from thenceforth was the Knight held with the Ladies, then before, seeing that he had ended that, which all they could not doe, which were in all things so highly extolled: at an instant he againe fitted his lost Saddle, and with a verie good countenance asking pardon of them all, (although somewhat ashamed) hee tooke his leave of the Princes. Guartenor doth not declare the name of this Knight, neither whose sonne he was, leaving it to the fourth part of this famous History. Onely hee saith, that hee was the famous competitor to the house of Martaria, untill that a kinsman which hee knew therein, should

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Should conclude the welcome peace, but first hee should cover the field with dead bodies, all caused through the leue to a Græke Ladie: Hee did not a little in the behalfe of the Pagans in the field battell, whose actes the sage doth not a little commend. All those Lords were much affected unto him, although the most of them did desire to come to single combat with him.

If the Youth had been aduertised thereof, he would not haue refused it, although against Mars himselfe: for in the world was not knowne a prouder young man, and this made him to attempt great matters, wherein hee alwayes bare the fame of warlike. In discourting of his valiancie, these Princes arrived at the Citie, where they were by all men expected, with some doubt of some danger that might haue happened unto them, but knowing what had passed, all was turned into mirth.

The noble Trebatius entertaining the balorous Ladies, said, I would not faire Ladies, that you should so esteem the honour of Græce, that you should therefore put your selues in such apparant danger.

There was none (noble Emperour) answered Archibishop, with it was for your service, especially this Knight being there, pointing to the Knight with the Ladies, who for his valour may be compared with Mars: the rest affirming the same, it gave occasion to the Emperour to embrace him with as great affection, as if he had knowne him to haue been his deere nephew. All the faire Ladies bestowed on him new fauours, hauing heard of the valour of his person: By generall proclamation it was commaunded, that all should obey him as a Græke Prince: he lay with his beloved Wife: the world neuer knew two which loved so dearely: they were deuising together, when into the hall there came two knights from the byzane Altrusio, aduertising the coming of the enemies armie, and how that (without doubt) the next day they would be in sight of Constantinople. They all put themselves in Armes, euerie one repairing to his charge.

The fourth booke of the third Part

charge. Then the Captaine generall appointed the valorous Troiane to gard the Citie, with all the Macedonians, and those which he had brought out of Thessalia with him, in whom in hardest matters hee might boldly repose his trust.

To the warlike Zolo with his troupes, which he brought out of Frigia, they recommended the arreregard, as a charge worthy of his person.

The Captaine Generall reserved all the Spaniards and his owne countrey men for aydes, with which he did such wonders, that hee thereby purchased eternall fame: as in the next ensuing Chapters, the Puses favouring, shall bee declared.

CHAP. XIII.

Of the arrivall of the Moores Fleet and Armie at Constantinople, and what ensued thereof.



NOW is the time come, valorous Dames, wherein I am enforced to leave to discourse of loue, to follow fierce Mars: wherefore I entreat you, which are not affected to the warres, (acknowledging my error) to pardon my offence: and I would not unwillingly haue described them, but that loue was the causer thereof: and seeing that loue caused it, the occasion being considered, it shall not be offensive to read it: for on the contrary part, there are a thousand Ladies grieued, and all complaining of loue, & wanting force in themselves: it is fit they should seeke it elsewhere, for a iust reuenge, if any may be.

But in conclusion, any error whatsoever, beeing of loue, is pardonable. I had the Princesse of the Romanes made shew of her loue, but to procure this warre, onely to see her Dactian, to whom she had bequeathed her soule: not
Eufronia,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Eufronisa, who shee too her selfe no lesse enamoured, if she had not also taken pleasure, to come against the Crake Empire, where she hoped to see her well beloued Gallant. All these, faire Ladies, are reasons to draw your affections to reade this Discourse, which is such, as would give sufficient scope and matter to a thousand idle writers.

It was, when the Sunne spreading his beames ouer the earth, hastening his iourney, gave light to the Sentinels to discouer the Paue of the Princes, their enemies.

Open vnto me, O sacred Fountes, your fountaine, to the ende, that I may draw from thence, a new stile and fitte speeches, worthy to be vsed in numbring the huge armie which came in that Fleet: for therein were Cozmates, Slavonians, Bulgarians, Transiluanians, with the bold Thracians and famous Assyrians; there sailed not the Sarazins, nor valiant Africanes: for the greater part of Asia and Africa, conspired together against Grecia.

The Lions bell was rung, but the most apparant signe was given in Venus Castell: there remained no man within the Citie, that was able to beare armes: for marshalled in very good order, they sallied out to the battell, yea, even the best of the Crake Nation went forth.

All the Thebalonians, Sacconians, all the Magentians and Hungarians, with the ancient Bohemians, made a stand.

On the one side, in companies with their colours, (for so the great Captaine would haue it) were the ancient Spaniards, with the principall of their Countrey. There remained neuer a Prince in Crace; for that present and before, he ranged his battels after this maner.

For with the Emperour Trebatins, who had for his Guard twentie knights, which were of his chamber, with the famous Gyants, Brandafidel, Bramidoro, and the faire Tifereo, with Rosacer and his sonne the gallant Rosabel, (and diuers other Gallants, of the most valiant and choicest men of his Countrey, that came to this seruice) were aboute

The fourth booke of the third Part

three hundred thousand men; a shew worth the sight: with all the Flowre of Fraunce, of Denmarke, and Apulia, went the brave Don Heleno commaunding that Squadron: his friend Torisundo held him company, with the Princes of Tharvis and Argentaria: on the one side went the faire Rosamundi; Polidolfo held the third place, with all the Soldiers of his countrey, which were very many, and well armed. All the Portugals kept him company, & great part of the Persians.

The fourth degree fell to the valiant Persiano; wherein he commaunded all the Babilonians and Persians, which were without number. With the rest of the Campe remained the Emperour Alphabus, with all those of Trapisonda and Lira, much practised in the warres. There were neuer scene troupes better ordred, nor Captaine that better provided for all poynts: hee was gallantly apparelled all in colours, with rich furniture of the same: for they say, the sight of the Generall contenteth the people: hee made them spread all along the coast, opening their ranches: in the middle (for their greater honour) went the Flowre of all humane might, Claramante, Archisilora, & the unknowne Greeke, twelue Spanyards, and as many Antiochians. Being drawne neere to the sea side, and in sight of the enemies fleet, which comming neere the Port, drew themselves together upon the top of a little hillock, with his Wever vp, he uttered this oration:

The Oration.

IT hath pleased him (valorous Princes and excellent Knights) which hath formed the mould of the whole world, this day to put the Greeke valour in these spacious fields; to the end that the world may know the force of your armes: In praise whereof I would spend some speeches, but that the necessitie of the time doth force mee to be briefe. Onely this I would call to memorie: The royall blood from whence

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

whence we are descended, and that we haue a cause in hand which may be for our aduantage. The lot is already cast, and the destinies haue permitted it, that at ease wee may see our selues (not compassed with enemies) for, that your noble hearts could not endure: But at the point to let vs vnderstand, that wee defend our Countrie with the edge of our swords, I speake to my Knights; for to returne to our Countrie it is impossible, except we ouercome, or lose our liues. And so seeing the Greekes themselves haue chosen and called vs to their aide, consider that it is honour to die to aduance theirs: our enemies exceed vs in number, and we excell them in valour and courage; equitie is on our side, and we shall haue as firme ground to fight vpon as they: There resteth nothing but to fight with discretion, for that, and readinesse to be commaunded, maketh the most doubtfull enterprises, easie: neuer any nation made but one Generall, vnder whose commaund an Armie (be it neuer so great) is to be gouerned, attributing to him the glory of the conquest, or the dishonour of being overcome. This I haue said in regard of mine honour, and of the Office which you haue bestowed vpon mee: for fighting in order, and vpon firme land, and the enemies in the water, if they should get any thing vpon vs, we should lose the hope of any good successe: as for me, it shall be glorie to liue or die in your seruice: and there is no more to bee said, but to march forwards whither victorie shall call vs.

The valorous young Gallant pulled downe his Beuer, leauing them all much affected vnto him for the discrete Oration which hee had made vnto the, being al wel pleased to haue such a Captaine: and so they drew nere to the shore, spreading themselves at large ouer all those fields; where it was a worlde to see the wauiug of their ensignes, the soundings of Drummes and Trumpets, the neighing of horses, & the venices of the Commanders; which to describe, requieth an eloquent tongue, and ripe wit then mine. All the

The fourth booke of the third Part

Ladies were put into Venus Castell, which stood towards the Sea, from whence, some with sighes beheld their Louers, praying to God to saue their liues: they which could doe it, did publickely giue them sharpes and fauours, the better to encourage them to aduenture their liues for them. Already was the mightie Astrucio on the Schores side, who leaping into a Friggot, went to the Emperour, reciting to him all that passed, and how nare they were to the enemies fleet: Wherefore if your Maestie please, commaund what people you like of, to enter into this Ship Royall, with you for your Card: for wee are in readinesse, for the most memorable battell, that hath bene fought vpon the Sea, where, if fortune be our friend, they shall dearly buy their coming, although I assure you, that Xerxes fleet was but small, in comparison to that which now cometh: But I haue so great confidence in the valour of your souldiers, and in mine owne desire to fight with them, that I doubt not, but that we shall ende it with honour.

Do, valorous Captaine, in all, as to you shall seeme good, answered the noble Emperour; for neither now, nor at any other time, none shall resist your order.

Presently he embarked with the company aforesaid: all the Princes which remained, repaired to their Gallies, where it was a thing worth the seeing, to behold so many Gallies together, so many standarbes, so many flagges, streamers, and penons, such thundring of Ordnance; the brightnesse of the armours did so glister, that it beat backe Apolloes glistering beames: the valiant Warriours made to faire a shew on the toppes of the popes, as gaue good hope of victorie: and so being put in forme of a Crescent or halie Moone, they beganne to make towards the enemies fleet, the which they discovered in order, vbering in the wide Sea, holding their direct course towards Constantinople, with resolution (although there were among them many opinions) to winne the mayne Port, with pure force of armes,

of the Mirour of Knighthood.

The desire which the Ladies had to be on land, did moue them thereto: and so the two Haules came to encounter, where they discharged sundry Cannon shotte, in token that they should charge. The mightie Astrutio had in the vauward of his flæt, fiftie great Brigandines, which had no other commission, but on the one and other side, to discharge great Cannon shot, which put the valorous Captaine in good hope. The valorous Thebane, with an hundred Gallies, gaue many sudden assaults, and was ever in readinesse, to giue aid where need was: the battell being toynd, the Sea waxed calme. Oh, who had euer seene so unhappy a day, when almost all was betwene the water, and the flaming fire! the noise of the shotte bereaued many of their hearing, with such furie, that all the world seemed to shake; for the smoke, the fire, the noise of prows and broken masses, the callings, cryings, and sundry noises, made a confusion: Priamus his Citty did not make so great a fire, neither were there so many braue swords drawne, neyther with such speed and noise, as these two Haules made, the one shewing to the other the valour of their souldiers. A thousand masses were broken in pteces, their high carued woakes swamme vpon the water: it seemed, that the water, the fire, and the winde, had concluded a peace, whose effect was so fearefull, that the sea was on fire, as if heauen and earth would come together: the sundry deaths which were giuen that day, my slender wit is not able to expresse, neither would the great confusion which was therein, giue place to a man, although he had Argus eyes, to see the particular encounters: for after the furie of the Ordinance was past, they came so nere as to strike with their swords, they were so nere on board, where, with much shedding of blood, and many deadly wounds, were made many braue assaults.

In this most cruell battell, death (which daunteth the stoutest) was not of power to discourage them, or put them in feare, for no man refused any labour or perill, although he saw the Canon bent against his breast: they entred by the

The fourth booke of the third Part

prowes, the poepe, and on the sides, with such resolution, that they seemed to threaten Mars himselfe sitting in his Throne. Many falling into the Sea were drowned, the desire of overcomming, where with they entred, nothing availing them: there was no place void, for hee to whom fortune had granted life, was in such readinesse, as that hee would not allow any place to bee without a souldier; some were so desperately bold, fearing neither fire, water, nor sword, that in stead of to die killing, they leapt into the enemies vessels.

Who would not feare that the world would haue come to ruine, to see so many men vnder fortunes power? The Gunne, being striken with feare, caused through the sight of this battell, withdrew his beames: onely fierce Mars bare sway in this battell, accompanied with Tesciphon & Alecto. There was nothing abroad the Gallies, but serued to some vse; for if a souldier mist his pike, he would take a bancke, and he which wanted both, would take a slaues chayne, taking pleasure in presenting their fierce bodies to the enemy. Many were so impatient, that forgetting their swords, they fought with their fists: some desiring to swim, are ouerwhelmed with wanes, others flying the water, are consumed with the fire, others dying with honour, had their heads striken off: some prolonged their life without armes, being glad, in hope to see some iust reuenge: others which neuer could swim in their luges, there learned it, by taking meanes to be able to overcome. The cruel slaughter, which the little great Bizigandines did make, was that which did assure the victorie; for charging with a terrible boldnesse, shattering bullets, and casting balles of wilde fire, euery where they made a mortall slaughter.

In the ende, in came the mightie Astrasio his ship royall, as Admirall, in whose poepe, (in Mars his colours,) was the noble Emperoz Trebatius, compassed with his Royal gard, who seeing the Admirall of the enemies, with a very resolute minde, made towards her.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

I know not whether y^e he which was borne in Mantua, could particularize this battaile: for, comming to ioyne the iron sparrowes of the one Galley with the other, O Bembo, who had sene thee compassed with so valiant people! For with him were those five, which were bred by in the forest of lone: and last with him, was the mightie Aristoldo: who was very sorrowfull, because his sister Rosamundi was turned Christian; who being more mighty then Mars, stood close by the valiant Bembo. There were few in that ship but great Giants. Neither one nor other could preuaile against the Grake power: for the noble Emperour Trebatius, setting foote within boord, put himselfe in the thickest of them, playnely manifesting the victorie. His valiant boldnesse was like to haue cost him his life; for at his entering, they gaue him together foure such blowes, that any one of them was sufficient to haue shinered a rocke: they brought him on his knees. Luperius in this place is not to be believed, who saith, that they layd him all along. That which Gualtenor saith, seemeth to help him, who saith, that giuing an outcry, his deare sonnes and nephews leapt a boord in his defence: where it was no small matter that Rosabel did, finding besoye him the King of the Giants land; who was hee which had wounded his Graundfather the Emperour: hee smote him crosse the shoulders; there was no defence against his arme in the double plates of Steele, but that the mightie Achaian, opening a large passage to his entrailles, felled him downe at his fate.

The noble Rosader was not without care; who performed most strange & fearefull exploits, hastening the fortunate successe.

The Kossin, the Witch, the Okam, and the Tolve, which tooke on fire, was that, which did most hurt, as was well scene by experience: for the mightie Astrutio having caused foure or five of his Gallies to lay her aboord, the fire was so great that they threwe into her, and the posse such wherewith they assailed her, that she presently

The fourth booke of the third Part

began to burne in a light flame. Death was not there feared; but yet seeing before their eyes so manifest danger, they began to fly from her, and to abandon the ship.

The great Alfrutio his people followed so hard in chase, who were most expert at sea, that some of those Princes were almost in danger. But there is no danger, where Commanders are diligent: onely the Giants payd for it, who were so waighty that they could not make such haste, and so death overtooke them, before they could come to the sight of Grecia.

One of the best Ships in the whole nauy was lost. There was no lesse to doe where the three lights of Knighthood, Claramante, Archisilora, and the disguised young Knight, with the Captaine generall by land were fighting. The braue Souldan of Egypt fell to their lot, but to his losse: for against the furie of those foure Princes, there was no force or temper of any Armour, ~~was~~ able to resist: for before he could put himselfe in readinesse, they had overcome him, and had wholly ended it, if that foure Gallies had not with full sayles come to the rescue of their Prince: and with all this, presuming vpon the aide of the Giants, hee placed himselfe neere the boord, where he assaied to helpe his force to his enemies.

His youthfull resolution lasted but a while, for his guard of Giants little auailed him, neither his fierce Cousin which stood by his side, whome Claramante, suddenly with a knocke with his Battel-axe, bereaued of his life: for taking him on the toppe of his Helmet, the sharpe edge of his Battel-axe descended downe to his breast.

This terrible blow strooke a cold sweat, into all the Gallies which came to his aide.

The fearlike Causelio (as angrie as a waspe) taking the Souldans part, would needes be reuenged, who in the Empire was the next that succeeded the dead Souldan.

Fortune was heere fauourable vnto him, reseruing him for greater dangers: for although hee fell into the hands of
af

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

of Claridiano, yet he could not, although hee procured it, nor companie his honorable Cousin in his death: but yet hee was stretcht out vpon the Hatches, mortally wounded, very neere vnto the death: hee would haue leapt aboard her, crying, Grecia, and had done it, and gotten the Galley, had not there come in his necke a mightie Galeen to rescue the wounded youth.

Herein did the Erake recreate his rage: for in despight of those which came therein, he leapt aboard, and presently the threes which followed him.

The fight in no place in all the whole armie was more cruell, then aboard this Galley, neither were there halfe so many slaine men found elsewhere in that battell: for if these foure met but with neuer so little resistance, they redoubled their valour.

To the losse of many liues they gat the Standard, iust at the instant when Don Heleno assailed the Admirall of the Romanes, for he had long bene about it. The furious Lady advanced her selfe forwards, being verie angrie, for the resistance which they had sent her husband. The first that was met, was the Strong Brundusio, who seeing the armes of Dacia waving in the maine top, hee presently imagined what it was, and to be that which he desired: hee made all haste with his Galley to come aboard the mightie Dacian. The Poyes Galley came manned with so good Knights, and so warlike and mightie Giants, that here the battell was most obstinately maintained. The warlike Pagan fell into the Ladies hands, with whome she began such a fur, and with such valour, as made them all to render; she had the advantage aboue all that followed the warres: for there was not a blow that she gaue, but did cut their armour cleane thorow, and most commonly the flesh withall. By reason hereof, the Pagan, notwithstanding that he were knowne to be one of the most strong and valiant in the army, yet was hee so hardly beset by his aduersaries, that hee was bathed all ouer in his owne blood: but

The fourth booke of the third Part

that was not sufficient to make him glue backe, neither was there in him any point of cowardize, but deferring his cruell destinie, he fought like a valiant Captaine. The Dacian his Galley was in great danger, for there were foure, which at once with full sayles, charged him on all sides. I beleue it was to the ende, that he should the more shew his valour: for redoubling his deadly blowes, there was nothing worth the looking after, but he and his faire Ladie. They divided themselves, ayding those which were in greatest distresse.

The high minded Spaniard was none of those which did worke, for both hee and his sonne made good shewe of the strength of their armes, wading almost to the middles, battered in Turkish blood: notwithstanding all this, they had hardly escaped, but that the warlike Zoilus came to their aid, with his squadron of Galeons, appointed onely to yeeld assistance, where greatest need required: hee came in, hurling so much artificiall fire, and that with such swiftnesse, that hee thereby rescued the beaten Galley: which beeing therewith lightened, charged so the Romane Admirall, that they had almost taken her, when the warlike Lindauo arrived, whom the Dacian deadly hated: he set the Romane at libertie, but not with such ease, but that hee first had some taste of his enemies valour. There was a huge noise in that squadron, wherein the mightie Alphebus was, in company with his Claridiana; and of the Troiane Oristides, and his faire Sarmatia, which was, that hauing aduentured far, coueting to take the Admirall of Piquea, they were enclosed with aboute twentie Gallies, holding them in such danger, that if there had not bene therein such people as there were, they had without doubt ben taken: but the most strong Lisarte with his daintie sonne, kept all the one side, which did some what appease the battell. There were neuer scene more cruell blowes, then were giuen here: for the mightie Emperour, holding his valour for nothing worth, to see himself so compassed about, gaue neuer a blow, which bereaued

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

bereaued not some one of his life; so as the Sea was full of
 dead carkasses, the enemies were so many, that they neuer
 mist ten or an hundred; for presently there came so many
 fresh men in their places, and of ours neuer a one: they had
 now no hope to depart from thence, for it seemed impossible,
 seeing their great valor, to do y^e which they intended, which
 was, to take their Standerd. Afresh came the furious
 Knight of Epire, who was accounted for one of the most
 famous, he was much in loue with the faire Lisiana, where-
 fore his doings were to be noted: he came in a very high car-
 ued ship, he thought to haue caried all, at the first charge;
 but he found such company withinbord, as was the flower
 of Cheualrie; who came to ioyne with the louing Poye: be-
 fore that he could take footing, as a valiant man, for indeed
 he was one, the Emperour Alphebus gaue him so sound a
 knocke, vpon the top of the Helme, that he made him set his
 hands and knees both to the ground: he was scarcely risen
 vpon his sixt, when with a thrust, hee set him faster then a
 pace, out of the Galley; he would haue followed him, had it
 not bene for feare to abandon his Galley, being in such dan-
 ger: there came a Gyant (to his otone hurt) to seeke reuenge,
 but before that he could discharge one blow, Claridiana had
 left him armelesse, being desirous to hasten his death, shee
 came to the ships side, where, with a thrust shee pierced him
 cleane thorow: she escaped not so scotfree, but that another
 smote her on the top of the crest, whose good temper gaue her
 life, yet not so, but that she set both her hands to the flowe:
 the Wagan would haue giuen a second, when the warlike
 Spaniard, Don Clarus drew nere, cutting both passage and
 life from the renounced Infidell. In many parts they be-
 gan to crye Victorie, Victorie, but chiefly there, where the
 foure pillars of fortitude, Claramante and his companions
 went, who as there waited not, on who to try their swords,
 so was it a pitifull thing to see, how many they slaugh-
 tered.

So litle went they overcoming euery where, where

The fourth booke of the third Part

the braue Afrutio went, encouraging his Souldiers to doe well, in hope of the reward which they expected: which made the Spanyards draw force out of weaknesse, and the most tired, to shew him selfe couragious: of such force are the spoiles of warre. But the enemies were so many, and their Ships & Gallies so innumerable, that they neuer mist any that were wanting: for all the care that Bembo, going from one part to another, nor of the mighty Pagans, Bravoorante and Brutaldoro could take, were not sufficient, but that they gave ground vpon the water. In this conflict the Pagans were very desirous (notwithstanding they were mortal enemies) to meet with Claramante and his companion: fortune herein gaue them their wish, for those Punicus Galley came where they were, that made way wheresoeuer they passed: well were they knowne by their Armes, the two ballant yong Gallants, Claudio and Claramante, whom with his Battell-axe no man would abide; so great was the damage that he did therewith. And the vnknewne Louer seeing himself in presence of his Lady, who toke pleasure to see him, not knowing him for Claudio: it was wonderfull what hee did. The foure rare men at Armes of y^e world, seeing one another, with an excellent grace and terrible boldnes came to ioyne. The braue Mauritania fell with Trebatius his nephew: at their encounter, they gaue together some high blows, that they were enforced to receiue them with ordinary curtesie: they rose againe, and returned to giue other, & being assured to receiue y^e third; for they came not to the fourth, but y^e they saw saw the flaires of the heauens in their Helmes. Behind the as a bird, some space was Claramante; who brandishing his axe, smote the Pagan vpon the rich Helme more hard the Diamant, his dexterity nothing auailed him, but that he made him giue thre steps backwards with apparant feare of falling: hee gaue him a lucky thrust, which tooke him on the side of the breastplate, & bat away the mailes, and therewith the flesh: that blowe did so much trouble him, that the Crowe had time

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

time to leap aboard his Galley, and to cry, Grecia, and for it, Morte. His speaches cost him deare; for Brusaldoro returning to it, finding him neere at hand, and out of order with his leap, with all the force that he was able, he smote him vpon the rich Helmet, he made a thousand sparkles fly out of it, and the bloud out at his mouth. By this time came Brauorante as fierce as a Basiliske, & seeing his Galley entred, he thrust his shield to ground, and with both his hands he smote at him a cruell blow. The Greeke well saw it coming, and unable to shun it, he crost it with his strong halbert; for if he had stricken him at full, he had bene in great danger: he smote it backe to his Helmet, tormenting him so, that he had almost lost his senses. With another came Brutaldoro, which put him more to his shifts. It greatly grieved his Nephew to see what pass: and although y^e with his turtles leap, the Galley was put off; yet taking his rising in his owne Galley, he leapt about twentie foote at a iumpe.

With the force wherewith he came, he fell on his knees at Brauorante his fecte, who was about to fasten another blowe on the warlike young man: but seeing him so neere vnto him, and knowing him by his Armes, he addrested it vnto him, discharging with all his power a cruell blow vpon the Greeke: there were but few Knights within boord, and those so busied, and some wounded, that they let these foure proceed in their battell, which was wonderfull to behold.

Claramante let slip no occasion to take reuenge on the Moore, who seeing him busied with his Nephew, before that the Mauritanian could come at him, making roome in the Galley, he came at him in such sort with his battell-axe, as would haue made Mars afeard.

The valorous young Gallant mist not of his blowe; for striking him with great force on the one side of the Helmet, hee made him fall downe vpon his hands to the ground. Claridiano closed with him, meaning to haue

The fourth booke of the third Part

kild him, and had done it, had not Brufaldoro come so soone, who to rescue him, was likely to haue lost his owne life; for againe striking a dolone right blow with his axe, the blow lighted on his left shoulder, leauing it all disarmed and with a small wound: they all betooke them to their weapons, where they began a battell woorth the seeing: for those which fought it were grædie thereof, and angry for former matters, which was the occasion that made it farre more cruell. The night came so fast on, that for all that they could doe, they could not end it: the Greekes being constrained (except they would lose themselves) to returne to their Galley, where they might see their enemies haue burning in a light fire: for there comming a freish gale of wind from the shore, it was a fearefull thing to behold the slaughter that there was made: if Nero had seene it, I beleue he had seene that which he so much desired.

The Greeke haue was not free from that danger; for as there were many Gallies grappled together, the flame tooke hold on them, and had done much mischiese, had not the Captaine wisely prevented it, casting on much water, and with all possible speed (as the case requited) cutting the grapples and tackling, falling off from the fire. The enemies vsed the like policie, and were forced to take landing much lower then they would haue done, hauing lost great part of their haues: but seeing so great a multitude of people, they were recomforted purposing to make amends by land. That night and the next day, they landed all their people in the Hauen of Vircambela, ten miles from Constantinople, which they would haue razed, but for staying. They presently ordered their battels according to Benboes direction, who that night came forth of the Campe, accompanied with his best men in the armie, with a hundred thousand men of warre, to leuell the passages betwene that and the Citie, and to pitch their Tents.

The victorious Greekes (although with some losse of their Gallies) returned to their Port, & went ashore; there was great

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

great ioy made in the Citie; the Emperour much esteemed this course of impoytance.

The valorous Astrutio, taking his leaue of the Princes with many embracements, returned to the sea, setting his hurt men ashore to be cured, hee came to the mouth of the Haven for feare of a tempest, verie ioyfull of the victorie: the Captaine generall by land, seeing his enemies therein, began to shew the worthinesse of his person, as shall bee declared in the next Chapter.

CHAP. XV.

Of the encounter which the Captaines souldiers had with the enemy, about pitching of their Campe.



Here is nothing, most excellent Prince, that giueth the assurance in the wars, as discretion, that maketh easie that which is most difficult; the brave sonne of Sacerdoro, making benefit thereof, ended great battels, as shall appeare in this famous and large Historie.

This famous Captaine was the first man, shewing in all things not onely his valcur, but the excellencie of his wit also: for the golden Apollo had scarcely lookt out at his sayre bage window, spreading abroad his golden lockes, bathed in the Spanish Seas, when comming forth of Constantinople with all his royall Cauallarie, hee called the Spaniards and Antiochians, to whome for their much experience hee had shewne much affection: with him went the flowre of Cheualtrie, Claramate, Claridiano, and the faire Archiflora, with him also went the warlike Giants, Brandafidel, Bramidoro, and the strong Tifereo. Few of the principall but did accompanie the Generall, who in few words told them whereabout he went, and how much it did import afe

The fourth booke of the third Part

ter a battell at Sea, to make them knowe, that they were no lesse valiant by land. For without doubt, their Captain was abrood. As he was very subtil, to cleare the passage through Dianaes wood, where it should be wel to lie in waite for him, and to giue him battell, & to auoid disorder whereof I stand in feare, I repose my trust in your discretion, which shall bee of much importance, & make the victorie certaine, by reason that succours may come safely to vs in our greatest neede, but I haue taken expedient order to hinder this only respect, that we to day shew them the same armes, as wee did yester-day. He had left order with his deere father, & with all the Persians, & Babilonians, he should recover the top of the mountain, without charging one Laice, or offending the enemy, notwithstanding that occasion were offered, but that being ranged into a Battalion, they should lie in waite in ambush, vntil y the enemy should passe by the craggie way, on the mountaines sides, & then to descend with all speede in the world, to take the passage, and to suffer none to come to their aide, & that they should not put themselves out of order, for in y manner they might stop the passage against the whole Campe, setting backe to backe: for those without, could not come in, neither those within could get out. The braue father obeyed the sonnes command, which at y instant with al that bold Cavalery, with the greatest haste that he could, having in his companie Lirimando, Brandizel, & the valourous Brankian, with y mightie Torismundo, and the Farcar, who would not be absent at so notable a peece of seruice, with the least noyse y could bee, they came to the place appointed, at which time they discovered y most mightie Bembo: with al his companie being the flower of his army, they carried in the middest the two warlike competitors. Wee came in good season, that y wise Aristoldo had not overtaken him, who at the very same time y hee did began to enter in the wide field, which is called the Cellow field. It was a marthie matter to see so much people at a meeting. For the sun shining vpon their armour, yaloes sundrie objects, be-

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

re pleasant to behold. The neighing of y^e horses caused both
 feare and courage, the sound of furious Mars, the fighting
 of the Cinets, the shaking of Pikes, those which had charge
 thereof came to loyne, although that Bembo did somewhat
 suspect that his enemies lay to: him: but it should bee neither
 iust nor honest to be said of him, y^e he refused the battel, in the
 middest of the field, armed, foure which were nearest to him,
 advanced themselves befoze the rest, these made up y^e number
 with him, the famous Brauorante, Brutaldoro, and the most
 strong Brundusio, who desirous to fight in firme ground, with
 any one of those which were opposite against the, came to-
 wards with great boldnes: hee had his wish: for the famous
 Lady which came with the two Princes, singled him out,
 for to iust with her. Against Bembo, came Claridiano: and
 against Brauorante, came Claramante: & against Brutaldor-
 o, the Generall Aristoldo; he was somewhat overmatcht,
 but his good Armour & the gallant horse whereon he rode, sup-
 plied y^e defect; so as hee made no shew to lose any ground.
 Here, O Apollo, I would haue scene thee, and that y^e Orphe-
 us, shouldst haue cheuted these encounters: for to wane 4.
 and 4, there were neuer scene better iusts in Grecia. The
 Lady first came to loyne with him of Cibes; it was great
 luck y^e they had not beate themselves to pieces: for their leu-
 res being broken, they ioyned with their shields & bodies so
 fiercely, that all that saw it, thought that they would perish,
 they fell upon their sadles pummels quite sencelesse. Ah,
 Claridiano, what didst thou seele to see thy mistress in such
 a case! The Gallant would make no stay, but like a whirl-
 wind made towards y^e other. I dare not set downe this en-
 counter which they made: their leuies all in splinters flew
 into y^e aire, & were no more to be seen. They remained with their
 swords in their hands, beginning a perillous battel, at such
 time as these two with their encounter made a most fearful
 noise. Neither of the lost y^e saddle, but with their swords they
 came to blowes, each of the so prouided for his aduersarie as
 left him senceles: The warlike maistr came to recover him;

The fourth booke of the third Part

and seeing in what case the Horse had left him, before that he had space to draw his broad sword, the Ladie was come, and with hers, she suddenly took him cross the Helmet, cutting away a great part of the visor, and withall, made him reele in his Saddle; she holpe him forwards with a thrust, so as his thicke armour availed not, for she hurt him sore in the middle of the brest, his blood gave testimonie of his dangerous hurt. Like one of the wild beastes of Vircania, the Pagan set vpon the gallant Ladie, who seeing the furie wherewith he came, gathering her selfe vnder her shield, for she had no more arme, she receiued the terrible blow: it made the blood come forth at her eares, and to her brest did she bend downe her head, astonished with the blow; and but that her dexterity stood her in stead, he had stricken her againe, which had bene no great matter to doe, she was so ill of the last, for the Horse was verie strong; but repning her horse, she put her selfe somewhat from him: the force of the blow made the strong Pagan to turn about, and fall vpon the pummell of his Saddle, and his horse being prickt with the Spurres, brought him hard by Claridiano, who was glad in his soule: for a thousand times he was about to leaue the battell, to come (although there were no neede) to aloe the Quene of his life.

Seeing the good occasion, putting the Achaian from him with a verie strong thrust, with all his whole power hee smote him vpon the Helme; it was a verie fortunate blow: for lighting vpon the cannon of the Feathers, it pluckt it from his head, leauing it disarmed, throwing it at his horse hyles, and but for feare of the ioyning of the two battels, he had followed him; for seeing into what case he had brought his Lady, it made him deadly angry. Then came the Lady pursuing him, and seeing what reuenge was taken of him, euen enforced thereto, to her selfe she said, O flowre of Cheualrie, how vniustly doth thy Ladie suffer thee to beate this deuice, being worthe to bee beloued by the most excellent! I beleue, that, but that shee loved Claridiano so ex-
tremely

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

tre mely, shee had sure giuen passage to Cupids forces, who sought by a thousand meanes to make her tributarie: but shee was so constant in her loue to the Graeke Prince, that the knight with the Ladies intored onely good will: shee would requite him for his blow, giuing Bembo another with both hands, of no lesse force then what of him she had receyued, she made him lay his head in his bosome, and before that hee againe came to himselfe, she gaue the Pagan such a thrust, as did much grieue him.

In this hurry, came y^e Captaine generall, and the most strong Mauritanian, being somewhat out of breath; for hauing buckled together, there mist but a little that the Antiochian had not bene overcome, for the Dooze was so strong, that few could match him: they came before the Graeke, who stood beholding his beloued Archisilora, and suddenly the Pagan smote the sonne of Oriselua on the side of the shield; it was great hap that he had not stricken it out of his hand, and his arme therewithall: he made him so dizzie, that he could not tell, whether he were ascote, or on horsebacke; he would haue giuen him a second, and had stretcht out his arme to giue it; but the valiant young man opposed himselfe, saying, Hold thee, thou ill taught Pagan, & know, that it is no valour to strike him which cannot defend himselfe. He stayd for no answer, for in such cases it is excusable: but hurling his sword about his head with Mars his strength, hee smote him vpon the strong armes, which he had lifted vp, and made him to lose his blow, and also his sword out of his hand; which before he could recover againe, hee gaue him another, and within a little layd him at his horses fate.

With the noyse, about turneth Claramante, who was in a terrible fight with the Scythian: neither the one nor other could passe any farther forward; for the two armies came so iopne with such a noyse, that it seemed that the heauens were vnhung, and should come downe to the earth: with a faye encounter they repayred, wherein, about thentie

The fourth booke of the third Part

thousand lost their saddles: It was a fearfull spectacle to see the diuers kinds of deaths which were giuen: some falling from their horses, were troden to death: others being thrust thorow, so ended their iournie: others seeking reuenge, desired to kill, dying. As the place was narrow, and the people infinite, no man lost his saddle that could euer againe recouer it. The horses not feeling their riders, ran out of y^e troupe, leauing any more to trouble the troups. At the first charge, they lighted on y^e famous Brundusio; who escaping without hurt, with a new Helmet, would needs returne to the battell, desiring rather to die in cōpany of his Knights, then to liue any where else. He entred, reuenging himselfe vpon that poore people, among which he did exceeding much hurt: Yet the Crakes did as great among them: so as some of their Colours began to retire to the passage where they first came into the field: but there they found the braue Sacindoro; who did not onely slay thē, but made a great slaughter among them, so as the Hoores were beaten on either side; so; neither the force of their Captaines, neither their great number of people could defend them from hauing the worst of the day, by reason that to the Crakes came still new succours.

This bloudy skirmish was knowne in the Citie, there remayned not one Prince therein: the Duke of Thebes executing the office of Sargeant Maier generall, brought forth in order, all the carts which came from Antiochia, which hee spred ouer all the fields, towards the willow field, where afresh they renewed the battell: so; the braue Emperour of Rome, which was much practised in y^e wars, was come in great haste with all the rest of his armie, setting before all the Giants which he had, to keepe their enemies busied, while y^e Wioners began to pitch their Camp by a woods side, leauing it to serue for a wall at their backs; but another day it put them in poynt to be lost and euer throwne, as shalbe declared.

They would enter to assist their Captaine: But the
braue

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

brave King of Antioch had so warlike set his guards, that they would not suffer them, the Persians and Babylonians, which guarded the passage, fighting like Lions: so as seeing the impossibilitie, they determined to passe over the top of the mountaine, although it were very hard to doe: they did it, but not without much labour, and the Greeke stood attending their coming, although all their princes were gone into the field where the battell was, refusing to returne to Constantinople without the same of Homicides.

The Giants stood them in much dead, restraining the furie of the Greekes; and although, that by all meanes they sought to let it, they were not able: for within their sights they began to pitch their Tents, and their Wioners with all speed compassing the same with deepe trenches.

The warlike young Gallants could not end it of themselves, of the Moores part: for seeing what passed in the field, although the passage was very craggy, yet Don Celinno and Floralis, with the gentle Clarisel, and Don Argante, and Torisiano, with the mightie Epirabio and Tindauero, with the Kings of the East, which were most mightie Giants, came downe the mountaine.

With their coming downe, there beganne a most fierce and bloody fight: for on that side where they came, they made a most deadly slaughter: and had it not bene for those Princes which were newly come, they had without all doubt done much more harme.

Then there came Don Heleno, Rosabel, and the mightie Father and the Sonne the famous Emperours of Greece.

Then came Trabisonda, with Florion of Babylon, and the sayre Rosamundi, whose deeds deserue a particular historie: for betweene Brandafidel and Bramidoro, she was more mightie then Mars. They came to pel, meet one with another: where were some gallant blowes, bold assaults, and quick retreats. A Claramante, who had

The fourth booke of the third Part

ſaw the girt with thy rich ſword, and with thy axe in both
 hands, ruſhing in among thy enemies! He onely may bee
 ſaid to be the death of them all: ſoꝛ as they went cloſe toge-
 ther; ſo ſometimes at one blow he ſmote downe two ene-
 mies, giuing neuer a blow in vaine. With all this they
 cryed, *Uſcloze*, by reaſon of the many Captaines come to
 their ayd. *Archifilora*, which was by her louers ſide, came
 to loyne with the faire *Floralifa*, knowing her by her Armes:
 and hauing a great deſire to try her ſtrength with her, ſaid to
 y^e beloued yonker, *Kepe you this ſide*, ſoꝛ yonder Knight in
 the coznation hath much wronged mee. The Bull neuer
 better defended his eares againſt the maſſe, the the *Cræke*
 obeying his Ladies cōmandemēt, whoꝛling his ſhield at his
 back: it was pittifull to ſee what he did: ſoꝛ he gaue no blow,
 that was not deadly, giuing place to his Lady, to execute
 her cruell determination. The two valozous Ladies came
 to blows, there was neuer ſene a moze cruell battell: *Flora-
 liſa* gaue the firſt blow, ſuch a one as brought the *Quene*
 of *Aira* to deathes doze; ſoꝛ ſhe gaue her ſuch a blow vpon
 the higheſt of her Helmet, that it made her lay her noſe in
 her boſome, caſting bloud out at her liſe: He doubled her
 blow on one ſide of her ſhield, and beat it ſo cloſe to her byſt,
 that made her almoſt breathleſſe. It was not long ere the
Quene came to her ſelfe, who as fierce as an *Dunce* char-
 ged the Lady: there was no defence in her ſhield, ſoꝛ al-
 though that ſhe cut it net, ſoꝛ that it was *Camillaes*; yet ſhe
 ſmote her ſo on the helmet, that ſhe ſet her on y^e pumell of
 her ſaddle. ſhe paused, and then like a *Lyonceſſe*, giuing
 her a mightie thruſt, ſhe clasp'd her armes about her neck,
 and drew her out of her ſaddle. They both fell downe to the
 ground, where without all doubt ſhe had loſt her life,
 had not *Don Celindo* leapt after her, and with him his
 three moſt famous companions, who when they ſaw their
 ſiſter *Floralifa* in ſo great and manifeſt danger, and at the
 poynt to be overcome, being enraged with great fury, and
 without any regard of what to Knights did appertayne,
 they

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

they all thre at once began to lay on load vpon the Queen.
 ¶ Claridiano, there was neuer Lion comparable with the
 for seeing his Ladie in such peril, although she strangely de-
 fended her selfe, he skipt from his horse like an Eagle: there
 fell into his hands a mightie Giant, which came to the
 noyse, and was going to close with the Lady. But the disguis-
 sed lover being therewith displeased, brandishing his sword
 about his head, he smote him iust in the waste, his planks
 of fine Steele were like waxe befoze his sword, for in sight
 of the whole armie, in two paces hee smote him downe at
 the Ladies fete, which then were in fight: a cold sweate
 ranne thzough all their beines, seeing so terrible a blow.
 His youngsters surie was not here with asswaged, for hee
 moze forcibly then a thunder bolt, rushed in where his La-
 die was enclosed, and in great danger. Hee rode Don Ar-
 gante vnder his fete, and shouldzed Thorsiano a great way
 from him, and with a leape, assailed the valorous Assirian,
 which in defence of his Ladie, perfozmed verie herocall
 exploits. His faire looks could not auaille him, for y Crake
 with both his hands smote him on the Helmet, and made
 him set both his hand and his knes to the ground: he set vpon
 Don Celindo, who was hammering vpon Archifloras,
 and with a terrible thrust made him runne backwards, and
 fall vpon his backe among the footemen: and although that
 he were roundly assailed, yet, making way with his sword,
 hee came where the Ladies were, and gave Floralisa a
 stumbling blow. Camillaes armour saved her life, but they
 could not saue her from falling on her face befoze his La-
 die, who holpe her for wards with another which was no
 lesse. By this time were come to their aide, the two valiant
 Giants Brandafidel and his friend Bramidoro, who plaid
 the Duels; they cleared the passage on one side, for he which
 had the Gard of Floralinda, neuer gave blow with his Club
 which did not ouerthrow thre or foure. With this good as-
 sistance, the brane Crake tooke his Ladie in his armes,
 (the greatest pleasure that euer fortune did him) and set her

The fourth booke of the third Part

in her Saddle, saying, I would not, valorous Quene, that your worthie acts should bring you into such danger. To top in yours, warlike knight, it shall bee but well done to seeke it, seeing that therewith is purchased the sight of the valour of your arme. There was no time to vse many speeches, for they were in haste, for seeing the enemies on foote, no man remained on horsebacke. The Greeke with a light leape recovered his horse, leaving them all amazed at his doings; it was his good hap to be on horsebacke: for there came the *flowe of Giant-land*, with great Pine trees in their hands, these the Greeke desired to meeete, and but for leaving his Ladie, he had gone to seeke them: their huge bodies were clad with planches of Steele: to meeete them went out two, with the Princes: Brandasidel aduanced him and gaue a faire blow, for hitting one of those fierce Giants on the toppe of his Hurion, hee put him out of his remembrance, throwing him to ground with a greater noyse, then if a great horse had falne: his death was not noted, for there came so many, that there was no place void, although they fell more and more. With all this, they felt the braue Greeke keepe a stirre, and working wonders among them: that which Brandidoro did, was no lesse worth the sight, who had already slain foure: the great troupes of men which came to rescue one another, parted the battel, but not the companie of the foure which first began.

Clarimance hauing vpon a suddaine slaine a King of the Giants, raising himselfe on his Stirrups, saw much people towards Grecia: in a whirling, he repaired thither, conducting the three Princes with him, one wondering at anothers doing. They made great haste, for it was needfull, and the matter was, that the young man whome wee will call the Knight of y^e Starres, vntill the fourth part of this Historie, where hee shall lose his name and become a lover, it was hee which in the Forrestes, as is already said, put the Princes in such danger, who was come in fauour of the Pagans, as hee had promised to Bembo, whome hee went to seeke.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

seeke. Before that euer he brake his Lance, he had throwen many of the most famous to the ground; for to the Princes of France, nothing did their valour auaile them: for he euerthrew them. Liriamandro, Brandisel, and Barriandel, with the braue Trolanc kept them companie: it was his fortune with his sword in his hand to meete with that Knight, to whome by nature he was bounden, which was Zollo the Tartarian. They both brake together, but the match was vnequall, for such as the young man are few in the world; hee had put him in danger of death or of being overcome, if the warlike Liliac had not come to his aide. With his beloued sonne, and the Prince of Persia Brachimano, the which with their power, hauing left the Land where Sacridoro was, seeing all in safetie, came alreedy to the battel, and they came in good time for the Tartarian. The young man more faire then Absolon, doubted nothing, but casting his shield at his shoulders, as he neuer mist blow, he put them all out of breath, without losing any ioat, who being nere the Prince of Hungarie, with a side blow he cast him to the ground soe wounded: after him hee set the Prince of Bohemia on all foure. Then came the Spanishe Prince, who within a little held them companie, for hee let him sencklesse vpon his Saddles pummell: hee had a hundred swords about his eares, and those the most famous, but his lot was to make shew of himselfe, to bee the Phenix of the world. To his rescue came the foure Pillars of their Camp, Bembo, Brutaldoro, Brauorante, and the terrible Brundusio, with whose aide he made more head against the Crake. On the other side came the braue Emperour of Trapisonda, all couered with blood, with Rosader & his sonne, they held their swords to behold y^e young gallant. God blesse vs, quoth Alphebus, what valor is in this knight, he would not assaile him: he so much assisted him, but he held Rosabel, who like a Lion leapt into the midst of the throng. All those which were of his side knowing him, gaue him good way, and the enemies for feare, left the field free: for the foure famous

4 warriours.

The fourth booke of the third Part

warriours, Claramante and his companie, had tak in them to taske, and so hauing fit oportunitie, they put their determination in execution. I would I were not so much affected to the young Knight with the Starres, whose fame reached vnto them, because I would describe this battell without passion, worthy to bee related by Virgill or Mantuan. For these two rare persons in valour comming to ioyne, it is not possible to crosse what blowes they gaue: onely Gualtenor saith, that they bowed downe their heads to their Saddles pummels, casting abundance of bloud out at the visors of their Helmes: none of those which beheld the battell, durst to giue them any aide, for it was needlesse: for they presently came againe to themselues, and each of them knowing the valour of his enemy, they began to vse dexterity. The bold Breton was most accustomed to armes, and therefore was more nimble in giuing the on-set, but the late lost blow of the young man supplied that defect: for as fierce as a Serpent, he sought to attaine to the victorie. He came flying in with two blowes vpon the highest of his shield: the young man with the Starres was not one who would lose occasion, and in such a case as that: and so beating by a thrust, hee smote him on the rich Helmet, it much auailed him that it had bene Hectors: other wise hee had cleft him to the necke: it sounded like a Bell: he made the fire sparkles flie, and him beloeue that the skies were therein when they are most starrie, for hee did so astonish him, that for a good space hee lost his remembrance: it was a spurre to put life in him, for the young man to come with another as strong as the first, it cut off his plumes, and as Lupercius saith, the Cannon also wherain they were: but let it bee as it will, the Grake neuer saw himselfe in the like danger as then, in his life: but being chaffed therewith, and that his Father did behold him, he set vpon his enemy.

In all these battels, there was neuer giuen a better blow: for against Hectors sword, no force nor magicall temper can resist. Smiting him vpon the top of the shield, hee claue

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

it in two pieces, and passing through to his Shoulders, it carried with it his Bolozon, leaving him shrewdly wounded, hee ranne at him with a thrust, which cast him backe upon his Saddle, and if he could haue fastned another vpon him, without doubt he had ouerthrowne him. There is no Tiper could bee compared to that warlike young man; for seeing himselfe handled in that maner, hee flung his shield to ground, and with his sword in both his hands, hee let flie a blow at Rosabel, which lighted on his shield; it pierced it not, but drave it to his Helmet with such rigor as made him senselesse: ioyning with him, hee cast his armes about his necke, and within a little pluckt him out of his Saddle, but recouering his senses, setting his feete in his Stirrups, wheeling most stronly about, they fell both to the ground, where betaking themselves to their weapons, it was a woold to see their agilitie, the proud onsets, and couragious retreates.

Strong was he with the Starres, but he had befoze him one which was bozne with a breast-plate. Some aduantage there was to bee seene in him, but it was so little as could scarcely bee perceiued. The night drue on, for the Sun hastning his course, hid his beames because he would not see so cruell a battell. Wherefoze those warriours were constrained to repaire to their horses, desirous to meete, where they might haue time and place to end the battell, which at that instant was so beheement, as was wonderfull: but the Horses had the worst, because they had no succours: this was the sorrowfullest day for them, that they had during the warres. For of one hundred and fiftie thousand men which entred into the Willow valley, there neuer returned the third part, with the losse of thre kings, which died among the first. The Crakes did not wholly without losse enjoy this victorie, although it were the greatest that euer they had in all the warres, for it grieved them to see the Horses encamped: within sight of the Citie in a most conuenient place, they pass all the night well content on both sides; the

The fourth booke of the third Part

one for hauing the wine, that by land they were those which with their persons defended their Empire, hauing shewne vnto the Goyes, with the price of many of their liues, the valour of their persons. The others, notwithstanding that they had lost many people, yet were verie glad, that they were entrenched in so good a scate. The warlike Bembo, seeing the valour of the yong knight with the Starres, extremely loued him, hee was no lesse respected of by the Greake Princes, esteeming him more then all the rest of the Campe.

But the commendations which were giue of the knight of the Ladies, were such, and so many, that I am not able to recite them: there is no reason but to beloue them: the first that beganne to publish his famous acts, was the faire Archilora. Among the Pégans likewise his arme was much extolled, the which in fortifying their Campe, and burying their thre things, spent eight daies, in the which there wanted no lightly skirmishes, nor dangerous encounters, wherein sometimes they were louers, and sometimes were victorious, a common matter to see such aduentures in the warres: and while as they prepare themselves, I cannot forbear to see thur where I left Poliphebus, for it is expedient that in such a matter as this, so famous a Prince bee not forgotten, to whom, and that with great reason, is attributed the cause of the vicie of the Grecians and of achieving of their enterprises, which otherwise were dangerous.

C H A P.



of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

CHAP. XVI.

How the Prince Poliphebus of Tinaeria, entred the Castle of the golden Bough, where hee deliuered the most faire Luzela, daughter to the Emperour of Egypt, from enchantment.



I Am so afraid, faire dames, to be lothsome to your delight, with such warres as are past and are expected, that I am enforced to entermine some matters of loue, with those of furious Mars, because that if the one bee tedious, the other may yield delight, and so I will shake off the feare

wherein I was in this behalfe; for not to proceede with that sweete and pleasant stile as I would, it is enough to be loathed; without liuing in feare also, you shall take my desire, and not the fruite of my short witte in good part: for thereof, and of your daintinesse I am assured, seeming to me to bee of gold the libertie of the Tinaerian Ageno, and to haue it, I acknowledge that it is a death to me, and life to be estranged.

Hee enjoyed little by being at libertie, for that angrie passage being ended wherein we left him, hee went directly to those Portes, whose faire rich lustre made him to wonder, comming to the Portes which seemed to bee of no worse then gold. The sight of the faire Pictures and Paintings therein engrauen, yielded delight to the beholders: hee came to the Pillar which stood before the gate, and without feare winding the rich house (for he much desired to know what was within) hee had scarcely wound it, when with a greater noyse, then if the whole architecture

The fourth booke of the third Part

of the house had fallen to the ground, they opened. The courageous young man put hand to his rich sword, and embracing his strong shield, and seeing that no bodie came forth, hee went directly to the gates: through them hee passed, when suddainely hee was held backe, for on either side stood two deformed Giants, hauing their huge waightie Clubs lifted vp. The young man was aduenturous, thinking with himselfe, that what he had done, was cowardice, if he should now retire, and so hee went forwards. There was not a liuelier Knight in all the land, and this aduanced his valour, for on foot few could match him. Hee entred with his shield before him, making a faire shew, and with a leape he cast himselfe in, but not without receiuing such a knocke, as made him set his knees to the ground: it was then no time to bee idle, for at an instant the most strong Giants were with him, who attended their coming, with determination, with discretion to maintaine the battell. As hee was skilfull in fencing, so he toke his ground in the pavement which was vnder the Port, vpon the which were the two rich Pinacles: the Giants were in hand with him by fits; it was not ill for him to goe flourishing, and to charge when he saw time, but if he were light and quicke, they were Wards, yet notwithstanding, his nimblenesse did auaille him, for they both together being about to strike him, with a skip (couering himselfe well with his shield) hee put himselfe iust betwene them, making them to lose their blowes, but he, not his: for with a blow backwards in entreing, hee smote him which was on his right hand, iust aboue the knee; there was no defence against his arme, for his sword entred into the bone. The Giant feeling himselfe sore hurt, would haue closed with him, but his thigh failing him, he fell vpon his face to the ground: he did not let slippe the occasion which fortune gaue him, for before that the other Giant could assaile him, with a great blow he toke him on the top of his huge Helmet, it was three inches thicke, but yet hee pierced him to the skull. The Tinacrian was so
grædy

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

grædy of ending the battel, that it was like to haue cost him deare, for hee gaue oportunitie to the Giant to strike him: those blowes were not such, as that a man should stand to ward them, for it made him to set both his hands and his knees to the ground, casting out abundance of blood at his mouth: another blow the Pagan meant to haue giuen him, but his furie was such, that it made him to misse, for if he had hit him right, it had gone ill with him.

Garrofileaes senné arose, and seeing the Giant vnpreu-
ided, for his blow was past, without any feare hee ranne at
him with a thrust, and smote him in the middle of the
broad breast, his armour was three double, yet the sword en-
tered into the hollow of his breast: he felt the wound which he
had giuen, and seeing the Giant coming drawing his
lame legges after him, with a leape he ioyned with him, who
vnable to strike as hee pretended, compassing his face a-
bout his head, he threw it at him, and smote him in the mid-
dest of the shield; it was a wonder that he had not beaten it
to peeces. The young man was not strong enough to keepe
himselfe from falling to the ground, the blood gushing out
both at his mouth and nostrills. The young man could not
defend himselfe, but that he toke a blow on the shoulders,
which made him thinke that all his bones on that side were
broken. Being now as furious as a Lion, casting his shield
at his shoulders, and smooke out at his visor, covered with
blood and sweate, brandishing his reuengefull sword, hee
smote the Pagan a full blow on the breast; there were fewe
such blowes as this euer heard of: for neither his thicke
breastplate, nor his doublet of fine Maille could defend him,
but that he almost cleft him into two peeces. The young
man was glad that he had giuen so good a blow; but he esca-
ped not scotfree: for turning about to set vpon the wounded
Giant, two crowned Lions ramped vpon him, which in
strength excelled that which the braue Hercules saw, they
seized vpon him, and hee was not able to defend himselfe.
His armour saued his life, but they so crushed him, that they

The fourth booke of the third Part

put him cleane out of breath. The most cruell Wagan had not lost his toynt, who drawing out a broad crooked knife, was coming towards Poliphibus. He well saw him coming, and not (as was reason) without most great feare, seeing he had so much to doe to defend himselfe: but there he shewed the bloud, from which he was descended: for in despite of the Lions (haling them after him) he eschued the enemies; and so with all his force he got one arme at liberty, which he put to his dagger, and therewith ended the Lions warre.

He was so greedy thereof, that the fierce Wagan came; who being desperate, smote him vpon the rich Helmet, and beat a thousand sparkles of fire out of it, and made him set his knees to the ground. He came vpon him with another before he could recover himselfe: it was great hap that he had not stretched him all along, for he made him to fall on his face vpon the ground; and had it not bene for his lame leg, without doubt he had killed him.

But the future louer, which now for that he was a stranger, hastned his lot, seeing y he came againe, shifted himself to one side, and with all the strength that he was able, he smote him vpon the shield: it was of hardened Steele, after y manner of a Target, which hung at his necke: he parted it in two, iust in the middell, and made the Moore to reele, likely to fall.

The couragious young man, seeing him stand somewhat amazed, hee shewed not himselfe so, but suddenly leaped close to him, so as that before he could turne, he had giuen him a knock on the pate: he smote off halfe of his Helmet, and good part of the crowne of his head: he was driven to trip to keepe himselfe vpright. With another blow came y sonne of the great Trebatius, wherewith he ended the battell, bereaving the accursed Moore of life, being so tyred, that he was constrained to leane to his sword, and put vp his visor to recover his breath: hee might haue inloved his rich hood, which was inestimable: he spent some time herein,
and

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and thinking it more then reasonable, and taking a tiew of his weapons, he tooke vp one of the Giants speere, and went to the other gate with so great courage, as would haue made Mars asfeard, which stood wide open: a little within appeared a very comely Knight on a roane houle: his Armes were all lien coloured with some graine spots: he seemed so comely a man, that the great Tinacrian affrighted him.

He entred the gate without any shew of distrust, with his club on his shoulders. In passing a little vault, hee of the Castle came to him, saying, For the fayre disposition, Sir Knight, which you shew, I would not willingly fight with you; but being commaunded, of force I must obey, particularly Ladies, to whom is promised the head of euery one that cometh here, since the coming hither of a certaine Damsell.

Without fighting with you, gentle Knight, answered the Tinacrian, I would goe so; wards; but seeing it impossible, I am to be excused: wherefore letbinke you of the maner of our battell. On horsebacke, answered he: for, for you cometh one which the Ladies sent you. He turned his head to one side, thinking that that had bene true which he of the Castle told him; but he had scarcely turned, when the other clapping spurs to his swift running houle, ouerturnd him with his hoyses byt, and gave him a great fall in the middle of the yard. He thought that his body had bene broken, the fall was so terrible. His houle was taught for this purpose onely: and so he was not full risen, when with a new carriere he returned to tread vpon him, and ouerturnd him vpon one side: this was worse then the first: for falling vpon one side vpon his shield, it had almost put his armes out of ioynt. There is no Hurricane Tiper like to this nettled yong man, who lightly raising himselfe on his feet, without losing his terrible club which he had takē from y^e Giants, he attended the returne of y^e houle, which was so quickly, y^e he could hardly step aside: he did him no harme to speake of.

The fourth booke of the third Part

But it was much for him to see that hee had escaped the trained horse his breast, which with new force returned against the young man: here hee gaue a signe of his warlike arme, and the great valiancie of his person; for leaping a little to one side, the horse mist to runne vpon him, hee giuing a gallant blow: for raising his Club aloft, hee smote the Knight vpon the shoulders, making the blood to gush out at his mouth, hee stretcht him along vpon his horses necke: but the blow which the Paster received, was no let to the horse, to returne againe at the Tinacrian, beating the pavement in peeces with his heeles. Now had the sonne of Trebatius taken fortune by the foretop: for slipping to one side, he took the knight by the arme: it auailed him not, that he was againe come to himselfe, neither that he bare a gallant mind: for hee pulled him to the ground, where struggling, at length they came to let goe their hold, beginning a new battell, and although bloudie, yet worth the sight: for he of the Castle was valiant, and he fought for no lesse then his life and honour, but he gat little by this young man, who was euerie way his better, and much accustomed to seates of armes: And hauing gotten him afoote in that manner, had he bene Mars himselfe, hee would haue made small account of him. With all this hee of the Castle defended himselfe, and sometimes offended the mightie Tinacrian, who thinking that he lost much time, reatcht him a sound knock, yea he gaue him another, which made him fall on his hands to the ground, which, before that he could rise againe, he seconded, that within a little he had laid him all along.

This warrior of the Castle, as fierce as a Lion (seeing his death before his eyes) considering the enemies force, falling into desperation, throwing his shield to ground, with his sword in both his hands, went towards him, striking him vpon his shield: the fierce blow came with such strength, that it beat it to his Helmet, making him lose his senses. There was neuer scene greater haste then he made to second that blow, and smote him on the top of his most fine Helme, breauing

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

hereausing him in a manner of his sight: he would haue closed with him with a stabbe: but the young man as fierce as a Basilisk, preuented him, beating it aside, they came to hand by gripes: and as hee was stronger then he of the Castle; so lifting him vp from ground, hee hurled him against the pavement, and gaue him a soze fall: hee of the Castle still kept his hold of him, being asfeard of death: and recovering strength in his weakenesse, he began to defend himselfe, & to procure his libertie. But it was now too late: for kneeling downe vpon him, with his dagger in his right hand, he made a good end of his dayes worke; but so wearie, that he was not able to stand on his feete.

With all this, thinking that he had yet something to do, desirous to know what that might be, which was so much defended, with the same club on his necke, he entred in at another gate, he came into a large walke, at the end whereof he saw about the number of twenty Ladies, so exceeding faire, that they did euen make his eyes to dazle, thinking with himselfe (as indeede it was true) that there was nothing else to be seene.

After that he dycto neere to behold them, they were Ladies of Græce, which there were represented, although with new spirits, all taking that forme. Seeing him coming, they let themselves to behold him, very well liking his proportion.

One of them, which to him seemed to haue an Imperiall Crown on her head, said vnto him, We would not, Knight, that you should passe from hence without our fauour, which shalbe so needfull for you, considering how much there yet remaineth, that without it, it will be impossible to haue good end of this aduenture.

No man can deny it (sayd the young man, putting vp his Weuer) being a thing so well knowne, and wanting deserts: if it shall please you to bestowe any vpon mee, as on him which hath most neede thereof, you may binde me wholly to doe you seruice.

The fourth booke of the third Part

Whee are all well pleased therewith (sayd the fayned Ladie) but you are to receyue it here in our lodging, because that euery one will impart some vnto you apart: and so you may come vp here, and I will lend you my hand.

Being so heauily armed, faire Ladies (answered the Prince) it will bee very hard for mee to get so high. You haue your remedie in your hand, answered the Ladie, for disarming you; you may easily come vp to our lodging, and it shall be a new fauour for you, to be new armed at our hands.

It will be so, sayd the Creeke; but in a Castle where I haue met with so many enemies, it shall not be safe to goe disarmed; wherefore if there be no other waies, I am not of opinion to fulfill your commaundement.

When I say, sayd the Ladie, that you shall not accomplish what you pretend, heing that Ladies requells (so much in your fauour) you haue so lightly regarded.

They were all gone vpon a sudden, leaving him at their departure in extreme darknesse. The Prince in some sort was sorrie that he had not obeyed them: but imagining that it was some inchauntment, he was glad that he had on his Armour.

By chaunce he entred in at a gate which led him into a fayre Court: the Palestie and richnesse thereof bereaued him of his iudgement; for there was nothing elie to be seene but portraytures of gold, set with many rich pretious Stones: they all seemed to the young man, to bee aliue, the colours were so excellent and so wel layd on.

In the middelt of the Court, hee saw a most fayre tree, the one halfe of most fine gold, and the other of siluer, set in so good and comely order, with such exquisite arte, that it was a most strange, wonderfull, and pleasing thing to behold.

Above in the Galleries there seemed to bee people, although hee could speake to no bodie, nor know how hee should proceede in this most strange aduenture: for hee
was

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

was very desirous to see the end thereof.

As he stood thus beholding the Castle, and the ingrauen markes of the walles, there came forth at one side of the Court, a most comely and well countenanced Knight, in his hose and dublet of greene cloth of gold, so faire and so young, that the Tinacrian wondered at his most excellent constitution. He came with his sword in his hand, and a scarlet mantle wound about his arme, with such a gesture as was strange to see, and with very good behaviour drawing neere towards him, he said,

I would not, Sir Poliphebus, but if you had saue into so great disgrace with the Ladies, without which, you might haue gone forwarde with your good fortune, which did assure you a certayne end of this aduenture; but now being to fight, you are to perforce it with mee, and not with any other weapons then such as you see I come with: wherfore except you seele as it is requisite) a mantle at some Ladies hands, hauing most highly offended those of this Castle, I know not what order we shal take to be able to fight, which is a thing that I haue much desired, for the great same which in this Castle I haue heard of your valour.

I thanke you much, faire Knight, for that which you haue said, answered the Tinacrian. Although there bee no such matter in mee as you say; yet neuerthelesse, there shall want no good will to obey yours.

This battell being ended, which seeing that it cannot be eschued (to end this aduenture) let it be as you will haue it, although I want a mantle, for I am perswaded, that I haue so offended those ponder Ladies in denying what they required, that they will lend mee none, and yet I knowe no reason for it, seeing that heretofore I haue bene so subiect to their obedience.

All the Ladies which before he had scene, had seated themselves all aboue in the Galleries to see the battell. Yet the Tinacrian was of opinion, if what was past would

The fourth booke of the third Part

giue no occasion, that in such a case they should refuse to fauour him: and so he beganne with a very great good grace to put off his Armour, remayning all in blew, so gallant a personage, as there was none like him.

In that maner he went towards the Ladies, and making vnto them a verie comely reuerence, hee sayd vnto them, I remember, Soueraigne Ladies, the small reason I haue (considering what is past) to come to intreat you: but in that that I did not perfoyme your commaund, it is to be attributed to the naturall feare wherein I was, not conceyuing that your presence was sufficient to accomplish with honour, any action whatsoeuer though neuer so dangerous, yet notwithstanding, being challenged to the battell by this gentle Knight, with mantles, and I hauing none, and to be giuen by Ladies, reposing my case in your generositie, and not in my want of courtesie, which I acknowledge, I beseech you that it may come from some hand, which may giue me the palme of this, and all other warres which I shall undertake to doe you seruice.

I know not, Knight, with what countenance you can come to request any thing at Ladies hands, whom you haue so much offended, and in a matter which so much concerned you (answered the which first had spoken vnto him) particularly, there is nothing wherein Gallants attaine vnto greater honour, then by obeying Ladies: So as, that now if wee should at your bare request giue you our mantle, it would seeme that wee did it of great necessity.

Wherein consisteth your noblesse, (most excellent Ladies) answered the fearefull young man, and I will assure you to returne it againe to you, whole and sound, although it cost mee my life, which I will esteeme nothing so deare, nor no aduenture so hard that I will not undertake: and there is no greater generositie, then to pardon an enemy, principally, acknowledging his error, and that he hath deserved punishment. As they stood denying this

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

this Mantle, there came into that same roome, a most faire Ladie. O loue, how great is thy power! for she was not fully come, and had set her selfe at the side of the Gallerie, when to her was subiect the most free young man, who hauing forgotten what he requested, and himselfe also, for he stood gazing, fixing his eyes so vpon her, that hee was besides himselfe, and knew not where hee was. And in exchange for beholding her, he gaue her the keyes of his heart, and was yet so rowfull, holding it yet so little, in exchange onely to behold her. She came all clad in cloth of Gold with sundrie colours, with her haire curled after her Countie fashion, with a Dutch robe of the colour of the rest of her apparel: the young man neuer saw any thing so well worth the seeing in his life.

All the rest of the Dames seeing him in this manner, with a fained laughter, asked of him: How now, Sir Knight, what, haue you felt, that you haue so sone forgotten, not onely the Mantle which you desired, but euen your selfe also: If it bee a wound of loue, it is ill falling in loue in this place, for here is nothing to bee hoped for, but cruell death. In her crueltie, answered the now firme louer, consisteth all my life, seeing I haue seene the most swete death that can be imagined: he spake it with such passion, that I know not who would not but haue yelued, considering his goodly personage. The faire Ladie was no lesse belied in her imagination, perswading her selfe, that there was not so comely a Knight in the world, giuing loue so free passage into her breast, which lasted till her death, being no way able to leaue to loue. In her did loue shew an example of power, and valour, and being unable to doe any otherwise, (hauing vnderstood the request of this young man, and what the Ladies denied) she said, Because, gentle Knight, you shal not think, that in this Castle is included all the crueltie of the world, I will giue you this Mantle, wherewith you may end the battell, but vpon condition, that you shall not depart from hence, befoze you shall first haue come to aske pardon of

The fourth booke of the third Part

the Ladies whom you haue so offended. What should bee a great want of discretion (Soueraigne Ladie) for a man to fall into the reckoning, what it is to offend you, seeing how much it concerneth mee, not to depart hence without it, it shall not need to aduertise mee, that therein I should purchase your disfaueur. Why then, valorous Knight, quoth she, there resteth nothing but to giue you the Mantle, and therewith to wish you the victorie, as one which deserueth the same. In uttering these wordes with such a grace as would haue made loue himselfe in loue, shee took off her rich robe, & cast it downe to the Tinacrian, who being much enamoured, with his necke in her poake, winding it about his arme, he turned toward the knight, who at his approach said vnto him, You haue, Sir Knight, made so long stay, that but for that, that I did so much desire the battell, I would haue returned to my lodging, without giuing you any place to go any farther forwards. In that I haue made no longer tariance, I doe miracle (saie the valorous Bracke) for I know not how I could possibly depart from my life, leauing it in the hands of those faire Ladies. Is it possible (saie he of the Castle) that coming in free, you are become already so subiect? Therein appeareth the force of loue (answered the gentle Tinacrian) for he giueth, and bereaueth of libertie at his pleasure.

In this manner (saie he of the Castle) you are desirous to giue eny to this battell. It rather grieueth me much (answered the valiant youth) that we stay so long. I expect no longer the contrarie, neither did the Tinacrian giue him answer, but rather the one making to the other a due reuerence, with angrie paces they came to ioyne. O Thalia, that a man might put this battell into thy hands, to the end that thou mightest giue it that Soueraigne grace which it deserueth, for with my dull wit, and want of fauours, it is not much, though I erre therein. All the faire Ladies be helo the warriors. The Tinacrian did purpose rather to suffer himselfe to be hurt, then that the Mantle should be toucht.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

taught: it did encourage him, and that verie much, that his
 Ladie had giuen it him; hee entered with his right foote bea-
 ring the point of his sword firme forwarde. He of the Castle
 was nimble, and so with his left arme he bare by his thrust,
 giuing him another verie strong one: it did not a little analle
 the young man, to see that his Ladie beheld him, for other-
 wise, without faile he of the Castle had hurt him, and yet he
 passed his sword vnder his right arme, & without coming
 to the flesh, cutting his clothes, he let passe y^e blow, wanting
 to one side with such quicknes, as was strange. He cast ano-
 ther at his shoulder: this gaue him the victory, for through his
 elbow, hee thrust the third part of his sword, hee drew it out
 dropping blood, and not content therewith, hee smote him a-
 thwart the thigh: it was somewhat a doubtfull blow, for had
 it not bene so, he had certainly hought him, he wounded him
 not without landing, although but litle. & here was neuer tripe
 that so returned against her enemy. as did he of the Castle,
 although somewhat out of breath, which was the danger-
 ous wound: being wholly desperate, covered with his Gan-
 tle, he entered, and with a strong thrust, hee stabd the great
 Timacrian in the arme: it made him to grone, to feele himself
 so sore hurt. At the instant, the blood sprang out by y^e his La-
 dies Gantle. I know not who most felt it: for she seeing him
 hurt, waxed as red as a Rose: He, not for that hee was hurt,
 had also a good colour, but for pure anger, as he well made it
 appeare: for giuing a fierce leape, he toynd with his aduer-
 sarie, who warded it with his Gantle: but that was but a
 poore defence, for he cut all the plectes therof, and part of his
 arme: hee saw him somewhat out of order, and lost not the
 benefit of y^e occasion: for he closed with him, thinking to haue
 cuerboyned him, but he gat but litle by his coming: for fin-
 ding himselfe prevented by his aduersarie, who with his
 dagger in hys hand, if hee had bene a litle more come
 to himselfe, without doubt he had kild him: for coming to
 handle gripes, he gaue him therewith a mightie stab: it was
 below his hip, wherein he left the dagger sticking. The va-
 lorious Timacrian tooke this wound verie in patientlie,

The fourth booke of the third Part

and put his hand to his dagger to haue ended the warre. Hee of the Castle set hand to the scabberd, being afraid of death, but he could not be master thereof. But going struggling euen to the gate where the Ladies were, hee had the better in the wrestling, by reason of his hurt in the thigh: But coming where hee might behold his Ladie, (his colour changing and all his body trembling) hee set vpon his aduersarie, whome being almost out of breath, he forced to fall on his knees vpon the steepe, and with his dagger in his hand, hee meant to haue stabbd him into the forehead, & had done it, had he not heard the Ladies which seeing it, cryed out, holding him fast. The young man lifted vp, his head to see who it was that called. They said vnto him, Sir Knight, in requitall of the displeasure which you haue done vs, wee entreate you to leaue that Knight with his life, seeing how little it importeth you to be an Homicide, whereas you may otherwise haue the victorie. It is a thing which I should bee sorry for (answered the valiant youth.) I would valorous Ladies, that of your part I might be commaunded, and as not a thing that I desire: and if it bee your pleasure, I giue ouer the battell, on condition that he suffer mee to giue an end to this aduenture: and so he parted from him, thinking to haue fought no more, (for his deeде deserved no lesse:) but the Knight forgetting his kindnesse, with an encreased stomacke, farre more then at the beginning, assailed the young man, saying,

Doe not thinke, sonne of Garrofilea, that thy coming into this Castle shal so little cost thee. The Prince was ashamed to see himselfe so mocked. Hee turned to see the Ladies, which holding his death for certaine, seeing him so ill hurt, and his enemy so sound and wel, had left the standing. The like did his faire Ladie, hauing made streames of teares for the great sorrow which she felt, to see the Gallant whome she so dearly loues, to bee so sore wounded: much more did the young man grieve at that, then to see himselfe so wounded. But coming againe to himselfe, as furious

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

as an Aspicque, hee charged vpon his enimie, although drawing one leg somewhat after him. There is no cruel- tie comparable to this, for death is not feared, so as reuenge may be had. He crossed his sword somewhat low, making shew to bee overcome. His most strong aduersarie thought to make benefit thereof, but it hapned cleane contrarie; he put by the blow, but with a full blow he smote him ouer the legge, and almost cutting it off, hee made him to stumble with the paine of his hurt, and hee reached him yet another sound one before hee could stay. Hee smote him also on the shoulders, where was his first hurt, but therewith the Tinacrian ended the battell, for with the fourth, hee felled him dead to the ground. He scarcely touched the ground, when he vanished out of sight: all the Court was filled with a thicke darke mist; nothing was heard but the lamentations of distressed Ladies. What being past, the Tinacrian felt himselfe whole and sound of al his wounds and blowes receined, and againe armed with his rich armour, which was that which made him most to wonder, hee saw nothing in the Court but the Silver tree. He drew nere vnto it, wondering at the beautie and the rich enamelling of the body of the tree. He read an Epitaph, differing fro that which the faire Queene of Lira met withall, when she entred into this Castle, as was declared in the second part of this Historie, written with Greeke letters in bloud; the Louer read them, which said thus,

When the bastard Lion shall come into this habitation, and with winning it, shall lose his libertie, breaking off the Golden bough, he shall make free from perpetuall enchantment that personage which took him, leauing another free entrie for the fierce Basiliske, who shall set at libertie the father of this Damself, and many other Knights which here shall bee enchanted with the flowre of beautie: leauing this Palace, this old and fresh repose shall be given them in Olympus, where they shall remaine many yeeres.

The young man made no longer stay, but comming to

The fourth booke of the third Part

the Golden bough, taking good footing in the ground, hee set to his valiant hands, he bowed the bough so much, that hee made it like a bow, hee heard great exclamations, which came forth of the body of the tree, saying, O cruell Knight, the case which tormenteth me, I feele in the middest of my soule, leaue me, it sufficeth for my afflicted heart, that thou take compassion thereof, in knowing that I am that infortunate Alpatrophio, Lord of all Egypt, and to my great hurt a great Wizard, and this not sufficeth, for I was the murderher of my owne daughter, in whome rested my life. These words, nor the pitifull complaints of the Emperour moued him not, so as to make him giue ouer her determination: but rather with greater force then befoze, he so hard pulled the bough, that he brake it off, running downe great streames of bloud, all his armour and weapons were changed into that Purple colour, and hauing the bough, he went therewith to a gate within, which led into a great hall so rich, that it made him out of his wittes, to behold the Paintings and Carued workes which were round about it.

The young man was much troubled to see the things, which were in that most faire hall: in one side thereof, hee saw comming forth, an auncient Gentlewoman of good yeeres, leaning vpon two stimpies, such as hee saw the Queene haue, apparelled all in white, cut vpon coloured Tinsell, which comming neere vnto him, said,

I know not, presumptuous Knight, who hath giuen you leaue to come into my lodging, whither it is not permitted to any man to come, without bringing the Golden bough, or at least, that of Silver. Why then, honourable Ladie (answered the young warriour) I bringing the tokens of the tree which you speake of, you haue no reason to shew your selfe displeased with me. And with that he held vp his hand, and shewed the Golden bough. The Ladie verie much reioyced, to see the Princeesse at libertie: shee came to the gentle Tinacrian, and taking him by
the

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

the hand, shee said, Come with mee, valorous Prince of Timacia, and you shall enjoy the spoule due unto your rare vertue. Shee brought him to a lodging, whose richnesse and beautifull building, made him more to wonder then all the rest, it was supported by foure Pillars, and vpon eu rie Pillar, was a picture painted, holding a rowle, signifying what he was.

These shall not be freed from enchantment (valorous Prince) said the Ladie, with the sorrowfull Emperour of Egypt, which heere shall remaine punished for his folle, and manie faire Dimes, untill that the great Basillike free his lodging: for the present, to you is onely granted the most faire daughter, for reward for the paines which you haue endured, in performing this enterprisse, a reward worthie of the sonne of Garrofilea, and shee is a gainer, to bee beloved by so valorous a Prince. Shee would not let him staie any longer, but taking him by the arme, shee ledde him to other rich lodgings, till at last shee brought him verie neere where his Squire was, before he went forth.

Shee put him in a rich square room, which opened towards the Dungeon, where Luzela the Emperours daughter was, lamenting her misfortune, to see her selfe without libertie or any hope thereof. The Ladie verie pleasantly went in thither, saying, Come hither, Soueraigne Princesse of Egypt, for now the high heaueus haue practised a meane to free you of your paine, and haue sent you the Prince of Timacia, to set you at libertie, for whome it was reserved, as for him which was most worthie. The Ladie surprised with toy, could giue no answer, the good, and such as that was, so busied all her senses, that she could not beleue it, although she saw it. She came forth with her, where in seeing the great Timacrian, shee fell wholly in loue with him: in louing & being beloved, neyther of both had any advantage. The valorous

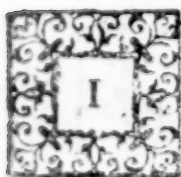
The fourth booke of the third Part

louer set him on his knees besoze her, imagining that it was she which had giuen him the Mantle, in paine whereof, he left with her his heart and soule: he desired with great affection to kisse her hand, and she, not to she to herselfe vnkind, raising him, said,

There is no reason, valorous Knight, that she which hath receiued so much good at your hands, should be entreated for ought, seeing you haue moze deserued. The most discrete Ladie would not suffer them to spend any longer time, but bringing them forth into the walke, where his Squire staid, giuing to the Princesse, those two simples for her service, she embraced them, saying, Although that the pleasure, valorous Princes, which I now enjoy to see you, be great, I hope in the high heaueins, to receiue greater, although not so soone: but the assured hope shall make mee liue contented, expecting the Basilisk, on whome your and my contentments doe depend. She had alreadye prouided Pastreyes for the Ladies, and againe embracing them, not without teares, she returned to the Castle, at whose going in, there was so great a noyse, as made the louers much to wonder, and within their sight, they sawe the building to arise and to flie in the ayre, vntill it past their sight, whereof mention shall bee made in the end of this fourth booke, where it shall better fit, to tell you what those louers did.

CHAP. XVII.

How the Prince of Tinacria tooke his way towards Grecia, in companie of the gallant Luzela, and how hee let his sister Rosaluirea at libertie, from the power of the Giants, which carried her to Sea.



In sight, faire Ladies, of the inchaunted Castle, wee left the two Louers, who seeing themselves alone, who is any way able to expresse, what the one conceited of the other? Now

of the Mirrour of Knighthood,

I would faine haue a fauour to be able to publish with my owne experience, of what power a fauour is, which is giuen with a pleasant countenance. All this was experimētēd in them: for if hee loued her, shee liued by adoring him: they were well matched, and to liue secure from the changings in loue, and with tendernesse of heart, the valiant young man askt her, saying,

Soueraigne Ladie, seeing that the heauens haue reserved me to be yours, and that I am neuer to depart your seruice, neither from what you shall commaund, I should bee verie glad to know your mind, and whither your will is that we goe. My lot, valorous Prince, is so contrarie, (although that I now haue my wish, seeing I am in your power) that I am to doe nothing after my owne will, but onely follow yours.

The Gallant hartily thanked her, saying, I well see, valorous Princesse, that this your generosity is wholly to enrich me, and seeing that it is your pleasure, that I shall dispose of all, for this present let our iournie be for the Greeke Empire, for I haue a great desire to make my selfe knowne vnto the Emperour Trebatius my beloued father, and also because that he may see what chaunce is fallen vnto mee, in comming to doe you this little seruice; for there your greatnesse may stay with the Greeke Ladies, in greater honour then in that sorrowfull habitation.

Valorous Prince (sayd the tender Ladie) I haue euer had a great desire to see the Graeke Court, and the Ladies therein: for that I haue heard say, that they are the full perfection of all haucry. In this maner there is a thing come into my mind, which if it shall please you to heare it, I will tell it you vpon the way betwene this and the sea.

Nothing (valorous Prince) shall displease mee, if you therein shall take delight. In Poliphebus armes the Ladie took her horse, and so did the Amphyes giuen to doe her seruice. Shee as nimble as a flie, leapt into his saddle, (a new wayt to make the Ladie the better to loue him) and leading her

The fourth booke of the third Part

horse by the bridle, they went downe the hill. In comming into the plaine, the right way towards the Hauen, Poliphebus began after this maner:

I doe, Soueraigne Princesse, vnderstand of the great warres wherein my father now is, and of the many enemies which beseege his Title: I neuer yet durst to make my selfe knowne vnto him, without doing something, whereby I might boldly vaunt my selfe to bee the sonne of the mightie Trebatius: and for this purpose I take occasion to goe in your company; and hauing y^e equitie of your beautie on my side, betwixne the two Campes I purpose to maintayne the same; not against the Greeke Dames, for the loue of my sisters, and the rest of my kindred, which haue enamoured which seeing my challenge, of force must come to contradict it. Fame hath reported, that in the Hores Campe there are Ladies, which for beautie, are the Wierixes of their Countreies: and if I prosper well in this attempt, I may make my selfe knowne for the sonne of the great Trebatius.

I would not, valorous Prince (sayd the Ladie) y^e through my occasion you should lose that, which your vertue doeth assure of: for there want not Ladies, whose brauery and beauty is to be preferred farre before mine. I am not able to goe into Greece (answered the gallant Louer) without making it appeare what power your vertue hath within my breast. So then (answered the Ladie) there is nothing to bee sayd against your resolution. With swete conuersation they came to the sea side, where they past all that night with such contentment of either partie, as cannot bee expressed. The next day, at what time as the faire Phebus began to beautifie the earth with his presence, the two beloued Louers embarked themselves in the ship which Poliphebus brought. The Masters and Mariners entertaining them with great ioy, and wondering at the beauty of the gallant Lancela, hoisted their sailes, directing their course towards Grecia, saying with so great pleasure & content,
that

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

that they wished it had bene Vlasses boyage. After supper lying upon the hatches of the ship, casting their eyes to behold the vast seas, and the forme of the skies, this Gallant sayd vnto the Ladie, If it may be told without grieue vnto you, I would gladly know the cause of your enchauntment. Some it will be to me (warlike Prince, in remeing the remembrance of what I there endured; but to giue you satisfaction, whatsoeuer you shall commaund shall be put in execution.

Then know, valorous knight, that my father had an Aunt, the wisest woman in all Egypt, where it is an ordinarie matter to be giuen to the arte Magick. My father comming to receiue the Crowne, as Emperour of Egypt, was desirous to learne that science; and so brought that his Aunt to the Court, of whom he learned the greatest part of all her cunning. He married, and the destinies would, that there should be borne so infortunate a Damsell as am I, to haue so many defaistres. Comming to the age that I now am of, without any pardon as a father to his owne daughter, he came to be so farre in loue with me, that hee took no pleasure of the world, seeing I would not yield to his desire. I imagining that I should wrong my selfe, to yield in such a case to my father. This my iust disobedience made such an impression in his heart, that from thenceforth his hatred was farre greater towards me, then euer his loue had bene. It did nothing priene me to endure the troubles which he put me to, for denying him a thing so bruiust.

Wrath and blind affection so much prauayled ouer him, that being in my garden, little thinking of his paine, although it did somewhat grieue me to see what hee endured, considering that he was my father, I saw him comming in a walke among Canes, with a more bristled pace, then his grauitie required.

In seeing him I arose, & with a fained smile wēt to meet him. But he which came drowned in a deuillish determination, without regard of any thing more then his passion led him

The fourth booke of the third Part

unto, with a strange furie tooke mee by the arme, saying, My Luzela, if it may giue you no occasion to ease my paine, in that I am thy father, and to see what I indure with the griefe and torment which thy beauty hath brought me vnto; yet let the death which thou seest before thine eyes moue thee to doe it. And therewith he drew out his dagger which he set at my brest. You may imagine, gentle Knight, what my soule felt betweene these two extremes, and each of them so great. In the end I chose rather to die, then so to defile my body, and answered him, My Lord and dearly beloued Father, the heauens beare record with me, that if the losse of my life might doe you pleasure, I would presently giue it, and should take pleasure to lose it, and therein should offend no body, but rather ennoble y^e obedience which I owe you: but to be obedient in this, a thing so much against reason, I am of opinion, that therein I should doe iniurie, both to you and my selfe.

Hee suffred mee not to proceede forwards; for with a strange fury, hee sheathed his cruell dagger in the tender brest of his louing daughter. Few blowes sufficed to stretch mee all along.

My father had not the power (repenting himselfe of that he had done) to take out his dagger. I thinke the heauens would not that he should kill me; to the end, that I in him should see a sudden change.

A cruell destinies, began he to say, lifting his voyce to heauen, in how many sorts haue you shewne your selues conuured against me! An unfortunate Emperour Alpatra- phio, to how small purpose serued the science wherewith I was indued! A blind and vaine affection, seeing that from thence is growne, to see before mine eyes, a fact so inhu- mane! O heauens, if you heare me, be attentiu, that see- ing that you are witnesses of my great crueltie, so shall you likewise be of the reuenge, which I will take of my rebel- lious heart. He was a thousand times about to pluck out the dagger which hee had stuck in my brest. I thinke hee
let

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

let it alone, because hee would not see my blood; and I saw
it was euen so: for coming vnto me, he vttered these spee-
ches: Ah my Luzela, sometimes beloued, not as a daugh-
ter, which is that which now tormenteth me, if there from
the heauens, where without change, treading them with
thy immortall fate, thou dost chaunce to see the alteration
in thy father, I haue no eyes to craue pardon: but thou
wanting life, which to me did I giue mine, it is not to bee
sought for vpon earth, seeing I haue sent it to the heauens,
neither will I enioy any, because it will bee loathsome, see-
ing I cannot forget to haue bene thy murtherer. I doe pro-
mise thee, my beloued daughter, to accompanie thee in thy
death, seeing I loued thee so dearely in thy life. It tor-
mented his soule, to see how still I lay, imagining that I was
dead, and in pulling out his dagger hee had done a greater
harme, which he had done, had not his old Aunt Cleonta
preuented it, the which in her kind, being angry, vsing her
accustomed inchauntments, put him farre from mee. Whe-
n she came to mee and pluckt out the dagger, and putting cer-
taine herbes into the wound, cured me of the hurt, and said
vnto me, Notwithstanding that the resisting of your fa-
thers passion, be very worthy of commendation; yet in
that that thou wast not sorry for his payne (as was reason
being his daughter) it is iust that thou make satisfaction
therefore, in straight and close inchauntment, where thou
shalt remaine, vntill that the braue Lion shall enter into
my strong Castle, breaking by force of Armes the strength
thereof, and ouercomming the gards which I shall there
set: and then thou shalt begin to see some comfort, al-
though thy father haue none; for it is requisite that he pay
more for the iniurie which he hath committed, not onely a-
gainst thy renoune, but against his owne honour. What
the Basiliske shall be giuen him, when he shall least think
thereof.

She says no more vnto me: but at that very instant
me thought I began to want my wits, and without know-

The fourth booke of the third Part

ing what I did, I went to that lodging from whence you set me free, where I did nothing else, but bewaile the absence of my father, holding him for dead. He would neuer tell me any thing of him, although that sometimes he came to visit me, giuing me hope hereof: and he told it me so playne, that I now perceyue how much is therein consigned: and I am giuen to vnderstand, that the time shall come, that I againe shall see my father.

Yea, it will come (answered the gallant Louer) for the heauens giue not one contentment without another.

In this and other pleasing things, they past the greatest part of the night; wherewith the young man began to waite somewhat bold: it was not wholly to offend her, but to shew with the mouth what the heart felt. He was of opinion, that this Ladie was sent to him from the heauens; wherefore, with the greater ioy they past the rest of the time.

It sufficeth, that to take their rest, they went to their Cabin (with a determination on eyther side) that nothing should hinder their loue.

Before that Aurora had done the Sunnes Ambassage to the world, shewing his coming, the master aduertised the Prince, that in the ship he had descried somewhat neere, another Galley. He leapt out of his bed, not willing to shew any carelesnesse for the defence of his Ladie. With the masters helpe he put on his rich Armour, and being at all peeces armed, he went to put the Princeesse of Egypt, and his soule also, out of feare: and with reuerence (being wholly overcome with loue) he told her that there was an enemies Galley discovered: willing her, that she should not therefore bee afear'd, for the sight of her good grace did assure all.

With greater valour, valorous Prince (sayd the Ladie) I would very gladly accompany you, for the succour which hereof can come vnto you (except the good will) is so little, that it will rather be a hindrance. All should

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

I, gallant Ladie (quoth the Timacrian) goe to fight, if not going wholly yours, and in fighting, it shall bee onellie for you.

By this time the two Gallies were come neere together, wherein, in seeing the Princes Galley, was heard a great cry, bidding them amaine, if not they should all dye. The young man did it, but to another intent: for hee commaunded, that all those which could beare Armes, should take them, and should stand at the ships side.

As the Barriners with all diligence had ended the casting of grapples aboard the other, so the ende that thee should not fall off, and that they might with their swords fight aboard (it was no euill counsell, for it gaue them the victorie) vpon a sudden there came some twelue Knights, which bade them to yeeld.

The balliant young Prince stayed untill that they had fastened the Galley: and getting a club in his hand, hee set himselfe vpon the poope, where hee gaue so good account of himselfe, that two of them lost their lines with one blow which he gaue amongst them.

They were many, and for feare of their Commanders they set vpon the Prince, but it was to com with their lines, and there to meete their death; for hee neuer strake blowe which killed not a Knight, and sometimes two of them together payd for their folly: befoze that they could returne, he had made an end of them.

By that time, there came forth three most fierce Giants, out of a withdrawing place in the ship, where the Timacrian heard cryings, as of forced Ladies. Those three most cruell Pagans were much amazed, to see how soone that Knight had made an end of all their Knights. All of them forgetting the order of Knighthood, drawing out their monstrous saulehions, came to the shippes side: and one of them assuring himselfe of his agilitie, setting his one foot vpon his shippe side, leapt into the Timacrians Galley, and had done it, if the young mans cruell club

The fourth booke of the third Part

had not by the way taken him a blow on the pate, and be-
reaving him of his life in the ayre, threw him in back a-
gaine into the ship dead at his friends feet, which were in
a cold sweat. He which lost least occasion, was the Tinacri-
an; for with a light leap he set himselfe against the Giants.
Whether that she which loved him better then herselfe,
tooke pleasure therein, there is no doubt, thinking that no
man could be loved with more reason then the Tinacrian,
seeing his great valour contayned with so much beautie as
hath bene aforesayd. He was one of the most gallant perse-
nages in the world; so as many times he would not put off
his Helmet, especially among Ladies, to whom he was as
a Cockatrice. Very ioyfull she set her to behold what he did
in the Galley. He somewhat reposing himselfe, with a trou-
bled voyce, sayd, Now now, you traytours, and so easily
did you thinke to beare away y^e prize? First you shall leaue
your lues in paine for your foolish presumption. The va-
liant Louer stayd for no answer, but whorling his club a-
bout his head, he smote one of them vpon the shield, which
hee brake in peces, and therewithall his arme which it
hung vpon. He escaped not without his payment, for in the
warres, fortune neuer giueth the palme without it: for they
both smote him vpon the inchaunted Helmet, and made him
set his knees to the ground: they there strake the Prince
and his Ladie in the shield, which her soule hath that faith-
fully loneth: this, they which know what it is to loue, call
the heart: hee saw that these fierre Giants againe smote
downe right at him.

Hee on one side crossed the blow with his club: and the
other he shunned by skipping to one side. The club was no
defence against the force of the blow, which brake it in the
middlest. It was good fortune that the Tinacrian gaue
back with his body, letting goe his club, which was y^e cause
that he escaped the blow; which if he had not done, he had
saine on his face: the handle onely remained with y^e valiant
louer, which he would employ in his Ladies seruice, which
he

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

he saw did beheld him: it did the more encourage him to doe it, for that, that by reason of the noyse, there came out of a Cabbin in the Galley, a most brave dame, clad all in blew, cut vpon rich cloth of Gold, with her haire made vp, more bright then the Sunne beames, vpon her head, a net-wooke of Silver: the sweete prison of loue, which to him had bene life, if they would haue lettten him alone, although somewhat painefull in that place.

It was long since that the Prince had seene that Ladie, but he presently knew that she was his beloued sister: the gallant Roldurra, a cold streake to see her in that place, ran cuer all his bodie, he would deser no longer time: but shew the porce of the Club which he had in his hands at one of the Giants; if it had bene shot out of a Culuerin, it could not haue sline with greater force; he smote him right on the Helmet, him, who had already lost his arme: the gallant neuer in his life gaue blow more worth the seing, for lighting on the end, it sheathed it selfe in his head: he therewith slept backe, and drew out his rich sword, and with a ship was with the Giant, who was yet troubled with the last blow, and with all the strength that he was able, he gaue him a thrust in the midst of the breast. His strong double breastplate auailed him not, but that his sword entred euer into his shoulders, and in drawing out his sword, cut came the Giants soule. He which remained alive, was much vexed therewith, and taking reuenge with his sword in both his hands, he made towards the youth, he could not auoide the blow: and to haue receiued it, was like to haue bene the Princes last: for striking him on the top of the Crest, he made abountance of blood gush out at the visor of his Helmet, he was readie to fall. As he was came vpon him with another, which made him fall vpon his hands and knees vpon the ground: he would haue troden him vnder his fette, but the warlike Prince had not yet lost his good resolution, seeing him come running, slipt to one side, letting him passe with greater force then a thunder-bolt. The young louer

The fourth booke of the third Part

followed him, and as hee turned about with his sword in both hands, hee smote him athwart the Helmet, and strake away all that ribs, and left him shrewdly hurt: hee provided for him another, because hee should Fate, and with a backward blow, hee left him assented, for to smite him on the side of the head: euerie blow was death to him, hee closed with him, seeing the advantage which then he should haue. The Giant, with the pangs of death griped him with such force, that his armour entred into his flesh, But the fierce youth with his dagger ended the warres, and throwing them all into the Sea, hee went straight to his sister, putting off his Helmet, and said,

I know not, Adam, and my beloued sister, how I shall esteeme this good hap, which the Gods this day haue powred vpon mee, seeing they haue brought me where I might doe you seruice: for I beleue, you were forced to come hither with such euil companie. By this the Ladie knew him, and embracing him with a thousand teares like Pearles, for toy, shee said, Who that hath gained, valorous brother, hath bene my selfe, seeing that in giuing me libertie, you haue giuen me means to reioyce at your Cheualrie. They againe embraced, for there were no brothers that more dearly loued then these two: he acquainted her with his aduventure, and the course which he held.

The Ladie beyond all measure, reioyced to see the prince Poliphebus so well employed; she would then goe to speake to the Princeesse of Egypt, taking much pleasure to knowe her for her Ladie and sister. The Prince carried her in his armes aboord, entertaining her with such courtesie as was expedient; and knowing her to bee his sister, whome hee so dearly loued, shee shewed her great affection, which lasted so long as they liued. The Princeesse was verie sozie, to thinke how much her mother grieved for her absence: wherefore they tooke order, that two of their people should goe in the Giants Galley, directly for Tinacria, where they should bee well paid for their labour, which they did, carry-

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ing certaine letters from the Prince to his mother. They tooke their course for Grecia, where in few dayes they arrived, and those with the letters at Tinacria, where they were well entertained, knowing for whom they came. The Queen read the letters, reioysing to know what was become of her beloued sonne, the contents wherof were these,

Poliphebus his letter to Garrofilea
his mother.

MY businesse hath bene such & so much, Soueraigne Queene and deare mother, that they haue not giuen me leasure to bee my owne messenger, notwithstanding that I much desired the same: occasion was now offered me, when verie merily I tooke my way towards the Greeke Empire, in companie, and as husband of the Princesse of Egypt, and the high heauens willing to fauour me, ordained that in the middest of the Sea I met with my Sister, whom three cruel Giants carried prisoner. The gods were so fauourable, that I gaue her libertie, and with her am going to doe my dutie to our father, who is vexed with most cruell warres; and if mine and my sisters intreatie may ought preuaile with you, we beseech you, that (forgetting what is past) you will not onely pardon, but also asist him with men from your kingdome, which will be much esteemed through the world, and to vs it shall be much honour, to be the children of such a mother. We hope that your wisdom wil consider that this is verie requisite, and much importeth. The gods preserue your royall person, and graunt vs life to returne againe to doe our dutie vnto you.

Poliphebus of Tinacria, and Rosalaira of
Grecia, your louing children.

The sonnes reasons did so much mollifie y^e hard hart of the

The fourth booke of the third Part

cruell mother, that she presently altered her mind. In the end, as she was a woman, yet therefore she lost no part of her authoritie, but presently commaunded Proclamation to bee made through all Tinacria, that they all should within few dayes, with the greatest force that they should bee able to leue, make their repaire to her Citie. Her subjects obeyed, for she was well beloued of all: and when they knew what voyage they should make, they leued thirtie thousand men, all verie well armed, she issued of her treasure what was needful: for although that the warres would be long, yet there should bee nothing wanting: she was a thousand times in the mind to haue gone for Grecia: but she found so many inconueniences, that she was enforced to stay.

She sent for Captaine of all this people, untill they should meete with the Prince, the ancient and discrete Earle of Rodica, a knight, who for his valour was to be trusted in a greater matter then this: he accepted of the charge, and in companie of his sonne the mightie Partenio, he departed towards Grecia, with so prosperous weather, that within eight dayes, without any tempests they came within sight of Arisa, ten leagues from Constantinople: it behoued them to beare into the Bay, because they saw the enemies Fleete, bearing about as though they would follow them: but it had bene in vaine, for the Tinacrian Gallies came well appointed; and therefore the next morning they bare in with the Greeke fleete, wondering to see it, little thinking that the Greeke had bene of such power. They set vp the Greeke Armes, as they were commaunded, making signe of peace. The Admirall bare in, giuing a merrie salutation. The most strong Astrasio commaunded them to bee answered. They took a friggot, and went to speake with the Generall; who knowing what they were, entertained them with much honour, being verie glad of the good succours which came to the Emperour, where we will leaue them,
and

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

and the Prince, with the Ladies, taking land below Constantinople, to declare what passeth therein.

CHAP. XVIII.

Of the bloudie skirmish which was betweene the two Armies, about the taking of certaine heards, and of the coming of the Earle of Modica.



I hath bene no small matter, illustrious Prince, for a short wit, to haue prosecuted so long an Historie, passing betweene the two extremes of Loue, and the fierce Mars, giuing to either the right which his valour requirerh. But now from henceforth, I am constrained to treat of so manie,

which in the warres haue made prooffe of themselves, that I hold it a hard matter for my small talent: but hoping of your most noble Lordships fauour, I will undertake the charge; for without it, it shall not be possible to doe any thing of worth, or that may yeld any content.

The Grekes were glad of their victorie past, although it brought with it a correction, to see the Boozes (in despite of them) encampe themselves, who desirous to repaire the disgrace which they had receiued, by a thousand meanes sought to trie their fortune. It gaue them as good occasion as they desired, for their skoutes returning to the Campe, said,

That vpon the top of the hill, they had discouered great aboundance of Cattell, on that side towards their Campe, and that there might bee about some thirtie thousand footemen, which had the gard of them. The Achaian was very wise, and as an expert Captaine, before that hee would determine what should be done, he commaunded the mightie

The fourth booke of the third Part

Don Argante, and his friend Thorisiano, that with 500. light-horſe, without charging the enemye, they ſhould diſcouer the hill, and to ſee whether there were any Ambuſcade, and if there were none, they ſhould with all ſpade take the paſſage, aduertizing what paſſed, for hee purpoſed to leaue none, if he once took the hills ſide: hee was not ſo ill aduiſed which kept the ſicke, which was the good knight Flammeo, but that he gaue preſent aduertilement to Conſtanti- nople; for the two Princes could not get by ſo high ſo ſe- cretly, but that they would be diſcouered. The expert knight preſently with ten thouſand men, brake the ſicke downe the hill, and hee with the reſt came in the arriere Gard, for hee thought (and ſo it happened) that the enemye would charge him at their backes.

The meſſenger came beſore the Emperour, who with all the haſte in the world, in companie of his ſonnes, with all the men of warre of Perſia and Babylon, which were moſt reſreſhed, hee ſayled a great pace out at the Sirena Port, thinking to get the hill, but all his labour was in vaine: for the furious Bembo, deſpited with what was paſt, had already taken it with fifty thouſand fighting men, whereof the one halfe were his owne, and the other were Almatnes, to whome hee was much affected. It was an vn- luckie day for the Crakes; for ioyning with Flammeo his troups, they began a verie ſierce ſkirmiſh, but being too weake, hee was taken priſoner, and all his people cruci- throwne, and the moſt part of them cruelly ſlaughtered. They made no great boalt: for coming backe with the Caſtell, verie ioyfull of the victorie, they could not paſſe ſo at their eaſe, but that they muſt extend themſelues at large on the hills ſide, making head againſt the Crakes, who vn- derſtanding what had paſſed, fought not like men, but ra- ther like enraged Lions. The Alarm was giuen in both Campes, & there was no knight of any accompliſhment, but repai- red to the battell, for the Princes of Fraunce, and the vali- ent Teriſmundo, knowing of the taking of his wiues vn-
kle,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

kle, and how sorrowfull she would bee when she should heare the newes, even by pure force of armes, they went by to the top of the hill, and so returning upon them which bane the Cattel, they took them from them, putting the to cruell deaths. They bane downe the beasts, til they gat at the enemies backs, & then with a great cry they set upon the, assuring themselves of the victorie, and brought them to such a straight, that whether they would or no, they made them take the plaine, and, but for abandoning the heards, they had wholly onerthron them. But having againe recovered the hill, of force they were to stand there still, which stode them in greater stead in the battell. Bembo was so carefull, that he had alreadye given notice to the Campe, to the end that Brauorante, & Brusaldoro, with all those of Atiquea, should with all speede come thither, towards the hills side which falleth by the Sea side, for there hee most feared the Crækes. The valorous Knight with the Stars, whom Bembo had made his Lieutenant generall, came with the rest of the armie openly to the battell. What yong man came verie desirous to fight that day, and so encouraging his soldiers, putting by his Weaver, chearing them with the beautie of his face, he said,

This is the day, valiant men of warre, wherein friendly fortune hath put the enemy into our hands, which now were carelesse for joy of the late victorie. I will not encourage you, for I assure my selfe, that each of you in particular hath wished for this day, to let them know the strength of your armes, and seeing we are before them, there is now no time to make many speeches, but remitting all to the valor, wherewith the heavens haue enriched you, assuring my selfe thereof, I am of opinion, that we shall make them pay their old score. He cast his Trunchion in the midst of them, which was a signe that no man should take any prisoner, but that they should put all to the sword: for there is neuer worse service, then that which is done perforce.

They all shouted for joy, promising the Captaine, y they

The fourth booke of the third Part

would all die, or ever come. There went in the middle Florisa, and Don Celindo, nere unto Don Clarissell. There went in the Flaunt-gard, aboue three thousand Giants, so high, that they seemed to be so many Pine trees: the valorous Astorildo led the arrere Gard, desirous to meete with his Cousin of Dacia, with whome hee was much offended, because that hee had perswaded his sister Rosamundi, to renounce the worshipping of their false gods. Thither came the mightie Emperour of the Romanes, accompanied with the best men in the armie: by his side came the Prince of Almaine, with the strong Brundusio, which could neuer be perswaded of the fiercenesse of the Grækes: there came for his Gard all the flower of Giant-land, which were aboue two thousand.

The braue Califa led his people, so greedily desiring to fight, that even with passion not foreseeing the event, hee commaunded his Standard to march forwards, and so extending themselves in length, in good order they should present themselves before the Grækes, for this should put the victorie in their hands. The mightie Græke came not so ill provided, but that hee brought all the Ahebane horsemen by his side, commanding the Duke to bring forth all the Carts, Wagons set with hookes of Iron, & the Elephants, and if occasion were offered, to present a field battell, for hee with his sonne would take the grane way. Then came the mightie Captaine Generall, with the best companie that was in all the whole world: for hee had twentie foure Giants, the most valiant that were in all the Armie, which onely had the charge of his person: for so had the Quene Oriselua commanded, feareful for her deere sonne: therewith went the flower of Cheualtrie, Claridiano, Claramante, and the faire Archisilora: there was also y balorous Zoulo, with the men of Wiglia, who went a great pace to recouer a hils side, which was of great importance for the battell. Good were these preparations, but fortune being against them, they serued to small purpose: for the enemy led her by the forelocke,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

locke : for the couragious Bembo, which led the vauntgard, seeing the Armes of Trapifonda, which were five Eagles in a field of silver, said to the Gallants which were with him, See, yonder is the Emperour Alphebus, of whom fame hath made so great report; here is the place where you are to shew your valour.

The mightie Crake came mounted vpon Cornerino his good horse, with his strong and rich Armour which hee had wonne; for in this battell hee meant to shew himselfe a Gallant. With him hee brought three companions, which did assure any hard aduventure: which were the valiant Dacian, the saye Rosamundi, with his Emperesse Claridiana, of whome the sonnes of the great Trian took charge: which were eight Giants, and they the most famous in all the armie.

The brave Lord of Achaia went a little apart from his people, in signe that first they desired so many against so many to breake their lances, to shew the valour of their persons. They went forth foure, and hee made the fifth: which were Brauorante, and Brusaldoro, with the saye Floralis, and her brother Don Celindo. Face to face stood they against the flower of Christendome: for the great Emperour, which had a great desire to proue himselfe against Bembo, addressed himselfe against him: and against the Scithian, the valorous Don Heleno: against Brusaldoro, Rosamundi: Floralis, and Claridiana charged together: and against her beloued brother, the prince of the Persians, the valorous Bransiniano.

Bembo his encounter was somewhat losse, for feare of misting, as hee desired: it was not such as hee had giuen. But he that receiued it, his force not auailing him, lost both his stirrups. The like happened to the valiant Brauorante with the waillike Don Heleno, who turning his Trian, returned against a contrarie partie, and Alphebus did the like. There was neuer scene a more cruell particular battell in a field, nor better fought: for as for foure of them, they

The fourth booke of the third Part

could each of them apart doe as much in the warres, as the angry god Mars himselfe. The threepast their carriere, amaying all the armie. Brasaldoro is more valiant; but the Ladies Armes supply her defect, and more too: for returning vpon him, she gaue him a knock, the best that euer was stricken in the warres: for by chaunce her sword lighted betweene his shield and his brest: she strake it from his arme, and loosened a great part of his haunt-brace: shee came vpon him with a thrust, and well shee felt that it set the bloud.

Neuer was Lion so furious, as was this Mauritanian against this Ladie: and although her Helme were most strong, yet it was not sufficient to keepe her from falling sencelesse vpon her saddle pummell, calling bloud out at her mouth.

All the rest of the Combats were reasonably deuided, but they were presently parted: for the furious Dacian with the noise of so huge a blow (by chaunce) looked backwards; and seeing his Rosamundi, to whom the Pagan was about to giue another blow, with two leapes off his Tirian hee was with him, and tooke him somewhat at vnwares. What shall I say of his blowes: they made him lay his head on the saddle pummell. When he ranne against him with his horse brest, which made him stagger, and like-ly (horse and man) to fall to the ground.

By this time was Rosamundi come againe to her selfe, and was glad to see her Dacian so nere her. The Combate could not continue, by reason that the two Armies ioyned with so great a noise, that it seemed that the last day was come.

Who is able to describe the sundry kindes of death, the mightie blowes, and the gallant attempts giuen and taken of either party that day: Some vnable to keepe themselves vp-right, tumbled to the ground, and before they could rise againe, death met with them: others which kept their saddles much better, with seeking meanes to hold them, lost their

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

their lues, and were glad that they were dead before they fell to ground: others were thus the whole, from side to side, and were nothing sorry for their wounds, but because they had no time to bee revenged: others were so impatient, that being close by their enemies, they had not so much trust in their swords, as in their fists, and with them maintained the warres, untill that death cut off all hope to see the triumph for the warre.

There were aboute twentie thousand dismounted, and the greatest part of them lost their lues. At the first charge, where Bembo went and his fierce companions, Gualtenor durst not tell what they did, but comparing them, he sayth, What a River breaking his bounds, and overflowing a corne field, both not so beate downe the corne, as they did tread men under their feet.

The Christians were so desirous of reuenge, that they would not suffer any place to bee boyd: for although they sawe that they met with their death; yet there was no bodie seene to refuse it, kill being in hand with the gallant Pagans, whose swords and Armour were dield in Crake blood.

No lesse harme did the valorous Alphebus with his mightie company; for he did so oppresse them, that he made them retire a great way out of the plaine.

On that side where the Duke of Thebes was, the Emperour of the Romanes charged, with the Prince of the Almaines, and the valorous Brundusio: who, desirous to meete with some of the Greeks, made the battels to soyne together with such a noyse, as if the skyes had fallen.

The mighty Epirabio took charge of the assaulting of the Citie: and so with all the instruments and engines requisite for such an exploit, with all the Assyrians & the power of the Parthians, they drew nere to the walls with many timber Castles; with which they thought to enter the great Citie. 3. clarions were sounded in the Castle of Venus, from whence

The fourth booke of the third Part

the Ladies beheld the cruel warre. All the Græke Wines knew what it meant. The Emperour Trebatius was very sorry, fearing some ill hap; for he saw all the troupes of Aiquea, in about sixty ranks, marching towards the fountaynes, to charge at their backs. He lifted up his eyes to heauen, saying, Into thy hands, O mightie God, I commit my cause, and the equitie of this persecuted Empire. He turned to Rosacler, saying, I doe beleue that this day will neuer be forgotten: I beseech the Lord to looke upon his people.

He offered to come to fight with the Mozes, but that was not their meaning; for they deferred it for a better occasion, but onely to crosse the fields to recover a hill, which was hard by the walles, where they meant to fortifie. It was wonderfull to see, for the Captaine Aristoldo had already taken it. A better commander the world neuer knew; and truly to haue gotten the hill, had bene continually ready to enter the Citie.

The discreet Captayne returned within the valley with all the Spaniards, and made such haste, that they tooke it beforehand. The Wagan brought much valliant people, and hee was so of his person; but he met with those which he thought not of, which were the flower of knighthood; no lesse then Uncle and Nephew, Claridiano, and Clarimante, with the faire Archilora. These were sufficient to fight with their whole armie. The Captaine of the Mozes came to an ill market, for he met with Lindabrides her lover, who smote him senselesse upon his saddle bowe: he was so quick with him, that before that he could recover himself, he laid him on the hard ground, with a knock with his axe. Hee would not trouble himselfe any longer with him, leaving him for dead; but withdrew himselfe some what from his companions for not to be troubled with his battel-axe, for therewith hee made more room. There was nothing better worth the seeing in all those warres. There was neuer any hired labourer in the countrey, which shewing the

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Chestnut tree, threw down more Chestnuts, then the sonne of Trebatius threw downe Knights with his terrible battell-axe. Sometimes with three blowes hee felled fire Knights: and sometime with a strong thrust hee pluckt Knights out of their saddles, filed upon his axe, as papers upon a thred. He neuer gaue blow, which made not the noble company to looke about, and wonder at the strength of his armes.

The unknowne Loner gaue good account of himselfe, for hee sought not out particular Knights, but the grimme Giants; among which hee rushed without any signe of feare. Their coming to the rescue, was to so great effect, that they made the Mores to retire out of the field to Bembo his Squadron, who by this time was within sight, for he had intelligence, that there was a supply of men landed in the port of Antona. He made halt, in hope to overcome; for he saw that by their halting going, his people gat the advantage of the field. Well did the strong Breton see, that for that he was on the left wing, where he plaide the deuil: as that ground was somewhat higher, those which took land might well possesse it; which ranging themselves into a strong Battalion, he saw tooke their way towards the field. Hee called the Prince of Argentaria, and sayd vnto him, Now is the time come, valorous Knight, to shew what hath bene hoped for at your hands: and therefore if you will be my conuoy, it behoueth me to passe by all these Tents, to goe to know what people that is which is newly arryued; for if they bee not enemy, we shall get the field. Doe herein, valorous Prince, sayd the noble Florisance, what shall please you, which to effect with the losse of my life, I shall be well content.

The valiant Rosabel (for he had no time to stay casting his shield at his backe, and in his hand his sword) gaue his horse the reynes, who, as swift as a thunderbolt, parted fro his Squadron towards the sea side. The Prince of Thar-
as had inough to doe to followe him, hee went with such

The fourth booke of the third Part

sure and swiftnesse. Both camps beheld him. The Grækes knew him by the blew scarfe which Liriana had given him. Some followed him, the first whereof were, Claramante, Claridiano, and the sayre Archisilora, because they saw that Aristoldo made all haste, getting ground vpon his enemy: for Epirabio being missing (whom soe hurt they had carried out of the battell) in a maner turning their backs, they made towards their campe, notwithstanding that the Spooyes in that place had the worst of the fight: in most places else, they cryed, Aidoe: for Bembo reinforcing his Squadron, had brought to his ayde a hundred thousand Assyrians; with which hee gaue so fierce a charge on the Squadron of the Thessalonians, that hee made them retire aboue a bow shot.

The Grækes were in better case on that side where Florisiano, with the gentle Polidolpho, with the people of Liara, Apulia, and Croatia had entred: they were somewhat of kinne, and soe for that cause they alwaies kept company. They were of opinion, that the Sargeant Gaior generall had reserved them and their people fresh, onely for that dayes service. They were very confident in their valour, & through that occasion they undertooke great enterprises, and fell on that side from whence Rosabel went; who with the strong Florisarte being to go crosse the tents, had put the in disorder. They came in good time, for the people of that countrey being but a fewe left, had retired to backe themselves with a little hill, whither came the two famous Captaines with all the horsemen, which gaue so sudden a charge vpon their enemies, as did greatly annoy them; but the best was to recover the ground which they had lost. They both did greatly encourage the people, shewing them what honour they wanne that day, seeing it might well be sayd, that they had restored Grecia, being almost lost.

These couragious speeches wrought such effect, that euerie one fought so; two: no man was asfraid of danger, so great was the hope of victory. All was but neede; for the Emperour

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Emperour of Rome did so busie the Duke of Thebes : and the Souldan of Egypt charged on the right wing, so as the Greekes had their hands full on euery side; for with the Souldan came mightie Giants.

Against this Squadron the brave Emperour Trebatius addrested himselfe, comparred about with the best men of all his armie : they two met, but the Greekes force was such, that excepting his sonnes, it was matchlesse : hee cut bare both man and horse to the ground. Many alighted after him, some to defend him, others to kill him, or take him prisoner.

Twelue Giants which were of his gard alighted from their Elephants to rescue him, which did much hurt. With all this as in a chase, there alighted the noble Emperour and Rosacer, with the Princes of France, and Zoulo the brave Tartarian, with Brandafidel and Bramidoro, and the gentle Therco. There was renned one of the most perrilous fights that had bene seene of all that day : for the Emperour making no reckoning of the Giants, rushed in amongst them, and at his entrie with a stabbe hee thrust their Captaine quite thorow the body, from side to side, who for his heyght was like to a well growne Pine tree.

The fierce Giant fell not, seeking before hee dyed to be reuenged : for hee swung his heauie club about his head, and therewith gaue the Emperour Trebatius such a blow athwart his shield, as made him goe staggering to one side, ready to fall, and hee had saue, the blow was so terrible, had not his valourous Nephew Clarindo bene by him, who held him vp with his hand.

The young mā made no stay there; for seeing what had hapened to his grandfather, casting his shield at his backe, he made at the Giant. Others were come to the aide, so as he was well reuenged : for Bramidoro with his heauie club, & the Prince with his sword smote him both at once : one of them made his eyes leay out of his scull, and the other with

The fourth booke of the third Part

his sword cleft his head. Rosacier turned to another which had smitten his Uncle, whom he made to lose his feeling.

This day did the young man winne his credit and eternall praise; for with a mighty blowe he cut him almost in two peeces. Much did the father reioyce to see the force of his sonne, who maintained a cruell fight against another Giant. This was no time to straine courtesie, for Brandafidel came, who with his hircous club knockt him on the pate: his Helmet could not protect him, for he stretcht him all along at the Princes fecte. The Greekes and Macedonians seeing their Emperoz, took herein so good order, that they wanne part of the Giants campe. There remained two to beare newes of the Greekes valour: and had there not come so much people, that the trampling of their horses was dangerous, they had without doubt taken the Souldan: but they mounted him againe vpon a swift courser, whercon he rode encouraging his people. The Califa of Sicenia kept him better company then he thought for, who seeing so much people there gathered together, brought twenty thousand men to the rescue. At their first coming they did some harme because they were flesh men, but it lasted but a while; for the Greekes, which by this time were already fleshed, made a cruell slaughter of them, supplying that heere, which was lost in the rest of the battels; for the Fenician Prince, Don Argante, although vnknowne, came afresh with all the Medians, and for that cause where he entred he made a deadly butcherie.

This was no day for the Greekes, for even the Sunne was against them: for falling downe in the West, he bereaved them of their sight; so as the enemies might easilie charge and retire at libertie. The Prince of Britany could not sally on that side where he was, but that he chanced to see the furious young man with the stars, who, desirous to end the war with him, seeing that his people had y^e better in the fight: he wēt along y^e side of a hill, which he could not do, but Bebo would see it, who with y^e other 2. famous knights
went

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

went to seeke him, leauing the charge of his gouernement with the warlike Celindo, who seeing himselfe in such authoritie, began also to encourage his people, and with as good order as Bembo himselfe could haue done. What happened to these which so went out of the Campe, is fit to bee told in another Chapter.

CHAP. XIX.

How the Prince Poliphebus of Tinacria came to the Campe, and what hee did for the libertie of the Flemmish knight, with the comming of the Princes of Silepsia, Leobullo, and Claribel, and what with them happened to the Princes of Grecia.



Valorous dames, if to bee engulfed in the actions of bloudy Mars, bee an occasion to leaue to treat of louing matters, at the least, I cannot leane to acknowledge the much which your Soueraigne worthinesse deserueth. I speake it, for that hauing one day detained mine eyes from beholding this intricate historie, keeping continually my Chamber, I chanced to look forth, and saw my death and life both together. Death, because y there is no remedie, for the euill which I then receiued. Life also, which is to see my selfe wholly wel employed, without ennie of a more happie lover (although he liue daintily) for although they loue me not, neither doth my Rate deserue it, yet for mee to loue, it is a sweete life that I conceiue therein.

Being confident in my new wound (although it bee in my old soule) I presume to begin to make relation of the most famous warre that ever was scene, of so many against so many: for Rosabel had scarcely parted from among his friends, and enemies, when descending downe the side of

The fourth booke of the third Part.

a hill which led to wards the Strand, he saw come that way, a Knight, (to his seeming) of a goodly proportion, in company of foure Ladies.

This was the valiant Poliphebus, who hauing landed, and hearing the noyse of the battel, in great haste came nere vnto it, but durst not disclose his meaning, because he would not grieve the Ladies. The two nymphes of the Castle being standing the matter, one of the said vnto him, O, you may well, valorous Prince, without caring for vs, goe to succour your father, for it is not a little needfull: for if it were not so nere night, the whole house of Grecia would be nere ouerthrowne, considering the aboundance of enemies that are against it: so know, that this Ladies Aunt, who is held for the wisest woman in all the vniuersal world, for she was taught out of Medea's bookes, and in the same signe commanded be, that in this battel, and the challenge whch you are to make, we should haue especial care of your person, for considering with what knight you are to fight, you would lightly bee brought into danger, if shee did no meane to the contrary: but shee being of your side, you may boldly and merrily attempt any enterprise, bee it neuer so difficult, and shall preuaile. The Prince was verie glad of these words, which the Nymphes had told him: & so willing him to goe before, for they would come to behold, he embraced the m, & took his leave of the Ladies not without griefe: for the one he loved, as his sister, and the other as his loue, & the greatest in all Cupids band. He pluckt downe his Beauer, & with his Launce in his hand, hee marched away like Mars, and came downe into the valley, hee did not bow the graffe where his horse went, hee flew so swift with the enameled gallant. It was a luckie coming for the Frenchman, who was taken prisoner and sore wounded, whome three most strong Giants and foure Knights carried away to wards their Campe, to goe in the more securitie. Both princes saw them, but the Timacrian, like an Aspicque in Italie, was the first that came, for knowing the Knight which was

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

was prisoner, by his armes ful of flowers de Luce, he held him for a man of worth, and of the Craike partie. He would aske no questions, but rather charging his Launce, assailed the Giants, who held him for a mad-man: one of the opposed himselfe against him, who with his life paid for the young mans displeasure: for in meeting him, before that y^e Launce brake, hee passed it a third part thow his backe, and like a Lion, returned against the rest of the rascals. foure times he hurled about his strong sword, where with hee dispatched the foure Knights, remaining alone in the field, with the two fierce Giants, where, D'valozons Ladie, newly mistrisse of his soule, who can depaint this combat, in such sort as you may take pleasure therein: He which carried the valiant Frenchman prisoner, was constrained to set him downe upon the hard ground, and with his Club, to turne against the sonne of Trebatiu, who making a hard rocke of his rich and sure shield, attended the blow, bearing his sword aloft; and seeing that the blow came, hee spurring his Rulicane, came so nere the Giant, that hee made him lose his blow. Luzelaes louer came with a good will, for with a thrust he hit him on the middle of the brest, & came with such force, that it past halfe thow at one side: his armour was so thick, that he scarce hurt him. His other companion came with a great Cemiter in his hand, hee staid for his coming, but before that he could make any resistance, he smote him vpon the rich Helmet, and made him see al the least stars in the skie, and the blood in great aboundance to gush out at his mouth: had it not bene Poliphebus which fought this battel, without al doubt they had overcome him: for the two Giants were the best in all the Camp, & therfore Bembo had recommended vnto the keeping of y^e good Frenchman, but they met with the sonne of Garrofilea, who more fierce then a Basiliske, againe rusht in between them, & from him who had so handled him, on a suddain he smote his shield to the ground, with the greatest part of his arme. The young mas fury rested not here, seeing y^e he came nere to the knight, who also saw him, not

The fourth booke of the third Part

knowing whether he were his friend, although that (indeed) hee was the greatest that hee had in the world, he would not meete him in this hurly burly with y^e Giants: for turning to the second, he smote him vpon the Helmet, and left his head all vnarmee, and therein a great wound. By that time came his lame enemye, who seeing himselfe without one arme, lifted by his crooked Faulchion, but it was to final purpose, for his wound tooke away the greatest part of his strength: With a leape he cleared himselfe from him, and fast as Rosabel came, with his sword in both his hands hee smote him vpon the top of the shoulder; there was no defence in the hard Steele: for hee strake away all that quarter, throwing him to the ground dead at his horse foete. Hee had so fatned himselfe therewith, that he gaue opportunitie to the other (being in despaire of his life) to giue him a blow, yea, he smote him a full one, and strake him downe vpon his horse necke, past all feeling, senselesse: and so hee continued a great while, giuing place to the Dagan to second it with another: and had not Rosabel come in time to hinder it, hee had stricken him againe.

The furious Byeston returned, and smote the Moze on the side of the shield, the one halfe he flung away, with great part of his Mant-brace, leaving him sore hurt. By this time was Garrosileas sonne come againe to himselfe, who seeing the Greeke so nære him, hee presently knew him, and was wonderfully glad to see him in that place, but he would not that he should end the warre: for giuing his Spurres to his strong horse (for there were few such, and for such did the wizard giue it vnto him) and ioyning with the Dagan, (desirous to giue his Cousin to vnderstand, that he was no lesse then himselfe) with both his hands hee smote him vpon the vnarmee head: and as he hit him on the skull, so hee cleft him downe to the brest: and then (as though hee had done nothing) wipping his victorious sword, he went to his Cousin Rosabel, saying, I would gladly know, Sir Knight, of whether of these two Camps you are: for if you bee of the
Greekes,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Grækes, my mortall enemies, I shall bee enforced to become ingratefull for that which for mee you haue done, by challenging you the combat, hauing farre better confidence in the equitie of my cause, then in my owne valour. In vnderstanding this, worthy Knight (in denying my selfe to be a Græke) I might auoide the combat. But because that you shall vnderstand that you come ill enforced, let our fight begin presently, and in what maner you will, whereby you shall vnderstand, that the equitie of our cause will giue vs the victorie. Your personage, valorous Rosabel, is worthy of all the triumphes in the world: and putting off his Helmet, he went to embrace him, saying,

Tell me, did you thinke, Sir Knight, that I would not haue come into your Countrie to see you, you hauing offended a Lady in Silepsia, such as is Eufrosia, by whome I am commaunded to challenge you the single combat: The young man coulde giue him no answer for toy. Sometime Madam, a suddaine ioy bereaueth me of my senses, especially, when it commeth vnilooked for: but that qualme being past, embracing him againe, he said, I did assure my selfe, valorous Prince, and my Lord, that considering how much need Græce hath of your aide, you would remember it: let vs bee gone, to acquaint the noble Emperour your Father herewith. That may not bee yet (answered the valorous young man) but it behoueth rather to conceale my name, for the loue of certaine Ladies which come in my company, whome I haue promised, to maintaine their beautie in the middest betwene these two Campes, against the Forces: so against the Grækes who shall dare, although it were Mars him selfe, Rosabel being of their side: Seeing that you so please (answered the nephew) there is no man that will gainsay your will: but first I would that we might to day before the Sunne goe downe, let them know what your arme can doe: and it cometh well to passe, for I come now out of the battell, to see what people this is which here cometh. I haue bene somewhat more neere

The fourth booke of the third Part

unto them (answered the Tinacrian) and me thinketh that they beare the armes of Greece. But I would not that wee should stay a ioat longer: and so presently they toke the direct way towards the place, where they saw these troupes, which were those which came from Tinacria, vnder the command of the great Earle of Modica. In drawing somewhat nare, the young man knew his owne armes, which were on the one of the Greeke armes: hee bare in blew the seven Starrs in Gold: he was glad in his soule, that his mother had partly forgotten the displeasure, which she conceived against his father.

Rosabel, to bee brieffe, seeing the alarum giuen towards S. Michaels Casle, gaue them to vnderstand thereof: the Tinacrians were exceeding glad for the meeting their prince, of whome they had heard, what a man hee was, and of his great valour: the Prince would not discover himselfe to them, untill that hee had perfozmed his challenge. Rosabel presently drew them into the forme of an Hearle, and with the swiftest pace that they were able, they toke their way towards the Campe: they came euen when the Sunne had ended his iournie, giuing a beginning to a new. Some of the Greeke Battallions were in a confusion, ready to flie: they lookt where was most need, which was where the Croacians fought, although that in the beginning they had done great hurt. But the greatest part of the Sophis people, with their Prince Thorliano, charged into that quarter, making them (notwithstanding that they fought like Lions) to retire from the field. But the Tinacrians which were better earnest, did so reinfozce them, that had it not bin so nere night, they had pacified the fight: But it was favourable vnto them, although that it lasted not aboue an houre: for therein did the Tinacrians make knowne what a Captaine he was, which led them, for hee & his sonne Partenio did beare themselves so couragiously, that they won therewith Poliphebus good will. What which they did, stood them in no small stead, for it aduanced their house, euen to the clouds, & to be the most principall

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

itfall in all that kingdome. All was nothing in comparison
 to that which the young man did: for seeing his fathers par-
 tie to goe to bracke, there was neuer Power that with
 his Withe did cut downe Coyne so fast in harness, as he with
 his sword in both his hāds did fel down those infidels, which
 were not accustomed to overcome. At his first coming, hee
 encountered with the gentle Thorisiano, who seeing y^e slaugh-
 ter that that knight made of his people, called for a Launce
 and went towards him. The yong mā suspected him not, he
 was so buisie; and his aduersarie was not a man that would
 greatly straine courtesie: for if his armour had not been good,
 he had riuen him thorow from side to side: he cast him so far
 backe vpon his Saddle, that hee knockt his head vpon his
 hōyle buttockes. There was neuer any Wiper troden vpon,
 that was so angrie as Luzelaes louer: for coming to him-
 selfe, & setting himselfe in his Saddle, with his verie lokes
 he made aboue foure of y^e most proudest afraid: for being srt
 in his Saddle, & his fete in the stirrops, spurring his Ku-
 bican, with a leape he was with him, & with both his hands
 he smote him on y^e shield, & (had not such hands tempered it)
 he had cleft it: for hee beat it close to his Helmet with such
 force, that hauing wholly lost his senses, he cast out the bloud
 out at his mouth, and set him on the arse of the Saddle: he
 had seconded it with another, & that had bene his death, for
 the sonne of Garrofilea was now impatient, and bring so,
 none of his byethzen excelled him: being angrie he was cru-
 ell, which was sone past, which did much aduance his fame.
 Thorisiano had many Giants for his gard, which although
 that his father knew him not, yet he loued him dearly, com-
 manding the to haue regard of his person: & so one of the (be-
 ing little lesse then a great Birch tree, mounted vpon a furio-
 us horse, such a one as was fit to carrie such a personage)
 met with the Timacrians horse, who if he had not bene giuen
 him by y^e wise woman, they had both fallen to the ground, for
 he had not his equal. With a faire shock they staid, & his pre-
 sumption cost him his life; for in field battels courtesies are.

The fourth booke of the third Part

not obserued: for Rosabel being nere his Ankle, with Hectors swoord ended that warre: for hitting him vpon the shoulder, hee cleft his armour and bodie to the hollow of his heart. His companion would reuenge his death, & charged amongst them, as amongst ordinary knights. But see, hither came the famous Earle of Modica and his sennie, who leauing the Gard of the Standard, came hither to their aide, as though they had knowne of the meeting: if Gualtenor may be beleued, hee was one, that afterwards was verie famous in Grecia, who comming with great power, equall to his discretion, hee rushed into the midst of those Barbarians. The good Knight Flamineo held them good company. Being couetous of fame, these thre entred, as though they had gone a hunting: by their blowes they purchased fame, for the Tinacrians, (now Sycilians) at the first charge, ouerthrew two of those Giants. The Frenchman was so cholericke, who seeking reuenge, was so slow, that hee was like to haue bene lost: for a Giant being nere him, cast his armes about his necke, with such force, that within a little he pluckt him out of his Saddle. The Frenchman was nimble, and so drawing out his dagger, he suffered the Giant to beare him, who feeling his weaknesse, drew him from the Saddle: but hee put in practise what he had determined, for hee suddainly had two or thre times stabd his dagger vnder his taces into his belly, fetching his soule out at the wound.

They fell both to the ground, where Flamineo, obtaining the victorie, began to defend himselfe, but it had bene to small purpose, had not the Tinacrian bene there, who turning about his furious horse, made way to enter where the Frenchman was: hee tooke him by the arme, and as if hee had bene a child, he set him vpon the Giants horse; all men wondering at the valiancie of that Knight; which sufficed to giue meanes to Florisiano, and Poliphebus, to recouer what they had lost. They aduertised Don Celindo of what passed, who with the Asirian, & his sister, made thither wards.

Here

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Here was the greatest presse of people that was in any place of all that day; for both squadrons comming to meet vpon a little playne, and seeing the great hurly burly, there were few of any account which came not thither. The first that came thither, was the valorous Don Celindo with his company: hee encountred Rosabel, and made a good encounter, although he lost both his stirrups. Rosabels courser was so well trayned, that at two leapes he was with his aduersarie, and by that meanes he smote him befoze he was in a readinesse, and had wholly ouerturned him, had not Clarisel come running in, who well leated in his saddle, charging his Launce aboute hand, hee darted it at the vallant Breton: the Armour which he wore, was not such, but that it could well resist that blow, so that the Launce being vnable to pierce it, rebounded backe againe whole. The valorous Damsell gathered it vp, and therewith went towards him whom she loued better then her owne soule: it was Luzelaes louer, as hath already bene sayd. Floralisa, ever since that she saw his picture in the wood where she was byrd vp, yelded her soule to him, confirming the same, when hee went out of Grecia, admitting him for her Knight, which he thought not of.

This Ladie was Mars in Armes, and Venus in beautie: shee brandished her Launce with such force and dexteritie, that I knowe not, but that if hee which recsnyed it had knowne her, hee would haue taken it for especiall fauour. When hee hit him right in the brest, the most enamored that the world knew, and brake it with the blowe, and made the place to bend on one side: who againe settling himselfe, knew her to bee the same which had done him so exceeding fauours. He would not take any reuenge on her. But the warlike Ladie not knowing who he was, turned her horse, and with Camillaes sword in her hand, she drew neere vnto him whom she most loued.

Here appeared the valour of the mightie Tinacrian; who comming close vnto her, befoze she could deliuer her blow,

The fourth booke of the third Part

tooke her so fast by the arme, as if she had bene bound with a great cable, and in sight of all the armie, saying, Upon him who is lesse desirous to doe you service then I, warlike Ladie, you may execute your wrath, and not against him who is so much and so long time yours, and will be untill I die. He spake it so suddenly, that she knew not who he was: and yet seeing him come with Armes differing from the Grækes, and that he came with new supplie, she presently suspected that it was the gentle Polphebus, & was glad at her heart: for it is an easie matter to perswade any one that hopeth, and feruently loueth, to belecue any thing that they would haue, and sayd, I thought, valorous warriour, that my wounds were receyued for fauours: but seeing that in you there wanteth this acknowledgement, I will leaue the for those which will take them for such. The youngster let her goe, which was to make her the more to yeeld: and seeing the contrarie partie begin to presse forwarde, and because that she would not stay behind; other wise she had a new salue in loue againe. Thus proceeded the battell, when the braue knight with the stars, vpon a high rocke beheld him in the blew scarfe looking wonders: for Florisarte was now come, who knowing of the battell, was sent by Rosabel from the Citie. As an Eagle came this warlike young man downe the hill: and in despite of the Christians, crossing athwart their campe, hee came where those Ioyntes were. He trode vnder feete all he met in his way, and came in such fury, that he would haue made small account of Mars: yet the Princes of Babylon and Argentaria made head against him, but he cared for none of them, after he had seene y^e young man: at his comming he smote Lisarte his sonne in the middle of the shield, and encountred him with his head and brest in such sort, that hee made him lay his head on his horses crooke, and with another hee had overthrowne him, had not Bransimiano bene there, who with all his might gaue a happie blow for the Prince of Charlis: for at what time as the young man lifted vp his

finis.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood,

sword, the Persian spurring his horse, gat within him, and
 gaue him so great a blowe crosse the Helmet, as made him
 to lose his, and going from him, left him almost past re-
 bance: The Prince of Apulia which was hard by, gaue
 him a third. They gaue him so much to doe, that they made
 him more manifestly to shew the valour of his person: for
 seeing that three had set vpon him, he turned against them
 all, and put them so much to their shifts, that hee put them
 all out of breath. He charged & retired as quicke as thought,
 and sometimes it was impossible any way to hit him, hee
 was so light. Don Celindo had vnderstood that Polphe-
 bus had griened his sister, and therefore with his sword
 (which was Queene Iulias) hee made towards the Tina-
 crian. At that very instant came the famous Rosacier, who
 being neere, of force could not chuse, but know his owne
 good sword: a man cannot declare the contentment which
 he conceaued in seeing it: for he could no longer forbear,
 but sayd, Away, away: for this fight belongeth vnto mee.
 He came where the Prince was, who refusing him not, the
 battell began. The Tinacrian at his coming knew him
 by his device, and therefore withdrew, addressing his blow
 against the magnanimous Lindauro, who to his owne hurt
 was returned to the battell: for the blow which Polphebus
 gaue him, was like to haue cost him his life, who within a
 little had stretcht him all along at his horses heeles. All the
 soldiers (for not to be benighted) withdrew, to giue place to
 Don Celindo, who now more couragious then euer char-
 ged the Græke: both together they gaue 2. mighty blowes,
 which brought their noses to their bosoms. The night ap-
 proch would not suffer them to giue the second, which made
 both armies to sound & retreat, for feare to kill one another
 his friend unknown. The Pagans were victorious, & here-
 of they made good shew with their ordinarie instruments.
 On eyther side died so many, that they were innumerable:
 and yet for all this, neyther in the Citie, nor in the campe
 was heard any complaining; for those which remained,

The fourth booke of the third Part

were mightily grieved, untill they might see the holme wherein they might either die, or be reneged. For the hurt men the Duke of Thebes tooke especiall care, who was a most expert Captaine.

This was that which hee with the starres desired; who leaving the battell, came to Rosacler, to whom with a gallant grace he sayd, I would haue bene very glad, Knight, that you and I with some other whom you please, might haue gone and ended the battell that other day, for I much desire it.

Let it be as it shall please you (answered the noble Breton, who desired the same no lesse then he) and leade you the way, and I will follow. The nereſt at hand was Don Clarifel which kept him company: with the Greeke was the Tinacrian, who left word, if any body asked for him, they ſhould ſay hee was gone about a little buſineſſe, and would come againe ſtraight.

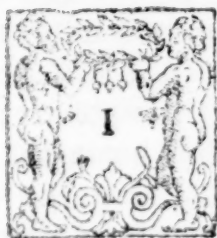
The Princes in withdrawing them, found ſome wanting; the errand was left with Zoilo the Tartarian, who pacified his Lady and the reſt: they were much better pleaſed, when they underſtood that Claridiano, Claramante, and the fayre Archiſilora were alſo miſſing, thinking that they were all together.

The night was wholly ſhut in, when the brave Don Heleno and his beloved Lady, with the Captaine generall, and Brandafidel, and Tireſeo went forth of the Citie: and within a little while after, the moſt part of the Princes went forth alſo, and likewiſe out of the campe, to ſeek for their Gallants which were miſſing. What happened unto them, ſhalbe declared in another Chapter, becauſe (O ſpittelle of my heart) I would not be noted to be tedious.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

CHAP. XX.

What happened to the Knight with the starers, and to Rosabel in the combat: and the end thereof.



I cannot (O Ladie of my life) leaue to acknowledge what pains I indure; for Loue hath made mee seruently enamoured, and subiect to his swete yoke: yet I cannot haue time to treat of loue matters (a thing so pleasing to my life) but all of furious Mars; to whom (although I haue bene affected) yet now a strickt account is called for of the time spent with him, which might haue bene for loue. What good thing hath there euer bene without it? Who euer liued a merry life, if hee spent it not in loue? The imagination of field battels hath ouerwhelmed me, other wise, no man should haue made more manifest shewes of his loue in writing, then I: but notwithstanding my desire, I am to follow those Princes which are gone forth of the campe.

He with the stars had no great experience in the warres, and much lesse knew the countrey, for both which his few yeeres might excuse him; for yet hee was not fully sixteene yeeres old, and yet he gaue all the flower of Grace matter to thinke on. At last they came to a fit place for the battell, although somewhat farre from the Citie and the campe. Without speaking one word, these two warriors turned their horses and parted, to returne the one against the other. Oh that my Distresse would allow herselfe to be beloued, which would giue me meanes to depaint this warre, which was the most bloody, being betwene so many against so many, that happened in all those warres! it were a sweet pensill for mee to vnderstand, that shee took pleasure to be

The fourth booke of the third Part

adored; yet perswading my selfe that I am beloved, I will
goe forwarde, because they came together with greater fu-
ry then the sea, when being most swolne, it threatneth the
heauens, putting the ships in great danger. Neither of them
mist in the encounter, breaking their launces as if they had
bene reeds. They past the one by the other with Mars his
countenance. Irgandco saith, that he with the starres lost
one stirrop, but it was not perceiued. The Briton had a
better horse then those which draw the Sun, a reasō why he
was with him before the yong man could turne about, he
strake downe right. Achilles neuer strake better blow: for
as it was Hectors sword, it did cut away halfe of his shield:
for Lupertius his enchaſment was not of that antiquity as
the sword: he beat it to his helmet with greater force then
can be imagined, & made him bow downe his head as low
as the horses crooper, and gaue him a terrible stab: within
little he had indangered him, for it lighted nere y^e ioynting
of his vant-brace. He would needs close with him, which
was to his owne hurt: for the yong man like a fished Lion,
with a leap was on one side of him, the Greake passing by
with his courser, as quick as thought. He with the starres
followed him in hope of reuenge: fortune put that into his
hands which he desired: for Oliuias son returning, he smote
him at ease vpon y^e highest of his helmet: the sword rebound-
ed as if he had smitten a rock. The yong man was nothing
glad of y^e, yet he gaue him another, which smote the Briton
downe vpon his horse neck, casting out bloud at his mouth,
nostrils, & eares. The furious Timacrian his bloud did freeze
to see such a blow: at length coming againe to himselfe, &
in state to seeke reuenge, thinking y^e he returned against his
companiō, he came to y^e Assyrian, saying, Sir Knight, there
is no reason y^e our friends should be in such dāger, & we stand
and looke on. The same did the other desire: but the sonne of
Garrofilea is secōd to none in valour, & was euery way too
hard for him: they encountred with as great noyse, as if two
rocks had met. The Assyrian lost both his stirrops & reines.

Luzelace

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Luzelaes louer pass forwarde, esteeming him highly for the good encounter which he had receiued, & took more pleasure the any man, to see warlike Knights, & desired to try himselfe withall, although y^e when he saw he had y^e advantage, he presently came to a peace; a thing which few men will do. The Assylian was more enamoured then Loue himselfe, & was of opinion, y^e bearing so high thoughts as he did, it were a great basenes for him to be ouercome bearing Miloes Armes. He returned against the Greeks, & smote him vpon the helmet, which made him hold his head more at one side the he would, and busied him so, y^e he had meanes to giue him another, no lesse then y^e first. He receiued it on his shield, which was driuen back to his best & rich helmet: it seemed to y^e new leuer y^e a rock had fallne vpon him, the blow was so mighty. There is no serpent in y^e sands of Libya, so furious as was the Tinacrian: but before he could be prouided, the Assylian was with him with a strong thrust, and made him to bend backe vpon his saddle. Here choler moued to the highest degree in the sonne of Trebatius; for now hee would not haue giuen place to Mars, but with him he would that the battell had bene; there was no defence against his blowes, but that he cut his Armour, notwithstanding the fine temper: at the first blow, he smote the Assylian downe vpon his horse neck senselesse, casting bloud: now he assured himselfe of the victorie: for although that hee with the Garres would haue holpen him, hee could not: for Rosabel with his flyer was come, and his other valiant vnckle with his Rubicane, and trusting in his swiftnesse, he set vpon the young man, belabouring him with the best Armes that the earth knew, pulling him out of his saddle: but hee came to himselfe before he fell to the ground. Don Clarisel was nimble; for drawing his dagger, his fortune was so good, that hee stabd him in the closing of his best-plate, and but that it cross in the enirring, hee had wounded him deadly: but this serued him to no small purpose: for it made the Tinacrian to let him goe, and fall downe vpon his feete: it was a prodigious thing,

The fourth booke of the third Part

thing, to see the Rubicane in the battell, for hee forbare no footeman; and so the Assyrian was not fully at the ground, when hee ran vpon him and gaue him a shrewd fall. The Tinacrian neuer perceiued that in his horse before, and was sorry for it in his soule; for hee would not overcome him with any aduantage: and lightly leaping from him, he sayd, Pardon, Sir Knight, for it was not in my power; for I desire not to fight with any man with aduantage either of horse or Armes. The Assyrian was so furious, that he made him no answer; but with his sword in both his hands hee set vpon him. On foot no man excelled the Tinacrian, for he was an Eagle: he suffered him to appoche: but before he could strike him, hee shifted him to one side, & made him lose his blow: which being past, he gaue him such a knocke vpon the Helmet, that he made him set his hands to the ground, and would haue closed with him, but it was too late: for the angry young man was againe on foot, & very nimblely made a famous assault; for he gaue Garrosiliaes sonne two strong thrusts one after another, which made him goe backwards, somewhat out of breath, which gaue occasion to the young man with a wheeling about to lay him at his foete, and within a little had hought him, one leg tormenting him. The Tinacrian felt the blow, but would not shew the effect which it wrought: for hee charged his enemy vpon one leg, vntill the great payne was past: rare valour in a Knight, for the want of his leg was not perceiued: for with a leap, although but vpon one leg, he came home to the Assyrian: there was no defence against his arme: for hitting him vpon one side of the shield, he smote him so hard, as made him set his knees to the ground: he entred & shouldered him, & threw him downe vpon his backe: he knaled downe vpon him with his dagger in his hand. Floralsiaes louer was in dout of his life, & this made him draw strength out of weaknes, setting both his hands vpon Poliphebus his arme, & held him so, that the yong mans choler could go no further: the Knight with the Mars was sorry to see his companions ill hap, & as angry

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

as a Serpent, hee leapt from his horse to goe to helpe him. Rosabel did the like, but the unknowne youth came first. The Tinacrian saw him coming, & because he would giue no occasion of any ill successe, he stood by, taking his good sword. The Starred Knight came blind for ioy y^e he came in time, whereby Poliphebus had meanes to giue him a cruell blow; for as he had neuer a shield, so hee gaue him a great flath in the brest. Now was the Assyrian on sofe, who seeing Rosabel come running, he gaue him a thrust, but hee neuer boasted of it; for Lirianaes louer, with a blow backwards, made him to fall on his face to the ground: the noyse of this battell was so great, that all the hils and vallies rung thereof. The mone shined bright, which gaue light to three Knights which sate on the hils side to see all this battell; they were no worse men, then the Princes of Silepsia, Leobello, and Claribel, which came with the Knight, which found them newly bozne, as hath bene befoze declared: hee was one of the chiefest in that Realme, and brought some troups to the aide of his King, which hee had sent vnder the command of his Lieutenant to the Campe; and hee with his two sonnes (for so he called them) went by that mountain. By reason of the noyse of the battell, they came downe from thence in great haste, and came iust at the time that the Grækes had the better: for Rosabel had wel-nare overcome the Prince of y^e Assyrians: and Poliphebus, desirous to make the Knight with the Starres, to know that hee was the glorie of armes, hastned so the battell, that he had already made him breathlesse.

The Silepsian nouices wondred, who putting themselves in the midst betwene the foure Princes, said, In courtlesie (valorous Knights) tell vs the cause of your cruell fighting; for me thinketh, that the aide, which either of you might giue to your party, should be no smal matter: why wil you then end it thus alone? It is no other thing, Knights, answered the beloued Father, but that these Knights maintain the quarrel of the Souldan of Aiquea; and that which

The fourth booke of the third Part

We could not performe in the last battell, wee haue left for this present: and therefore stand out, for this battell is to be ended. Let vs intreate you gentle Knight, (answered the Princes) to giue it ouer untill to morrow, because we then may the better enjoy the sight of your fortitude. To content the Princes, they all consented, whose beautie and comelynesse made them to admire. They all seuen sat downe vnder a greene Olive tree, and taking off their Helmes to take breath, it was a marueilous thing to see, when the one came to behold the other: for if there were beautie in the world, thither it was withdrawne. Rosabel was not yet thirtie yeeres old, neither had his trauels altered his complexion, for hee was the Phoenix of his time: for Poliphebus, all the sages agree that he was exceeding faire. He with the Starres, and the two young men were but children: for the eldest was not yet fiftene yeeres old, but so faire, that they contended for beautie with the heavenly inhabitants. The two Princes of Silepsia were so like vnto Poliphebus, that their father did maruaile thereat, and seeing so much beautie met together in them three, that for complexions and armes, they were the flower of the world.

The two youtnes came with a desire to receiue the order of knighthood, at the hands of the Captaine generall of the Pagans armie, whose name reached to the starres: but having scene the valiancie of these foure knights, the elder of these youtnes, whose name was Claribel, directing his pace towards Rosabel, whome according to the constellation of his Passitie, hee was inclined to loue, said, Valorous Knight, my brother and I are desirous to receiue the order of knighthood, at the hands of some worthy man of warre, which desire hath forced vs to come from farre Countries with our father, to haue receiued it of the King of Achaea, whose worthines fame hath spread ouer the earth. But having scene what you haue shewen in this battell, we both intreate you, that (although we haue not deserved it) yet wee may receiue it at your hand. The Prince did so affect th

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

two youths, that he was glad in his soule, that occasion was offered to doe them any pleasure, yet hee would not bereane Bembo of that which hee deserved, saying vnto them, The heauens defend it, that seeing that you may receiue it at the hands of so worthe a Knight, as is that Prince whom you haue named, that you should receiue it of me, to whom fortune hath not bin so fauourable. This knowledge, valorous Knight, sufficeth (answered Leobello, which was the younger of these Princes) to assure my brother & me, that it remaining in your hands, there may happen vnto vs some rest of good fortune, and so wee beseech you to graunt that which my brother hath requested. I would be verie glad (answered Lirianaes lower, and Father to these youths) that this act might be performed with the solemnitie, which your worth deserueth, and not that I doing it, should wrong these Princes. Why then, we wil come to a composition (said the supposed father to these yong princes) that this knight with the stars, shall giue the order to one of my sonnes, and you, to the other; and this doing, both they, & I, shall be bound to doe you service all the daies of our life. Quoth Poliphebus, It is very fit, that they receiue it from so worthe a knight, as is he with the stars. And so Claribel knelt downe before his father, who kiss his faire cheeke, with as great affection, as if he had knowne him. He put on his Helm, & pulled down the Beauer, and with his sword he smote him on the shoulder, saying, Arise, valorous Knight, & from henceforth thou to the world, the vertue which your good countenance & faire resemblance affueth: the like did y^e vnknewen Knight with the stars: and Leobello lost nothing by receiuing the sword at his hands: for he might wel say, that hee receiued it of the most valiant Knight that was knowen in the world, in that age. With pleasing conuersation, they past the rest of y^e night, in the which the two nouices learned the cause of all those wars: & as the careful Titan sent his messengers to declare his coming, the 4. challengers arose to giue end to y^e battell: Claribel buckled on his father Helmet, & Leobello his with the stars, Poliphebus, which had lesse hope the y^e rest, buckled

The fourth booke of the third Part

on his Helmet himselſe, deſirous to ſhew the worth of his perſon. With angrie countenances they came, the one towards the other. I believe, to haue a ſight of this cruel war, made Apollo to haſten his iournie: for iuſt as they encountered, hee ſhewed his golden face, with ſhining Garlands out of the Eaſt. Well did the one know the other, being aſſured of the valour which either had ſhewen to the other: particularly Roſabel, who addreſſed himſelſe againſt him with the Starres: and for this cauſe they fought with diſcretion, and would not through want thereof, loſe that which otherwiſe they might bee aſſured of. Being well in breath, they charged, with the points of their ſwords about a third part before their Targets, ſtanding firmly vpon their right ſete, ſo nare together, that they might ſtrike with their pummels.

He with the Stars would haue ioyned with the Prince of Britaine, thinking ſuddainly to haue ouerborne him: but as the other was more nimble, and expert in the warres, then he; ſo he changed his ſete with a thought, and thruſt at him, and with a quicke ſkip he leapt back wards, giuing him in parting a blow in the thigh, whoſe blood bare witneſſe of the blow. Here was loſt all order in fighting, for the young man ſeing this blow, hurling about his ſword, thought to haue cleſt the Briton, but he warded it with his Target, which was a ſmall defence: for though he could not breake it, yet hee beat it to his Helmet, ſo cloſe, and with ſuch force, that hee made him to kneele vpon both his knees on the ground: hee thought to haue ouerborne him, ſetting his hands to his breſt; but it ſeemed that hee met with a rocke. For the nephew of the great Trebatius, ſeing him ſo nare vnto him, that hee could doe nothing but cloſe with him, tooke him at ſome aduantage, and within little threw him to the ground: for hee liſted him from ground, and carried him a little along the field. Hee with the Starres was mightily aſhamed, that hee had receiued the firſt ſople, and that in ſtrugling: for therein he thought to haue bene too hard

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

hard for Anteus: and locking with the gentle young man, enraged, he tooke footing, thinking againe to recover what hee had lost: but that was more then hee could doe: for letting goe their hold, with a strong wheeling about they tooke their weapons. The sonne of Trebatius seemed to be most couragious, and so was he with the starrez, which made the battell doubtfull.

It was more apparant betwene Poliphebus, and Don Clarifel: for there the aduantage was easily to be seene. The Assyrian with a blowe would haue made an end of the battel, and so with his sword in both his hands, hee made towards the Tinacrian, who made shew to stay for him: but knowing the ill successe of such desperate blowes, at the falling of the blow, with a light leap he set himselfe 2. fadome off from him: he so followed his blow, that it made him to fall on his brest vpon the pummell of Milo his good sword, wherof he brake a third part into the ground. The Tinacrian lost not that good occasion, who turning to toyne with him, with his hand he thrust him and made him to returne backe, leauing his sword sticking in the ground, breaking the little chayne. The victorie was in his hands, had not the sayre Leobello with his sword in his hand come betwene them, doubting of the Assyrians life, seeing he had lost his sword. Succour came to cyther part; for of the Grekes (which better knew the countrey) there came the Princes of Hungarie and Bohemia, and with them those of Fraunce and Spayne, which by the Armes knew the knight to whose ayd they came, whose valour was much esteemed among the Grekes: they cried to the two youths that they should hold, thinking that they would haue stricken him.

The braue Spanyard came in such haste, that hee met with Leobello: but hee might as well haue encountred a rocke, hee stood so fast, hee made his horse returne 2. paces backwardes. Then came Don Clarus and his brother, Spanyards, of whom in the first part much account was

The fourth booke of the third Part

made, and with much reason, for their valour deserved it: but in this charge they got very little: for thinking to chase Leobello in the behalfe of their Prince, Claribel leapt close to him and smote him on the top of the Helmet, and this was the first blow that euer the young man gaue with the sword, and was so good, that it smote him to the ground: he stayed for his brother, which came mounted vpon a great horse: but hee quickly left him, and made the Princes of Hungarie and Bohemia hold them company: he ratheth in among them like Mars, and giueth not a blow, but that therewith hee bringeth them on their knees or hands vpon the ground.

Leobello entertained the Tinacrian, while as the Assyrian recovered his sword. The brane Torisundo alighted seeing his friends on foote, and met with the reputed father of the two youthe, who was a good knight, but he gat little: for the Spanyard is one of the most valiant of the world: hee smote him so, that hee made him stoop, and within a little had ouerthrowne him: he would haue followed him, but the furious Leobello holp him, who was nere at hand, putting the Tinacrian from him with a strong thrust. The young mans valour made him to wonder, and had hee not bene in such surp, hee had not smitten him: but having no respect of any, he smote him such a blow vpon the head, that although it was the first, if he had taken such another, as that, it had made an end of him: for it gaue such a thunder-clappe, that hee knewe not not where hee was. They had aide at hand, for by the woods hee came Don Celindo, and his sister, with Argante, and Thorisiano, who seeing their brother Don Clarisel (for so was he called) they all came a gallop. Polphebus was in feare of their horse breeds but drawing force out of y danger (a thing woorthy his valour) they were troubled in such sort with their halle, y Don Celindo and the Ladie were like to fall on their faces, and to auoyd it, it behoued the to leap from their horses; but Don Argante, and Thorisiano, who reined their horses, encountered

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

countred them with their hozles brests, and made them to set one hand to ground, but to their damage: for there is no Whip y she wath it selfe so furious, as Luzelaes lover. It was the Penicians fortune to retorne first. The Tinacrian made some, standing firme on his feete, & with his sword in both hands, attended his coming, with al his might he gaue him a sudden blow: fortune was his friend, for y blow lighted on the hozle; it was stricken by the hand of Carrofileas sonne: for deuiding y hozle into 2. peces, setting Don Argante on y ground, so amazed, that before y Thorisiano came, he gaue him a thrust. Gualcenor saith, y he ouerthrew him: but the Prince stibled, it made all their blouds to frese to for 2. such blowes. Thorisiano would end y battell on softe, but he was deceined: for y Spanyard set vpon him; & before he could turne, had giuen him a blow, which much troubled him. The combats were well deuised: for now were they so many, to so many: but they which met with the two yonthes gat little: for within thre blowes they were ouerthrowne. The like happened where Polphebus went, who although hee were somewhat weary; yet hee put Don Celindo with his haffe out of breath: this order lasted not long: for of the Pagans, thither came Bembo, & the two emulatores, Brauorante & Brusaldoro, who, especially the Achaian, as he knew Rosabel, & had a desire, as hath bin declared in this hystorie, as a hungry Lion followed him, holding in his conceit y battell for ended, & himselfe reuenged of the Prince. He with y Mars defended him from being trode vnder softe, fearing they would doe him some harme: & so the brane Bembo lightly passed by. By another meanes y 2. famous men sought reuenge and victorie: for standing strongly on their stirroys, they hurled their Launces with greater might then if Mars had done it. Brauorante his Launce (for that it came from a better arme) lighted first, & smote him on one side of the shield, and being insufficient to breake it (the temper being so old) made it to turne twise about: and therefore Brusaldoro could not by any meanes hit it, but smote against a rocke, & pierced it y thrd part of y launce in
ff 2 depth.

The fourth booke of the third Part

depth. The Knight with the stars iudged it for great cowardise: for three, so famous as they, to set upon one alone, it was more then basenesse: and seeing them returne, he leapt to one side, saying, It seemeth to mee, Knights, that you come with greater passion then discretien, which hath made you to commit so great an error as is this. These words did so winne the heart, and animate the soule of the great Trebatius, seeming to him that they were spokē with such generositie, that as if he had had wings, at 2. leape he gat his horse, who neuer parted from the battell, and with another leap lighter then an Eagle he recovered the saddle, saying to him with the starres, Warden me, valorous warrior, that I doe not end this battell with you; there shall not want time whensoever you shall give me warning: for the ill behauiour of these Knights forceth me to leaue it, to make them know what error they haue committed. It is very reasonable (valorous Prince) sayd he with the starres, and I would goe to assist you, were it not to hold my credit and word which I haue given to be of their party. They could not proceed in their discourse: for with another turne they were againe come against the young man. He quickly aduanced himselfe, & with a loud voice said, We shall haue time, you cowardly Knights, to make you know your cowardise, and the passion where with you come, which hath made you to forget the lawes and orders of Knighthood. He bare himselfe well against those 3. pillars: but he had bin in danger, had not Poliphebus come upon his Arabian. The valiant young man had long sought Brusaldoro, and now knowing him by his Armes, hee came to him swifter then thought, & found him busy smiting of Rosabel. He gaue him a mighty blow on y^e helme, laying him all along upon his horse neck, & paid him yet another, which made y^e bloud to spring out at his nose. Now were y^e Horses in danger, for on one side of y^e field came 4. which would haue giue Mars battell: the one was Captaine generall of the Greekes, the other Rosader, Don Heleno, and the sayde Rosamundi, who knowing Bembo, who for an old grudge euer since the
battell

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

battell by Sea. She came to him more light then an Dunce; and with her sword which was forged in Babylon, she smote him vpon the Strong Shield, the strength thereof serued for little, or for that it came from Luperius, for from side to side she cleft it, and it was a wonder that she had not done the like by his arme. The furious Sarasin was more then enraged, for all that quarter was so tormented, that it had no feeling. The Ladie was not idle, for she was one which fought most earnestly, and so befoze that the Sarasin could vnderstand from whence that blow came, she toke him another on the side of the head, which if shee had not ouerreached him, without doubt had put him in great danger: for in hitting him in this maner, shee made him to fall so backwards, that within little hee had come to the ground.

The Pagan was terrible when hee was angrie: for seeing her which had handled him in that maner, there was no Lion so fierce as he. Hee assailed the Ladie, meaning with that blow to haue selled her. Well did Aristoldo perceiue it, and the furie wherewith he came, being well knowne vnto them, by meanes of his ordinarie deuice which hee bare: the Antiochians horse was well in breath, with whom hee passed betwene the Ladie and him, and aboue hand hee smote him on the breast, wherewith hee made him to lose his blow, and lay his head on his horse buttockes. Now was this Prince cleane out of patience, renouncing his gods, and now samed all they which were in the field, to be but a few: and taking his sword in both his hands, as the Capitaine turned, he smote him athwart the shield: hee smote it from his arme, and descending to his Helmet, hee brought him to deethes dore, for hee laide him sencelesse vpon his horses necke: hee meant to haue assured the victorie, and to haue bene reuenged by the death of such a knight.

The most mightie Dacian hindred him of his purpose, who as he had the best horse in the world, with a leape hee was with him, when his sword was aloft, hee had no more

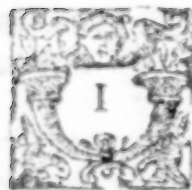
The fourth booke of the third Part

time but to giue him a cruell blow athwart the armes, and followed his blow so well, that hee gaue life to Aristoldo, of whome the Greekes stood in great need, and made him with the force of his, to let fall the sword out of his hand. Rosamundi came in so good time, that they had ouerthrowen him: for they made the Horse to feele two thrusts, one after another in his fleshy. So his aide came hee with the Starres, wondring at the valour of those Knights. It had bene no great matter, had not the two youthe come: who holding their valour, which fought for little in regard of theirs, all hauing taken horse, they repaired thither where they heard the great noise.

The faire Claribel met with Aristoldo, although that in former time they had been the greatest friends in the world: but he shewed it not now, for hee smote him vpon the rich Helme, making the bloud spring out at his nose & mouth, and laid him on his horses necke: hee ranne by him with his horses breast, and had not the Captaine had a good one, he had cast them both to ground: all this was nothing, for now were come to the battell, those which were borne for the warres, which were Claridiano, Claramante, and the faire Archisilora, who had mist the way, because that they knew not the Countrie, whose famous arrivall doth well deserue a new Chapter.

CHAP. XXI.

How the Princes of Grecia, Claridiano, and Claramante, with the Queene of Lira came to the battell, and what end it had, with that which after followed.



I know not, Soueraigne Ladie and mistress of my soule, being compassed with such warres, whither I shall repaire for refuge, to ease mee of the paine which I endure, but to your beautie, to the end that by augmenting it, it may be my death: for with accepting of my faith and seruice, you may

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

may ease the torment, which mine eyes haue brought mee
vnto, through their presumption, referring all the griefe to
the heart for hauing seene you, they remaining with the glo-
rie to haue seen your beautie, then which nature could frame
nothing more excellent, to the end that y^e world should hold
you for the alone, and as the feniye thereof. Being some what
lightned, with speaking somewhat of that beautie, I wil tel
you what an entrie the gallant Archisilora made, who at
her first comming, met with the gentle Leobello, and settled
well in her stirreps, shee huried her mightie Launce at
him. The young Mars receiued it, but made an ill bargaine:
for this Augenes arme was one of the most famous. It
passed cleare through his shield, & lighted on his best, bea-
ring the youth so backwardes, that hee was almost over-
throwne. Shee past forwarde like an Eagle, to whose en-
counter came the valiant Mauritanian, not knowing her,
for shee wore a blew Scarfe ouer her armour. The y^e was
meant with a blow to haue made an end of the warres, but
it happened to him cleane contrarie: for the disguised young
man, who toke more care for that Ladie then for himselfe,
preuented the Pagans blow, passing betwene them with
his horse: hee could doe no other wise, but by holding vp his
shield, to crosse the blow: but that was to small purpose, for
he beat it to his head, and him out of his sences. Then came
the matrone: and to requite the Knight with the Ladies, ca-
sting her shield at her backe with both hands, settled vpon
her stirreps, shee gaue a mightie blow, it was one of the best
that was giuen y^e day: for as (at ease) he smote him vpon the
highest of the head, shee smote away a little Target, which
hee wore behind his Helmet, carrying therewith part of his
gorget of Maille. Shee returned with a thrust which pierced
his flesh. But at vnawares, the furious Leobello smote her
vpon her precious Helmet: hee smote her downe vpon her
Saddle bow. Her lower turned his head about, and seeing his
Ladie in such a plight, his furie cannot be described: for ma-
king no accompt of y^e Mauritanian, he made to y^e young man.

The fourth booke of the third Part

The sonne of Eufronisa bare no such armes, as were convenient to receiue the blowes of this Greeke: for hitting him a full blow on the brest, hee gaue him a maruellous wound, although without danger: hee gaue him another, which within little threw him to the ground. Brauorante did much affect this young man, seeing with what courage hee fought, and would haue come iust to his aide, but hee found in his way the pillar of Grecia, Claramante, so nere him, that hee could doe no good with his Are at large, and therefore drawing backe his arme, he gaue him a thrust in the midst of his shield, and although it had bene of Diamond, he had cleft it: for his force was rare, and the weapon, the best in the world: hee made both him and his horse to make a stand. All men wondered at the blow, it set him so besides himselfe, that hee had time to retire from him, and fetching his Are about his head, he reached him a knocke on the side of the Helme: and if hee had giuen him a third, I know not how it had gone with the Pagan.

Then came the gentle Claribel, as fierce as a Furie, with a double blow. The Greeke thought much of it, and knew not well where might hee contained so knightly valour. After him came Bembo, for hauing heard the blowes, he well knew what it meant (as it was true) to his friends cost: hee gat little by his coming, for Claramante being come to him selfe, and missing the young man, hee fastned the blow vpon the Achnian: it was terrible, for as hee had neuer a shield, hee toke it on the midst of his brest. This was that which the Sarasin more feared, then all those which hee had receiued in his life, for the Are entred his brest, wounding him mortally: he made no boast thereof, for he with the Starres and Claribel, smote him both together, the one vpon the shoulder, the other vpon the top of the Helmet; they laid him on the Saddle pummell. To the nople came the famous Floralis with Camillaes sword, she came iust as Claramante raised and settled himselfe, and with a course spee smote him vpon the Helmet, it sounded like a bell.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

bell, and left him halfe astonied: shee would haue sent him another, but that shee found hard by her, the famous Rolumundi, with Semiramis her vniuersall sword, against whose edge, neither Steele nor enchantment had any force. Shee gaue her a backe blow vpon one side of the shield, and smote off the one halfe thereof, with great part of her Mantbrace: to her aide came the wounded Don Clarisel, desiring to die in the sight of her whom he so hearely loued: and like a Viper, drawing force, not out of his owne feeling, but from his firme faith, hee smote the Dame vpon the rich Helme, and made her bowe bolow her head lower then shee would: hee gaue place to Florinda, to be reuenged of the Princesse, giuing her two thrusts, the one after the other.

There is no particular combat, but may bee ended: for now, of the Moors side came Astorildo, and Epirabio, with the Calipha of Siconia, and the King of Giant-land, with foure Giants, all Cousins. They entred, treading the Crakes vnder fete, and were like to doe much harme: for Brandusio, and the Prince of Almains had aduanced forwards, with those troupes which remained at the entrie into the balley: but they found newly come before them, the mightie Trasondan, Poliphebus, and his brother Rosacler, with the two courageous Giants, Brandafidel, and Bramidoro, with the gentle Tifereo, and the faire Claridiana. It was a thing worthe a Romans Theatre, to see the encounters: for the Giants matched themselves the one with the other: it was like as if two ships had met in the middle of the Sea. In this encounter, the Greeke partie had the better: for Brandafidel (who was one of the most famous in the world) laid his aduersarie on the flaye: Bramidoro did the like: they had them in chace, and presently many after them: for Tifereo had likewise ouerturned Lindauro; with in a little the warre had againe bene new begun: for in a manner, the greatest part of the Princes came aswete, either partie to aide their people. Brandafidel was furious when he fought; being angrie, they could fatten few blowes vpon him:

The fourth booke of the third Part

him: for en soe he was very light, and withoute himselfe to play his part with his club, wherewith he did things, although latefull, yet verie pitifull: for there happened to enter a Giant, which came with Brundusio: He hit him but two knocks, and both on the Helmet, there needed no more blowes; for he layt him dead at his fete. Brundusio would be reuenged; but it was to mate with his death: for Bramidoro was at hand; and in passing by, with his bat he made him gett vpon his hands. Tiferco helpe him, for he stretched him out all along. They left their clubs to repaire, to him of Cibia, seeing that he of Zardus was come to gripes with him, They had killed him, had not Brauorante arriued: whose coming with Aristoldo did not onely rescue him, but also remeured the warre: so as it then seemed much more cruell then at the beginning. The great Alphebus after his old manner singled out Brusaldoro: for hee had long desired it, euer since that in the woods of Grace he would haue robbed his mother. The Pagan refused it not, but rather at his first smote him on the strong and rich helme, and made him auale his head downe to his bosome. The Mauritanian would haue seconded it; but the famous Emperer, which with those blowes was nothing amazed, wheeling his horse a little to one side, made him to lose his blow, and would not let slip occasion, but with all his might he reached him a blow vpon the shoulder, which smote away all his haunt: it went not alone, for hee gaue him another, which put him out of his remembrance. The Cræke spent so much time in striking him, that he gaue opportunity to Claribel to come vpon him with a thrust: it was one of the most extreme blowes that euer the Cræke had receyued. His Ratie would reuenge it; but she could not find him, for he was like an Eagle; and had vpon a sudden hardly handled the great Tartarian Zolo: hee made a thrust at the Troiane; and had not the Princes of Thars and Argentaria bene nere, without doubt Hectors house had bene in danger. The faire Sarmacia was troubled to see her Troiane in such estate;

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

estate : and grinding her tath, she set vpon the younger : she came so nere, that she could not strike him : the blow did him greater fauour then he deserved : for casting her saye armes ouer his backe, shee griped him so hard, that shee imprinted his armour in his fleshy, as shee took him at vnawares; so was it a small matter to vse him so; and had hee bene any other, shee had pluckt him from his horse. In the chase came the great Tinacrian vpon his Arabian : he seemed to be no other then a thunder-bolt, whistling betwene the clouds : he first took Don Argante to task, and set him without ingement vpon the saddle bowe : he stretched Lindauro all along vpon the ground; and finding Don Celindo nere him, with a strong thrust he set him besides his saddle. Trebatius his sonne was neuer scene in such a fury, his fiercenesse made them all to wonder; and had not hee with the stars come, he alone had ended the battell in that place : for before that he came, he had ouerthrowne the Prince of Almaine: he leapt after him, holding it to haue bene honorable to haue taken him prisoner, accounting him for one of the most principall by his rich armour in their campe. The unknowne yong man detained him from his purpose, fastning him at the entring, in the chest of his breast : it is a great hap that he had not kild him, for his sword pierced his armour euen to the skin, and with a little more hee had thrust him in the heart pit. Luzelaes louer suffered himself to be hurt with a stab, and seeing his blood spilt vpon anothers weapons, there was neuer Tiger so ferce as he; for the fleshed Lion is tame in respect of him: for byinging his sword about his head with all his might, he smote him with the stars ashiwart the Helmet, and made him let them within the same with a boundance of blood. The Crakes would faine haue ended these battels, because they knew that therein consisted the strength of their arme, and (they being lost) the victory against them was certaine. But now there was no remedie: for the Emperour of the Romanes was already entred the wood, with aboue a hundred thousand men. The Crakes doubtfull of their Princes, had the more no lesse care: for the

The fourth booke of the third Part

valorous Meridian was come with as many. The battels were ready to ioyne; but both the one and the other were in feare to bee lost through the discommodity of the place: and so they parted, either hauing something to talke of, concerning the valour of those Knights. The Greakes extolled the two young Knights with highest praises, esteeming the for the flowers of Chiuallrie. They left no lesse occasion to be talked of; particularly Polyphemus, who had shew himselfe so valiant, that they wondered thereat, as prodigious, all men intreating him, and chiefly his brother, to tell who he was: but he excusing himselfe the best that he could, caused them the more to mistrust; and most, when hee took his leaue of them, telling them that hee was to goe to trye a certaine aduerture. They all offered him their company: but then to be alone did best fit him, accepting (according as was reason) of their gentle offer: he took his way with his Rubican, speaking first to Rosabel, whom he entreated y he should not tell who he was, untill hee had performed his chalenge. He went directly to the place where he had left the Ladies; but went not long to seekethem: for by y Symphes direction they met presently: they made that day holyday, passing it in reciting what had happened betwene the Greakes and the Moors; to the which they determined the next day to send their message.

Their Captaine was much affected to valiant Knights; and seeing what the two youtnes had done, he went to embrace them; who knowing what he was, desired to kisse his hands, putting off their helmets, discovering more the humane beantie; which strake them which were present with admiration, to see them so young and so valiant. The warlike Bembo embraced them, saying, It were no reason, that they which haue so good hands of their owne, should kille any mans in the world. All the rest of the Princes receyued them with such courtesie as was due to their valour. There were no greater friends, the he with the Mars and they: all the whole campe did celebrate their coming, reioycing

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

to see them: especially the King of Silephra, when he knew
that they were his subiects, knowing the knight whom
they held for their Father, they all sat together in the
Soldan of Niquea his tent: and to shew them the more
pleasure, there was that night masking and dauncing, the
Ladies making there, then which, the earth bore none fairer,
nor more discrete. The Princeesse of the Romanes seeing
there was no possibilitie to effect her good, sometimes
from her seate with no small affection, she beheld the Lord
of Achaia, saying to her, that next after the Dacian, she
might best employ her beautie vpon him. At this Supper
grew many new loues: for the mightie Argante, who till
then had bene free from his snares, held the Sophi his
Daughter to be the Sunne of all beautie, and with this
conceit, he gaue her his life and soule, submitting himselfe to
her in such earnest and good fayth, that nothing was of
power to vntie the knot which blind loue had made. Epiras-
bio yielded himselfe to the will of the gallant Lisiana, who
seeing his valour, did neuer estrange her selfe from him. It
serued to small purpose for the braue Soldane of Egypt, to
subiect himselfe to the sayre Eufonisa, who had her eyes,
soule, life, and heart fixt vpon her Rosabel, and without
hope of remedie, seeing him otherwise kuffed. Time being
come to with draw themselves (for some of the knights
were hurt) they all went to their tents, carrying with the
the yong knights to their unknowne Grandfather, which
went, commending the brauerie of the Craks, who took no
other race but to fortifie their Citie, iudging that that war
would be of long continuance, both the one and the other
had made of truce. And so, from the Emperours there came to
the Citie to request it, the Kings of Fenicia and Armenia.
The Craks granted it for fiftene dayes, and that into
the Citie there might come onely 20. knights together.
And seeing that both armies were in quiet, the discrete
Earle of Modica, went to doe his dutie to the Emperour
Trebatius, making himselfe knowne vnto him, who know-

The fourth booke of the third Part

ing from whom he came, graciously receiued him. This increased his good liking: for he gaue him a letter from Garrofilea, which the Emperour read alone, not without vnderstanding how much hee was bounden to that valorous Queene, which had so dierely loued him: he read the letter, which sayd in this manner.

A Letter from Garrofilea to the Emperour Trebatius.

TO the great Emperour of the Greekes, Garrofilea sendeth greeting. Had I not well knowne, mightie Monarch, how worthie those errours are to be pardoned, when loue is the causer thereof, neither would I haue presumed to write, neither had I any mind thereto, although I haue had it, to desire thy death, my life depending onely on thee, that thou liuest. I acknowledge my fault: and for amends, I send thee these Knights, to serue thy person, assuring me, that the two sonnes which thou ledest heere, will doe the like. And if the affection which I doe and haue borne thee, may moue thee, the warre being ended, I pray thee to returne them backe to me againe, that I may enioy the presence of the sonnes, which I hope not of the father. The God in whom thou beleuest, grant thee such health, as the forgotten Garrofilea desireth.

If he had to his liking ended all these battailes, hee could haue receiued no greater ioy then he did, in receiuing that letter from that cruel Queen, which was now become gentle, milde, & amorous. See of what force loue is! for it hath euen melted me, being of the countrey of the Tigers. The Princes of either side were gladd of the truce: for y^e Greeks desired to see the Ladies in the Romes camp, & the Pagans were no lesse desirous to see the Greck Ladies, the same of whose beautie reached to the highest heaues. With this desire we will leaue them, to tell what the most mightie Poliphobus did the next day.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

CHAP. XXII.

How the Prince of Tinacria sent a Letter of challenge to the Pagans camp, with leaue from the Emperour of Grecia, and of what followed thereof.



Imagining, faire ladies, that chapters of loue would be more pleasing vnto you, I haue conceined so much ioy thereof, that it hath eased me of my paine which I begin to feele, as the cause of my life: & if I intreate of any sweet hope, it is but to deceiue mine owne fraile vnderstanding, who as a nouice in loue, is of opinion, y^e there can be no remedie for his griefe. And my paine maketh me liue ever doubtfull of any good: for although I loue in good earnest, my Lady doth not yet knowe it: an excuse for that which I endure, not to attribute it vnto other, but rather to mine owne mishap. The valorous Tinacrian geth free and at libertie: for if he loue well, hee knoweth that hee is also well beloved. There is nothing in the worlde so sweet, as is mutuall loue, betwene a Lady & her gallant: for it sufficeth to make him cheerefull, & well content: for to see himselfe beloved, was the occasion why he sent challenges to the 2. camps by the Sympha, which he brought. She which went to the Citie, well knowing what she had to doe, stayed vntill all those high Emperours and Kings had made an end of their dinner, and til that the Ladies were all come forth into the Hall: & seeing occasion, she entred, clad in such attire as was fit for such a message. At her coming in, she did her duty to such as were there: and adressing her speeches to the mightie Emperour Trebarius, she sayd, Soueraigne Prince, whom in reason the worlde should acknowledge, consent in thy generositie, I am sent fr^o the Knight with the Eagle, who knowing y^e thou hast granted truce to y^e Moors for 15. daies, although that hee came from farre to serue thee (as all men ought to doe)

The fourth booke of the third Part

he would in the meane time with thy leave, entertaine the
louing gallants, giuing them occasion to shew their va-
lour: for in the middlest betwene these two camps, hee
will maintaine after to morrow, that the two Ladies
which are come in his companie, are indeed the most faire
of the world, and this at all perils of battaile. This is my
demands; and if it please thee that he come, he will doe it;
and if not, he will stay untill the truce be past, to come to
thy service. This seemed to the Greeke Princes to be a
great presumption in a knight: and so they desired that
the Emperour should giue him leave to come. The Greeke
Loyd himselfe had beene so greatly amazed, that hee
would haue gone in person to answer the challenge: but
trusting in his sonnes, he sayd, Faire Damsell, I thanke
the Knight much for that which he wil do for me, which de-
serueth that a greater request then this should be granted,
and so you may tell him, that hee may come in safetie: for
no man shall offer him violence, excepting such as shal fight
in combate with him, which will not sayle to doe it. The
Damsell would haue kissd his hands for the fauour, saying,
Then, Soueraigne Emperour, with your leave, I will
deliuer a message to the Ladies, which I haue brought
for them. Do all that you will, (answered the Emperour.)
So he wet directly to the cloth of estate, where they were,
which might be sayd to be a new Paradise of beaultie: for
they were come forth to recreate themselves, some to fa-
uour their Gallants with their looks, which sufficeth, for I
would be glad to take it of my Lady, if it might be permit-
ted to come to see her. In seeing the Damsell coming
(quoth the gallant Policena, daughter to the faire Venus) &
Polidolpho which stood hard by the side Helen, daughter
to the Prince of Babilon, & Persia, & Bransiniano, with the
faire Aurelia, daughter to the great Tartarian Zoylo, and
the Princess Tigliafa, thre Ladies which did darken the
lunne in the middlest of his carriere: they were those,
which bring but children, gaue hope to be most faire. There
was

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

was neuer a one there that passed Rosabela, daughter of the sayre Oliuia, although she were yonger. All which foure fate hard by Rosamundi. Quoth the young Gire, I belene that this knight will challenge vs too. Your Ladyship needth not to feare it (quoth the second Helen) for where these Soueraigne Ladies are, there may wee liue safe from any defiance. It will end according to the equitie of the cause (quoth Aurelia) and not for our beauties. Take no care for that (quoth Rosamundi) for there will want no knights which will take pleasure to goe forth in our behalfe. It is to be doubted (quoth Policena) seeing how vnpleasing wee are. By this time was the Damisell come, who knalke to come before the Emperesse of Trapisonda; which stood close by her daughter; she deliuered the letter to her hands, desiring her to be pleased to read it, because she was speedily to returne to the knight, who had sent her. It is a great confidence that that knight reposeth in those Ladies (said the Emperesse) & seeing that my Lord the Emperour hath given him leaue, we confirme the same. Rosaluera presently read the letter, with great laughter of all the Ladies, imagining that it came for her; it would not haue grieved Rosamundi, nor Archilora, to haue tried theselues against him: with gratefull hearing, the Ladies gaue eare to the letter, which said thus,

The Letter.

THe Knight with the Eagle, to the Greeke Princesses, greeting. It hath beene my fortune, Soueraigne Ladies, so wholly to estrange my selfe, that I am enforced to vndertake the most difficill thing that can bee imagined: I acknowledge the great difficultie & your beautie, whose fame flieth ouer all the world. I haue presumed to entreat your leaue, to vphold the beautie of my Ladies, in the midst of the field, against the Pagan army, wel knowing that my owne smal valour deserueth it not: but therein shal your generosity appeare. The gods haue you in his keeping.

The fourth booke of the third Part

This Knight said, Rosilucra is in the right, in making no questions against the Greeke Ladies, which may also returne without armes for his part, & seeing he hath such confidence in vs, it seemeth good to me (with leaue of my Ladie the Emperesse Claridiana) to send it him with all the fauour possible, to the end, that through our fault he lose not the assurance of those Ladies beauties, which are in his companie. We passe not for that (said Aurelia) for hauing no experiences of this Knight, it should bee ill done to graunt him so much fauour. Rosabel came, to the end that his vnlikes businesse might be so handled as he did deserue, and said, If my being suretie for the Knight with the Eagle, gallant Dames, may be a meanes to procure this fauour to be done him, I presently impaun my word. There is no cause to stay from giuing it, said the gracious young Rosabella, seeing that my Lord and brother hath taken vpon him the charge of our fame.

They all laught at the girles speeches, which was not yet about twelue yeares old: for so long time had the Pagans spent in leauing their troupes. They all went to Rosamundies lodging, where Rosilucra in all their names wrote to the Knight, & giuing it to the Damsel, shee took her leaue with great contentment, leauing them very desirous to see the Knight. I beleue, Soueraigne Prince (quoth Pollicena) that you doe better know this Knight then we doe, seeing you haue forced vs to fauour him in such a matter as this. His acquaintance and friendship (answered the gentle Wytanian) hath cost me so much blood, that I stand bound to bee his friend, so long as I liue. And this Soueraigne Princeesse Serinda, being so much bound vnto his valour, I marnaille that shee intreated not for him. Presently, at the intreatie of the Ladies, hee told what happened when hee first knew him, fighting with the most streng Aliratio for the libertie of Serinda, as in the third booke hath bene declared, where they two fell acquainted, concluding such friendship as was the greatest in the world: besides, they being so

HERE

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

nere of kin. Now I say, quoth Liriana, that the fauour hath bene verie small that hath bene done vnto him: and seeing that there is Truce, wee will encourage him with our presence. And that will be a meane, quoth the faire Troyle, wholly to vanquish the Moze Ladies: for yet they had neuer carried her to her Father the King of Argel, it was so for her pleasure. The Tinacrian very ioyfully receiued the answer, reading it in presence of his Ladies in this manner:

The Answer.

THE Princesses and Greeke Ladies, to the Knight with the Eagle, greeting. Thy thankfulnessse, valorous knight, hath so bound vs, and Rosabel the Prince of the great Britannie agreeing thereto, as suretie, that thou shalt bee worthie the fauour which thou requirest: hauing in him reposed our hope of the victorie, wee giue thee leaue, to the end that in the field thou shew the degrees of thy faith, whither thy loue hath aduanced thee, subduing by them thy presuming to a matter so difficult. We would that in thy warres, companie might bee admitted, which we would hold thee: for vpon thy sureties speeches wee would aduenture any hazard. The gods haue thee in their keeping.

Great was the contentment, which the Princes receiued with the gentle answer of the Greeke Ladies, giuing his nephew many thanks for that which hee had done for him: he presently dispatched another message to the Mozes Campe, bearing a Cartel with his challenge. All the Princes and Ladies were in the Emperour of the Romanes his pavilion. The damsel went in, and doing her dutie, seeing so many of whome shee was to aske leaue, shee asked it in general, saying, The high gods, soueraigne Princes, haue you in his keeping. I am sent hither by the knight with the Eagle, to deliuer a message, which I wil deliuer in few words. The present which was the King of Armenia, bade her to deliuer what shee had to say. Quoth the damsell, By word

The fourth booke of the third Part

the knight with the Eagle, considering the Truce granted, to the end, that idlenesse mighte not the desire of Armes, hath thought good to entertaine this time, and to shew you that he desireth to serue all, and to maintaine in the midst of y^e field, the beautie of two Ladies, which he hath brought in his companie, at all hazards, from to morrow forwards, and commanded me to giue this letter to him, who holdeth himselfe most enamoured. The great and famous Captaine Bembo rose vp, who in Loue causes desired euer to bee the first, and as such, shewing some discontentment, he gaue the letter to the fræ Thorsiano to read, which he did, thus.

Poliphebus his Letter to the Ladies of the Moores.

THe Knight of the Eagle, to the death seruant to Cupid, to the Princesses and Ladies which are in the famous Bembo his Campe, greeting. Because, gallant Ladies, you may see the effects of Loue, in him which hath subiected his life, seeing it employed in so sweete a seate, assured, that no man hath seene the like quiet as I haue done: And relying on the beautie of the Ladies, in whose companie I come, more then in the valour of my person, I doe challenge any one that shall come from your partie, that she, which is mistresse of my soule, is fairer & more discreet then al the Ladies in your Campe. It is a great boldnesse, but I am to bee excused, hauing iustice on my side, wherewith, and with my weapons and horse, from to morrow forwards, I will defend my demand, swearing the battell, against all the enamoured gallants of your Campe at outraunce. The gods keepe you.

There was not one, whome Cupids (ape, me,) had touched, but shewed himselfe moze fierce, then the Basiliske in the Libian sands, seeing the proud challenge of this knight: the night seemed to them long yeeres & many, that the next day they might make him know, in how great an error hee
saw,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

came. They allowed the challenge, the Ladies remaining highly displeased, which they could not forbear to shew in their bitter answer, which they sent to the Knight by the Dwarf: who laughing at the small account which they made of the Prince of Tinacria, gaue this answer. The saye Luzela took it with great contentment, saying, This which belongeth to your soueraigne beaultie, gallant Rosoluis, I purpose to reade, to see how the Proue Ladies received your brothers challenge. For as those Princes are famous, it should be expedient to send a fauourable answer. This belongeth to you, faire Princeesse, answered Rosoluis, seeing that (grounding himselfe vpon your good grace and discretion) he hath aduentured to do this. Well, let it be how it will, but I beleue wee shall see him in danger. Your faueur, halowes Luzela, shall draw me out of a greater, said the beloued Tinacrian. If that may serue the turne, (answered the Lady) there shall be no want thereof, and therewith she read the letter.

An answer to Poliphebus.

FOR not to returne without answer, seeing the much, wherunto thou knight with the Eagle hast opposed thy selfe, thy pride did not deserue to enioy such a fauour as is this. But because thou shalt know, with whom thou shalt encounter in battaile, hauing displeased vs, we from henceforth nominate for our part, our Captain generall, (which is the mightie Bembo, King of Achaia:) and as for the rest, he will make thee know in how great errors thou comest. The Gods keepe thee, and open thine eyes that thou maist see thy fault.

With great pleasure the Princes made end of reading this letter, seeing how angrie these Ladies were, attending the morrow, in the which what succeeded, is fit to be told in another Chapter.

The fourth booke of the third Part

CHAP. XXIII.

How Poliphebus beganne to maintaine his challenge,
and of the perillous battaile which followed.



Old, balorous Ladies, for now it is requisite that you concole my paine, to the end, that I may depaint what happened after this defiance; for the golden Apollo had not thoroughly shewen his glittering beames, when in the middle betwene the two camps, appeared one of the most sumptuous tents of the world, for it was little lesse than the Greeke Palace: it was all of coloured cloth of gold, with Greene knots, and many silver Eagles embroydered upon it; a man could desire no more.

It was work enough for either eyes to behold the spectacle, imagining (as it was truth) that humane hands had wrought but little upon it. All the Ladies of the campe would see the battell, upon assurance of the truce. So came they in a Chariot triumphant, drawn by 20. Unicornes, as white as the driven snow, covered all over with rich cloth of silver. The Ladies came as it behoued for their valour and beautie: for there was no lesse to be seene, then in the Citie, from whence they might see the Greeke Ladies and Princesses begin to come, which as they were many, so of force they must haue two famous Chariots: there was neuer seene a sayer shew. There were made by the Emperours command, certaine most sumptuous roomes for the Ladies, covered all over with most rich Canopies.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

hopies, where the Ladies went vp, inuiting (with their standing so) those of the Campe. Some did it, to see about them, those which they most loued, which were Rosilia, Arbolinda, and the saye Eufronisa, esteeming their courtesies as was reason, they remaining in their Chariots. Presently at one side of the campe, entered hyrcene Knights, either of which would haue waged battaile against Mars.

That day did Bembo ley aside his sad deuice, which hee ouer bled to beare. For Lupertius had sent him most rich greene armour, all wrought ouer with sunnes: there was no goodlier sight in all the field, except the challenge. In his shield hee bore Lady Fortune, as though she procured his good, holding her hand out to him, with these wordes:

My wheele sometime hath little power,
If that loue do please to lowre,
And the dame reiect valour.

He had about his necke a blew scarfe, fringed with gold, mounted vpon a roane horse. The Greekes tooke great pleasure to see him coming in so good order: for although hee were an enemy, yet vertue where soeuer is beloued. Hee brought with him those, which in all mens iudgement were most valiant. There came the knight with the Starres with his ordinari deuice, so gallant, that hee gaue them all matter to looke vpon. They stayed but little with him: for looking vpon the two yonges, to whom Lupertius had sent new Armour, they were all of the Lyons colour, with much Gold-smithes worke, and so many precious stones, that they could not bee valued.

The Caparisons for their horses were of the same, with great plumes of feathers in their heads: in both their Shields and deuice, which was this, they were depainted betwene Laue and Libertie, with these wordes:

Alh 4

If

The fourth booke of the third Part

If sorrow must needs come,
Tis best to attend it,
And seeke to amend it.

Queriseman affraid the two valiant youths. After them came with their old deuices, the five brothers of the hidden towne, sauing that Floralisa, and Don Argante, according to that which they felt, had set in their shields: for the Lady bore Ielousie proper, which was painted like a tower, hauing more eyes then Argos, with these words:

No eyes can behold
The plagues of this torment,
Nor heart but will rent.

The new enamored, whose eyes had made his heart to feele the flame, bore Constance naturally depainted, with this motto:

No griefe but may be endured,
If louing at leysure,
It passe not all measure.

All the place noted the deuice of these two, although that none of the Greekes knew Floralisa: for fearing that the knight would not fight the Combate with her, she couered all her armour with blew silke. There came the famous Epirabio, so gallant, that hee gaue good hope of him: the like did Lindauro, and the most mightie Aristoldo, with the Prince of Alman, who came all in gray, with many wanes of gold wrought with the hammer, on his armour. The mightie Brandaso, who would also shew himselfe affected to Ladies, came into the field, armed with cleane & wel tempered Steele. The Pagan brought for his deuice, a Lyon, which he in his youth had torn in peeces with his hands, with these words:

What force would worke his smart,
Which yeelds himselfe in euery part,
Sith the Lyon hath no hart?

There went with him the mightie Coriandro, a valiant knight, although hee had ill lucke with the Greeke Princess,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

cesses. At last came in, with a gallant shew and furious aspect, the two emulators, Brauorante, although with no determination to fight, and the braue Brufaldoro: who as hee so dearly loued his Ladie, so could he not endure the wrong which hee thought was done her. They all repaired to the place where the Woꝛthie Ladies stode, so faire, that they would make the Sunne to seeme foule in the midst of his course.

The Knight with the Eagle (quothe the Emperour of Trapisonda) had neede of hands to answer all those which haue presented themselues at the Lists: truly he hath proceeded with much discretion, to craue fauour at the Greeke Ladies hands, for such cruell battels as hee is like to haue; which if he perforce win with his honour, it shall bee to him the greatest of the world; for the knights with whom he is to fight, are the most famous vnder the Sunne. Al that which may bee giuen him for fauour (saide the gallant Helena) hath bene giuen him by the hands of these Princesses: for hauing such a suertie as is the Prince of the great Britanie, what attempt but is assured? They could not proceede in their discourse: for in the place was heard a great noyse, which was, that the Tinacrian comming forth at one side of his Tent, would shew himselfe to the Greeke Ladies. There was neuer sweeter Musick heard in Greece, then at his comming forth, without knowing who made it: and there were many Squibs and fireworkes throwne into the ayre, which gaue great pleasure to the beholders: But much more, when they saw Poliphebus the sonne of Trebatius, come betwene two Ladies so gallant, that hee carried euery mans eyes with him: his Armes were of the colour of his Tent, set with many Eagles of Gold, so artificially done, and with so many Stones of sundrie colours, that the Sunne shining vpon them, no man could behold them, in the midst of his rich shield: whose borders were of most bright shining Stones: in the midst betwene two towering Wyrons, he bare an Eagle, so excellently made as was

The fourth booke of the third Part

wonderfull to behold, and vnder it were wytten these words:

The Eagles wings be ought to haue,
Thereby to mount vnto the skies:
From scorching flames himselfe to saue,
Or other harme that may arise.

His deuter was wel liked of, and so; his presence there were very few but were wel affected vnto him. The ladies (whose brantie & beauty made al the assistants to wonder) came clad all in white, cut vpon coloured Tinsell, and the cuts set with most fine Rubies: their Clothes were after the Spanish fashion with foure sleeves, one paire straight, and imbroidered with Gold, and the other paire, long and large, hanging downe, serving onely for ornament: their payre made vp herie faire, and set with rich Stones, so faire, that many in beholding them, fell extremely in Loue: and vpon the top of al, rich Garlands. They came alone: so; so would the Tinacrian haue it. He bare his Laurels himselfe, with his Weaver downe, and with the same armes, which the Nymphes had giuen him, so as no man could knowe him. They wet directly to those standings where the Creek Ladies were, whither when he came, making his hoise to kneele downe, putting vp his Weaver, with great reuerence, he said,

Soueraigne Princesses of Grecia, the fauours haue bene so great, and so many, which I haue receiued from you, that I am not of hope to bee able to requite the: but to acknowledge the dutie on my part, and these Ladies all the dayes of our liues, employing the same in your seruice, and to lose it therein, shall be to vs gratefull. These Ladies beautie (said the Emperesse Claridiana) is more worthie, and your valour (Sir knight) bindeth all to fauour you, although that hee which bringeth so good assurance with himselfe, needeth no greater fauour then from his owne presence, which is such as assureth the palme of y battels, whose end we wish may be such as the Creek Ladies doe desire. The yong man bowed

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

bowed downe his head to his saddle bowe, leaning them all amazed as much at his gallant countenance and good behaviour, as at the brauerie and beautie of the Ladies, which seemed to them to be exquisite. They took their leaue, going directly to their Tent, where they were solemnly recreated with such heauenly musick, as none could bee better vpon earth. In sight of the campe he was armed, but by whom, it was vnknewne. There was a stately Theatre made for y^e Ladies, to behold the battell. vpon a great pillar they hangd the Princes shield, bringing an infinite many of Launces, that those which would but onely lust, should want no Launces for that purpose. The Tinacrian paced ouer the field vpon his Rubican (a better horse there was not in the world) with such a grace, as Mars could haue done no better. There wanted not some in a readines to come into the lists: for Lindauro, who yet had not lost Venus lone, would there shew it. Ah, he that had so excellent a wit, as might be able to depaint (with contentment to all) those battels, which were the best worth the seeing of any that euer were in the world: for the Pagan which first presented himselfe in the lists, was valiant, and who without question was most enamoured; although he neuer attained to any thing whereby he might perceyue that he was beloued.

He smote his furious horse with the spurs: but with the Tinacrian he got little; for he made him with the encounter to take hold of the saddle pumrell, for feare of falling. The young Gallant past forth with a braue countenance, and turned his horse vpon the hand, so lightly, as could not bee thought. The Prince came ashamed of his ill successe; and desiring to amend what was past, drawing his sword, with both his handes hee smote the Tinacrian vpon the Helme: it sounded like a bell; and the enamoured youth well felt the blowe: but seeing how many and how valiant Knights there yet remayned to come, it behoued him to giue a good account of himselfe, or not to bee called the sonne of the great Trebatius, repaying him another

The fourth booke of the third Part

for it, and with no lesse force: for trusting much to his Rubican, he closed with him, pulling him from his saddle, and griping him so hard, that before he let him goe, he strake the winde out of his bodie. All men admired him with the Eagle, making greater account of him then before. They took him from thence, and in signe that he was overcome, they left his shield behind.

The Tinacrian, as though he had done nothing, taking another launce in his hand, attended the famous Epirabio; who seeing his Ladie in sight, came more furious then a Lion: hee had a good encounter, for the Louer did somewhat wind about on his saddle: they came to the shock with their shields and helmets, which seemed as though two rockes had met. The Pagan fell to the ground: and Poliphebus seeing his Rubican somewhat altered, like a bird leapt from him. By this, his aduersary was vpon his feete, making shew to defend himselfe: for drawing his sword, hee made at the yong man, smiting him with such dexteritie, that before he could defend himselfe, he had giuen him two thrusts one after another; which Luzelaes louer toke verie ill: he gaue him yet a knocke vpon the rich Helme, beating a thousand sparkles of fire out of it, making him a little to hold betwene his head. I cannot tell whether the Tinacrian were ashamed or no: for not as one of experience, as hee was, but as a man enraged, he set vpon his aduersarie, and smote him with his rich sword in the midst of the shield: there was no defence against the blow, for hee made two peeces of it, and his sword glancing to his head, where it wrought more effect: for it made him set his hands and knees to the ground: he attended his rising, and before hee could strike him, hee clasped him in his armes, and took him in such furie, that he laid him along, and asked him whether he would yield: which he did, fearing his death, and went out of the field, leaving his shield behind him in peeces for a pawne, and yet not without praise of a valiant man. In his place came the proud Coriandro: Garrofileaes sonne knew him

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

him well by his armes, and desiring to make a good encounter, he chose his Launce himselfe. They met with such a noyse, that one could not heare another. The Tinacrian, whose Launce was somewhat bigger, smote him in the shield, and pierced it cleane thorow, and into the brest, and smote him so in the counterbuste, that he threwhim out of his Saddle, laying him all along on the graine field. The yong man fell forwards with a singular good grace, and returned with the same towards his enemy, who by that time (sozely bruised) was risen from the ground, and before that he should take occasion to count any cowardize, he leapt from his horse, beginning a cruell battaile. For although the Wagan were proude, yet was he valiant: but all that was nothing: for in a moment he had tryed him all in blood, and he himselfe had not one spot vpon his armour, and shewed himself so nimble, as was worth the noting. He maintained the fight, but it was but a while: for being tryed, he withdrew himselfe, giuing for his life, the reward of the battaile. If the Knight with the Eagle (saye Ladies) make such haste (quoth the faire Archiblorra) I beleeue that we shall soone know him, for he maketh good shew of your fauour. Wee grant it (quoth the saye Aurelia) with so good a will, that it is not much that he hath done: although considering the Princes which yet remaine, there be some cause of doubt.

There is no such cause, sayd the second Helen: for hauing our fauour, it shall suffice to draw him out of the greatest perill. It made them turne about to looke into the field; for the Prince of Almaine was come richly armed: and although he came free, loue triumphed ouer his libertie, bringing to his sight, the faire Clarinthea, Princesse of Celandia, whose beautie was no lesse then the Cræke Ladies, although she were somewhat sad and pensive, and Liranaes cousins, for the absence of the Princes their husbands, & her brothers. With this new supply, very gallant & valiant, he addressed himselfe against his enemy, although y^e there

The fourth booke of the third Part

were but small hope of victorie. They encountred with Mars his might: for it seemed that some great house was fallen, when their lances brake, they made such a noyse. The Almaine lost his reynes and stirrups, and was so boundes himselfe, that the Tinacrian perceiving it (trusting to his Arabian) ranne upon him with his horses beere, and overbare them both to the ground; wherein fortune was contrary unto him; for as hee was taken so at Buawares, he had no leisure to pull his foot out of the stirrup, and so one leg was under his horse, who with the force of the encounter died presently.

Trebanus his sonne alighted, leaving the whole campe amazed at his valiantie, and went to the Almaine, & holpe him to free himselfe from his horse, saying unto him, I will not, sir knight, that you should lose that for want of a horse, which your halow doth assure you: and so you may end the battell on foote. But he was in so ill taking with his fall, y^e he was enforced to give over the battaile, and to leane his shield behind, which much despited Bembo, who loved him very much, admiring at that which he with the Eagle had used towards him. I beleene (quoth the fayre girle Rosabella) that my Lord, my brother Rosabel, vid better know this knight than me, that hee was so ready to bee his suretie: & seeing wee were scrupulous in giving him this leane, it is reason y^e we should recompense him with something, the better to encourage him against the Captaine of the Moors, who (they say) is very valiant. Her faire mother stood hard by, & laughed at the girles speeches, who wel knew what knight that was: for her son Rosabel had told her: y^e which assurance she said, saying you are so careful for the good of this knight, being challenged, I am content that you shal send him a pledge from your hand, that he may see how much his valour is esteemed. At the rest of the yong girles holpe to further what Olui had required. In the end Rosabellæes faire sister was to take from her necke, one of the most rich Jewels in the world: It had bene her mother,

there,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

there, which Rosabel had brought out of Astrutio his Countrey : there was not a better place in that field. Shee gave it to a Damsell of hers, who with many knights which held her companie, came downe to the place where the Timacrian, with a new Lance in his hand, was on horseback. The Prince seeing her coming, leapt from his horse, receiving her with much courtesie, which he shewed to women, more then any other Prince of the world. The Damsell says vnto him, Valorous knight with the Eagle, my Lady the Princesse Rosabella, daughter to the Prince Rosacer, commendeth her to you, & seeing the valor which you have shewne, which shee imagineth to come from the Greake Ladies hands, which with such generosity gave you leave, she sendeth to them & her selfe this Jewell, to the end you should know of what credit your suite is, & how highly your valor is esteemed. The Timacrian smiling, received it, & said, Wel these soueraine Princesses (faire Damsell) & with such fauours, (such as the Gods are vnto, thy of) it shall bee easie to accomplish this enterprize, & againe, am I to bind me to be theirs, which this rich gift cannot do, seeing I am so already, & that be til I die. And acknowledging how much I am bounden, I find it to be so much, that to lose my life, it is too little to requite al, of what I haue received. He deliuered the message with so loud a voyce, that the Ladies which stood about the tent heard him. Luzela did assure her selfe of her knight, seeing the gift came from so neere a kinswoman. He put it about his neck, in sight of all the campe, which was a wound to the Greake Ladies hearts, to see him so fauoured, which was enemie to their beaultie. The Greake Ladies did celebrate the courteous answer of the knight, who seeing the place cleare, tooke horse, as light as a bird, and taking his place, expected the coming of some aduersarie, desirous to make them know their errors. There wanted not these who were so conceited of their Princesses beaultie, that they opposed themselves against him, although that there were

The fourth booke of the third Part

some question about it: for euerie one would be y first. At length the lot fell to the mightie Brundusio, who being armed with strong planks of Steele, made head against the Tinacrian, whose battell and the rest deserueth a newe Chapter.

CHAP. XXIIII.

Of the cruell battell betweene Brundusio and Poliphebus, with the comming of the couragious Lindoriano, Prince of Niquea.



With Soueraigne praises (most excellent Prince) did all Grecia extoll the noble Tinacrian, whose fame reached to the heauens: for in lesse then thre houres, hee had overcome thre of the most famous Princes in the Moores Campe. And Brundusio Prince of Gibia, desirous to reuenge their losses, with a most gallant shew confronted Luzelaes louer: there was neuer scene a more angrie onset: for before the beholders could imagine it, they were together, making little splinters of their great Lances, whose trunchions flew out of sight, vp into the clouds. The Pagan lost a stirrop: they turned their horses, & coming to strike both together with such force, as beat their heads into their bosoms, they strake againe, and againe, and coming to the fourth blow, (not able to endure the force of their strong armes) they laid their heads on the Saddle pummels. It was good for the Tinacrian that hee came so well armed: for although that hee did not cut his armour, yet he made his flesh black and blew. The contrarie happened to the Pagan: for in two or thre places the blond began to come forth. Garrosileas sonne was not better chased of all that day: for seeing how the Moore had vsed him, hee flung

The Mirrour of Knighthood,

flung his shield at his backe, (he was neuer wont to doe so, but when as in this manner he was in choler) and took his sword in both his hands. I beleue that he of Gibia was afrayd, and had reason; for comming to strike him, he put many in feare to see him brandish his sword. The Pagan could not auoyd the blow; for Rubican was so swift, that before hee could be in a readines, the young warriour was with him, and cleft his shield from side to side, and the blow lighted vpon his Helme with such force, that it strake away the one halfe, with a peece of his head, and made him ready to fall. He knew not whether it were day or night: he gaue him a second, and hit him vpon one shoulder; it carryed away the polidon and bauntbrace: all the camp thought that hee had done the like by his arme; and the Moors to saue himselve from falling, took hold of his horses necke; yet he recovered himselve, and more fierce then a Lion, he threw his broken shield to the ground; and taking his sword in both hands, hee set vpon the Prince, who lifting vp his sword and shield, receyued the blowe vpon both; and as the edge of his was so excellent, it cut the Moors in two peeces, making him to lose the greatest part of the force of the blowe. This notwithstanding, hee strake him with the rest vpon the Helme and Shield, hurling him downe vpon the saddle pummell: hee saw the starres in his Helmet, and much bloud gushed out at his eares and nostrils. The Pagan flung at him the rest of his sword, with such force, as if it had bene shot out of a Culuerine, and as hee raised himselve, it smote him on the middest of the brestplate, such a blow, as smote the best part of the wind out of his bodie. And as he saw him thus troubled, balaing himselve equall to him in strength, hee closed with him, and had hee bene any other then the Tinacrian, hee had pulled him from his horse: but it seemed to him that he met with a rocke.

Trebatius sonne recovered his breath, and setting vpon the Moors (as he was stronger then he) he pluckt him from

The fourth booke of the third

his Saddle, but could not hold him for waight: for hee was a bigge man, and so hee was constrained to leape with him to the ground, where, befoze he could recouer him self, with his dagger he had almost let out his soule: for he wounded him deadly, and so left him being somewhat wearie (although beholding his Ladie so faire and so pleasant, and all the rest of the Groke Ladies, which toyfully beheld him to see his rare valour) with a skip he recovered his saddle, their beauties ruining his wearied spirits.

The most strong Astorildo scarcely suffered him to take his lance, when he came armed in skie coloured armour, with Death in his shield, painted so at life, that the workmanship was pleasing, although the worke were not so. This free Watchelour leued Eufronisa so much, that although that hee playnely saw shee loued him not, yet hee neuer left to loue her untill afterwards, as shalbe declared. Round about Death were written these words:

Her name doth not put me in feare,
For shee's with me at bed and boord,
As my mishap doth beare record,

The Lady knew well how dearly this Prince did loue her: but there is no greater grieve to one beloved, then not to be able to helpe, nor sayne any fauour. Hee came with a good grace into the field, assuring his businesse better then any befoze him. They parted swifter then the wind, and met in the middell of the carriere. With too gracie meeting the Tinacrian mist his blowe, which went to his soule, and the more, for meeting the Calidonyan, he made him vilerly to bend in his saddle. There was neuer Vircanien Wgre that turned so; for seeing his Lance whole, he hurled it as though it had bene shot out of a Cannon: the one halfe entred into the ground, the rest beating the vnsaine ayre.

The Stranger returned with greater courage then a Lion,
glad

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

glad of his good encounter, and would haue giuen the first blow, bearing his Shield more forward then was reason; but it happened accordingly: for the Timaerian was more nimble then hee, who crossing his Sword, boze by the blow, and passing by with his Kibican, gaue him a knock athwart the Helmet, on the right side, and made him to hold his necke at one side. Hee returned at one side with a thrust, which put him from his saddle, and had he knowne so much, he had ouerthrowne him. Rosamundies brother recovered, being ashamed to see himselfe in such a case, and being in breath, hee entred, not knowing his enemies strength, and before that they had taken good hold of their Swords, he suddenly smote him vpon the rich Helme. It seemed (according to the sparkles which flew out of it) that he had smitten vpon a fine flint Stone: and the yong man shewed some forgetfulness in his saddle, making the Schoore more carefull to come with another: hee gaue it him vpon one side of the Kibic, and beat it to his Heater, with such force, that it made him hold his head backwards. Now was choler moued to the highest degree, and in such sort, y it were more madness to fight with him: for taking his sword in both his hands, he would haue beaten Diamonds to peeces: there was no defence in the shield, nor in the Armour, although enchanted, nor in most pure Steele: for the one his arme breaketh: and the other, the ancient temper of the sword cutteth, that except Rosamundies and Rosabels, there was not such another in the world: it smote away a corner of his shield, and the sword lighted on the shoulder: it tormented him so much, that hee could not beare the wayght of the shield; and so hee let it fall, giuing the yong man opportunitie to come vpon him with a thrust: and had he bozne his arme a little more euen, he had thrust him thorow, from side to side, and therewith made him to feele it in his flesh. All the Campe was in a tumult to see the yong mans vnumerable blowes; euerie where

Ak 2

there

The fourth booke of the third Part

there was no speech but of his rare valour. I feare me (said the Emperour Trebatius to him of Tribilonda) that the Princes of the Campe will encounter some danger, with this furious Knight.

I am of that opinion (answered the sonne) although I assure your Maestie, the courage which those three knights shewed, (which were, that Knight with the Starres, and the two new Knights) made mee to wonder, and I greatly desire to see them tried with him. What will quickly be scene, (answered the Father) for as he layeth about him, there are few within the Lists to resist his arme (as it was true:) for turning againe to behold the battell, the advantage was apparant of Tinacrian his side, although that the other by defending and offending himselfe so well, deserved the name of balliant, notwithstanding that hee should remaine overcome: for now they said it was no disgrace to be so, by such a Knight as that was: for the gods had not reserved to themselves any greater valour, then they had infused into him. It seemed unto him, that fighting with such desertie and skil, having so much to doe, it was to spend much time. And so caring for nothing but to end the battell, hee griped the Pagan so hard, that he knew not where he was; and would also with a blow have ended the fight: for taking his sword in both his hands, hee made towards his enemy; he made many afraid, to see him come with such furie, assailing him at one side. The Tinacrian would have bettered it: but it was like to have bene to his owne damage; for the Moore was subtil, and perceiuing that hee warded not his head, he gave him the greatest blow that euer he had smitten: hitting him at one ste, hee beat his Helme round, and made him to lose part of his sight, casting out much bloud: notwithstanding all which, he was still very hardfall, which in such extremities, was that which did assure him of þ battell: so closing with him with his dagger (for therewith great adventures were to be performed, although not with þ Tinacrian,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

erian, but by another yong mā, as in the fourth part of this
 History, he which ruleth the heavens giuing me health, shall
 be declared) he gaue him two mortall wounds, and left
 him (although on horsebacke, yet breathlesse) and seeing
 him in such sort, hee sheuldered him, and threw him to the
 ground. There was no fault in this Prince, but that in
 particular battailes hee was verie cruell untill they were
 ended. He caused him to be borne out of the field, leaving
 his shield for a pawne. All the Peeres were moued, and
 Ben bo would be the first, but that Flora would haue him
 to be the last. Into the Lists came the famous Thorisiano,
 with his accustomed armes, which were as good as any
 in the world. He was not enamoured, but yet was sent by
 the Ladies. And as he was knowne to the Crakes, and
 held for so valiant, they were in doubt of the Timacrian,
 but not they which knew what belouged to the wars: and
 much lesse Rosabel, who was surroyed to see how wel his
 vncle had acquitted himselfe: and he did the more reioyce,
 to thinke, what contentment his mighty Grandfather
 would conceiue, when he should know him to be his sonne.
 If your fauour were ever disagreeable, faire Ladies, sayd
 the Emperesse Briana, to the yong Ladies, in my opinion it
 is now: for with this coming of the aduersarie, all the
 companie doth mutter, doubting of your Knight. There is
 no cause of feare (soveraigne Emperesse) sayd the faire Au-
 relia, our warriour being so much loued and sauced as he
 is. They had not slept a foot from the place, when they heard
 a great noyse in the field, which was, that the one ranne at
 the other, with a greater swiftnesse, then an arrow flyeth out
 of a bow. The Pagan was extreme strong: but hee met
 with one which in fighting renewed his courage: for com-
 ming to encounter in the carriere, their Lances flew into
 small splinters, and Thorisiano hardly escaped falling, for
 he was dyuen to seize on his horse neck, without knowing
 what hee did. Luzelaes gentle leuer was somewhat trou-
 bled, which was well perceined by the assistants, whereby

The fourth booke of the third Part

they iudged of his enemies valour: who drawing the braue Atratio King of the Medes his good Sword, made towards the Tinacrian. At one instant they strake two most fall blowes, which made them both to see a thousand stars in the doore.

The Challenger had the best hope in the world, for which cause his enemies could not murther him, although hee returned with excellent swiftness against him, but rather carryed away with his furious blow, gave place to the Louer to giue a terrible blow behind, vnder his right Shoulder, which did so torment him, that hee scarcely felt his sword arme. The paine was soone gone, which was an aduenture for the yong man: for the Tinacrian was come with another, with greater haste then good speede: for he came so neere, that Thorisiano might well strike him. The Greeke neuer receiued a greater blow: for hee smote him on the bymme of the Helmet, and with a little more had stricken it from his head, making him bow lower then he would haue done: and before he could recouer himselfe, he gaue him a fore thrust, and hit him luckily in the top of the haunches, and was the first that dyed his sword in the Tinacrians blood. The rest (which remained) freezed in his bodie, and roling within himselfe, more fiercely then a furious Tiger, he ranne vpon Thorisiano. Had Mars himselfe seene him come with that furie, he would haue bene afrayde of him.

There was no steeld shield, nor planks of fine treele, but all was too little against the furie of the Tinacrian. Hee strake away his shield, and it was a great chance, that hee had not done as much by his arme: the blow passed to his Helmet, with such force, that it made it flye from his head, breaking the buckles, leauing all his face bloudie, which came out at nose and eyes. Where with was heard a great shout in the field, crying, The More Ladies Champion is dead.

The Tinacrian seeing him so laye, and so amazed, was

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

was moued with compassion, and to doe that which he neuer did, which was, to hold his hands: for if he had stricken him againe, it had been the last battaile that euer that Prince had fought. But he stayed to let him take breath; & when hee was fully recovered, making himselfe ready for his defence, he sayd vnto him, I would not, sir Knight, that your great mind should bee any occasion of your disgrace, for which I should bee lozie: you are wounded and disarmed; the best course will bee, to giue euer the battaile without farther contention.

The vnknighted Thorisiano was of good behauiour, and seeing his gentle offer, hee sayd, I am verie lozie, sir Knight, that by so many wayes you haue the victorie of mee: but seeing the heavens haue so ordained it, all is for the best, and which best sitteth mee. The Tinacrian tooke his answer verie kindly, calling to his Squire for the Helmet which he gaue him, saying, I will not that your Shield remaine with mee, as a signe that you are overcome, but for a token that I am yours. The courteous speeches of the Tinacrian did greatly winne the hearts of all those which were in the field. The yong man went forth of the Lists, of whom was made great account for the valour of his person.

There was made a great noyse in the campe: for Don Argante had taken the place with so angry a countenance, that all men perceiued with how great furie hee came. All this was nothing to mocue the Tinacrian. For with greater mildenesse then in such a case was requisite, hee went to the place where the Launces were, and there hee chose a great Lance: and putting vp his Reuer to take the ayze, and so wipe away the bloudie sweate, (for neuer did any Knight endure so much in so little time) hee encouraged his Kubican, and giuing him the spurre, hee became as fresh as the wind, when it cometh forth of his darke dungeons, and then with a wonderfull and incredible swiftnesse hee made towards

The fourth booke of the third Part

the disguised louer. They met with so great noise, that if two great Carricks had met in a rough sea, they could haue made no greater. The Fenician with the force of the encounter, lost his horse reynes, but he quickly recovered them: they turned their horses with such a grace, that Mars could haue done it with no greater. Trebatius his Sonne being mounted vpon his Rubican, had the advantage of all the world, and with that strong armour: for in it (notwithstanding so many battailes) there was not one scarre to be seene: but as the Sonne went downe into the Spanish Seas, there was no sayzer sight to be seene, then the colours and reflection which it made, which sufficeth to make Luzela to loue him: which is full to see him, sayd to the sayze Rosolua, I doe beleene that but for your beautie, the Prince could neuer haue atchieued so many battailes with so much honour. Nay, from your beautie, faire Princess, springeth his valour which he hath shewen, quoth the Princess, and let vs see how he fareth with him in the green scarfe, who in my opinion is valiant. The one tooke his course more swift then thought, against the other. They met, and made a fearefull noise at the breaking of their Launces, whose splinters flew out of sight, they entred so farre into the region of the ayre.

They were both couragious: and as they returned, the Fenician hauing lost both his Stirrups, which he so quickly recovered, that it was scarcely perceiued. The Tinacrian presuming of his Rubican, would needs make a proude attempt, but his hope failed him: for this louer was one of the most readie men in the world, & in this case would rather dye, then bee overcome. For as the Tinacrian approached (putting his horse aslee, he made him to lose his blow, giuing meanes to Argante to smite him as he passed by, a mightie blow backwards, making him to lay his brest on the Saddle pummell. He hastened after him, and both together met with such force, with their Shielos and Helmes, that both of them without any

power

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

power to auoyde it, fell together to the ground. The Tinacrian fell vpon his feete, although so troubled, that whilst hee was in that passion, the Fenician had time to rise again, but so brused with the fall, that hee much doubted of the battaile. But hee was so couragious, that therewith he supplied that imperfection, and on foote, held himselfe sufficient to giue battaile to Hercules. The battaile was worthe to bee seene by such persons: for both their dexterities were such, as made all the beholders amazed. But it was quickly seene, that the Greeke had the better: for (as it hath beene already sayd) hee had the aduantage of all men. His aduersarie would haue closed, to haue wrestled with him, hoping thereby to haue gotten ground. The Tinacrian was well breathed, and had his sword with the poynnt forwards, which the Greeke crossed, meaning to beare by the blow: but hee understood his enemies meaning: for hee was not well fitted to that ward, when letting fall his Shield and Sword, hee closed with him so suddenly, that Poliphebus could not helpe himselfe with his armes. This Louer tooke so good hold of him, that he raysed him from the earth, and had he bin any other then Garrofileaes sonne, he had layd him all along vpon the ground, getting great part of the Lists vpon him: whereat the people made so great a noyse, that the Tinacrian became as fierce as a Basiliske, and taking footing, hee recovered all that hee had lost.

Thus they struggled together ouer the field, beating themselves out of breath, untill that at last, the Tinacrian holding himselfe disgraced, with a round wheeling about, layd him all along vpon the ground, where, in despite of him, (although that hee therewith was more troubled, then hee had beene all the day before) he made him leaue his Shield for a remembrance of his overthrow: which all men did so admire, that they knew not what to say, seeing that braue Knight overcome, who was more furious then a Lyon.

The fourth booke of the third Part

The Tinacrian went into his Tent, to take something of the Symphs, to refresh him of his wearines, which Lu- zelaes aunt had given them. He stayed but a little, for now the Sonne beganne to annoy his neybr, and already was come into the Lists. No worse man then the Prince of Assyria, Don Ciarnel, who desirous to be avenged for his two deare friends, brandishing a great Lance, came ten at the Tinacrian. He struggeled with which were gi- uen would haue cleft a Rocke, and yet not them, which bore shulds more hard then the hart of Diamond. The Assyrian was borne backe in his Saddle, with the force of the encounter, although so little, that it was scarcely per- ceived: but they rather sayd (as it was true indeede) that hee was the most valiant of them all, which had entred into battaile with the Prince of Amacia. They returned with an excellent grace, and with their strokes, each of them towed both ne to the Saddle. They seconded them with others, which with their blood bore witness of their valour.

The Assyrian was skillfull, and wore an excellent Sword, although that against the Creeke Lyons Armour, the goodnesse thereof serued to small purpose. And so the furie of the battaile was referred to the strength of the arme, striking him so cruelly, that all his flesh was blacke and blew.

The Assyrian escaped no better cheape: for his armour could not defend him, but that the blow came forth in sundrie places, not without some grieffe to Florinda, who knowing how much that Prince loved her, she could not chooke but love him againe, and bee sozie for his hurts: the sight of his blood did rechaunge his strength. Wherefore taking his Sword in both hands, he set vpon the Tinacrian, who could not auoide the blow, which came with such furie, that it made him set one hand to the ground: hee ouer- took him with another, which made him set the other to ground, to keepe him from falling downe-right.

There

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

There was neuer Ulper troden vpon, that returned like to this angry yong man: it serued to small purpose to haue a shield: for beating it to his head, hee made it so thunder about his eares, that hee went crosse-legged, ready to fall. He helpe him so; wards with a mightie thrust, with such force, that if the Louer had not wound about, letting it passe, it had killed him: and for all this, hee made him set both his hands to the ground: but he arose again with more discretion then the Tinacrian imagined, who staied, seeking oportunitie to strike him without danger. The Assyrian presented him, setting one knee to the ground, letting the thrust passe ouer his head: and therewithall thrusting out his arme, he smote him on the left legge. The Greeke bescarde, thought that he had surely lost it, the blow was so terrible: and drawing it after him, he became as fierce as a hungry Lyon, and with both hands saute the Assyrian such a blow vpon the shield, that it cut away a pece thereof, wounding him somewhat in the shoulder: and therewith closed with him, fearing (because it was almost night) that hee should not overcome him by day light; which would haue much graued him. They came to catch that catch may, where was a terrible strugling: but as the Tinacrian led Fortune by the fore-locke, hee made him hold companie with the rest: yet he went out of the field with double honour, so much extolling the Tinacrian, that his fame passed the cloudes. Into the place came one of the most choyse knights in all the fieldes, he was armed in blew, set with hearts of gold, so well and so artificially, that it was very pleasing to behold. In the middelt of the shield, which was of the same colour that his armour was, he bore Fortune depainted, as if she with her hand raysed him from the earth, although with small contentment, with this saying:

My hand will serue thee to no end,
Or other helpe that I can lend,
If thy Lady and loue be not thy friend.

The fourth booke of the third Part

There was no man in that place, but tooke pleasure in that small show, which fortunes Knight had shewd: for so they all called him, who comming to the Tinacrians Tent, and knowing his beloued Rosaluna, there is no grise comparable to that which hee felt, when hee saw that it was for her, that this Knight fought these combats, and that hee tooke pleasure therein. The disease of iealousie touched him, and seeing that no man came into the Lists, spurring his horse, he entred, all men wondring at his good countenance. Poliphebus made meere account of him, then of any of the rest past, being much delighted in beholding his good constitution, perswading himselfe, that he should accordingly be verte strong. With a slow pace bearing his lance vpon his arme, the mightie Tinacrian went towards him: and putting vp his Beauer, seeing that hee was not of the Moores Campe, he said,

Malicious Knight, in my Cartel I challenge onely those which are in the Campe, defending the beautie of the Moore Ladies, against her which commandeth my soule, and so seeing that you are none of them, I cannot enter into the combat with you. This made him more haucie, to heare the mild reasons of the Tinacrian, getting that in deede it was for feare, and so he answered him, For many causes I may haue the combat against you: for I assure you, that in the Campe is that whereto I owe most dutifull loue, and the like in your Case, so as I may well fight with you. I doe belecue it, answered the Tinacrian. But yet, except you maintaine the beautie of the Moore Ladies, I am not to fight with you, these fiftene dayes, and then there will want no occasion for you and me to meete. It may not bee endured that I should goe forth of these Lists, without making you know the error which you uphold, and although that I may not shew you my Ladie, which is here present, and that you are not worthe to maintaine such a challenge for her, I doe challenge you to fight presently. The yong man was so much displeased herewith, that hee was about to
turne

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

turne his horse, and had done it, but for displeasing those of the Campe, who attended to fight, and said unto him, I neuer thought, that by vsing you courteously, I should haue giuen you occasion, to shew such pride: but because I will not deferre the reuenge, let he goe to the Iudges, and they shal say, whether that I may enter into this single combat with you or not, hauing onely challenged the Princes of the Campe.

All the Iudges, which were foure Kings, said, that hee could begin no battel without leaue from the ladies. Stay, presumptuous Knight, said fortunes Knight, for I will goe to demand it; for your death both as much import me, as my owne life. He went to the proud Charlot where the Ladies were, where doing a slight reverence, hee said, Honourable Princes, seeing the great valiancie of the knights which were appointed to be of your partie, and for that you haue reposed this matter in their hands, I haue not presumed to intrude to bee of so valorous a number, but by another way I hope to let you know, he is much in the world there is due vnto you, and thereupon I haue telled the Knight with the Eagle, vpon this, that hee is not worthe to maintaine such a challenge; but hee may not fight with mee hereupon, without your leaue: although that I haue not deserued it, yet relying on that desire which I haue to doe you seruice, I beseech you to giue me leaue, seeing there yet remaineth time enough for these Princes, to answer the challenge. The most strong Beimbodue here, to heare the Knights Ambassage: to whom (when the Campe of the Romanes saw him) shee said, This Knights request, seeing it concerneth you, is to be answered according to your liking, whereupon all these Ladies and my selfe will stand. The pride wherewith he answered y^e courtesans Tinacrian, had almost angered him, & thinking that hee would giue account of himselfe, he said, There is no more to bee said, but that I may goe with your good leaue: for I shal stand in need thereof. The Pagan humbled himselfe vnto the Ladies,

The fourth booke of the third Part

although not to Bembo, whereat he was not a little offended. And returning to the Greeke, he said with a loud voice, that all those which were in the place might heare it: For so, you cowardly Knight, the Ladies desire to see how dearly your presumption will cost you. At the least, if pride may heare it (answered the Timacrian) there was neuer scene a more valiant then you. Let the battell begin presently, wherein I will shew you better hands, then you doe mee a tongue.

The Judges stayed them, saying, that after Sunne set, a particular combat was not to bee allowed, and therefore they were to stay untill the morrow. Let it bee as it shall please you, answered Fortunes Knight: for I neuer was in any Countre in my life, where combats were admitted with so many conditions. He went from the Lists and the Campe also, because he would not bee knowne, before that battell were ended: for you shall understand, that it was the most strong Lindoriano, who knowing in Tinacria, that they had stolen away his Ladie Rosilaira, went to seeke her, untill that in Piquea, hee remembred to come to the aide of his Father the Souldan: for where there were so great assemblies of men, hee might peradventure heare of her: and his fortune brought him in so good time as this: and although that he were one of the most courteous knights in the world, yet jealousye did so torment him, that it made him shew his pride.

Those in the sumptuous Charlots, came to salute the Greeke Ladies, betwene which past many discrete speeches, the great Trebatius inviting them to the Citie, during the time of the Truce. Some were glad thereof, whereof Arbolina Princeesse of Scotland was none of the last, who looking among those Princes, found out her belov'd Florisarte, so gallant, and so brave, that she would that she had had another soule, to have imparted one unto him in payment.

Also it did somewhat revive the spirits of the Roman Prince,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Princess, to see her Don Heleno. Where which speed wezt at this meeting, was the gallant Eufronisa, who could not see her belov'd Rosabel, who was secretly gone to visite his trike, who did not a little regard him, when the Ladies departed from the Campe. The valiant Tinacrian went to accompanie the Grecke Ladies, till they were out of the field, where he took his leave, saying, that he could goe no further.

With great joy the Ladies receiv'd him, passing the rest of the night in pleasant discourses, although the Tinacrian were so angrie with the Knight of Fortune, that he longed to haue him by the eares. Arbolinda desired nothing so much, as the day, because shee would send a message to the Prince of Tharlis.

In the next Chapter you shall know what passed: for now it is time to take rest.

CHAP. XXV.

Of the cruell battell betweene
the two Princes.



Ye power of Love, valorous Dames,
doth now so writhowme, that in the
middest of so much bloud as here is
spilt, I cannot chuse but steale a little
time to treate of the disease of Love,
and what power it hath in the soules
of the gallant Arbolinda, who came
to her lodging, even Loue-sicke,
which did so gripe her, that shee could not soe care to send to
speake a word with her lover, vnder the name of Armino,

The fourth booke of the third Part

which was the name which he took, when in the habite of a Squire he went with Florisante, as in the second part of this true Historie is declared.

And taking paper and inke, she wrote a letter to the Prince, which she gave to a favorite of hers, to give the same unto him, so soon as the appointed battell should be ended. And here with the Ladie reposed her selfe, attending the day, which appeared so faire, that it seemed that the Sunne had sought out new & more bright shining beames: for he shewed himself more faire, then when he was heard of man, and kept his flocks by the shores of Siliſia. Through all the Citie (for so had Rosabel commaunded, that at the break of day, they should discharge the watch with a peale of Ordnance, giving a merrie good morrow) the great captaine Astrucio from the Sea answered them, who leaving his charge with his Cousin, went disguised to the shore to see those battells. The Ladies came forth of their Campe in their mightie Chariot, and hard by them, those which remained for the battell. The faire Greke Ladies came accompanied, as well with beautie as with knights: for all the best of the Citie came with them. They took their standing, attending the coming of the Ladies of the tent, the which were clad all in green ent upon Coyntation, so faire, & therewith they did assure the palme of victorie to the knight with the Eagles; who mounted upon his mighty horse, came armed at all pices in greene Armour, with so many artificiall knots, and such abundance of pretious stones, that more could not be wished for: hee bare in the middle of his shield his usuall Eagle, so excellently well drawn, that it seemed to be alive, and had changed the inscription: for by the Perons he had this motte:

Well may firme affection,
Which is fixt and will not start,
Assure it selfe of iust reward,
And certaine solace for the hart.

The

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The Greeke Ladies were much delighted with the Tinnacrians pleasant deuice, who doing reuerence vnto them, with a great Launce in his hand, expected the cominges of his enemy, who was not slacke in coming into the lists, armed with his strong Armour: and without speaking one word, seeing his beloved Rosaluna clad in the same colours as the Knight was; as malicious as a serpent, he made towards him as swift as the wind. The two famous warriors brake their Launces into small pikes, although the Pagan in the encounter lost one stirrop, with a foule backe bending in his saddle: Our Prince did likewise double somewhat in his, but it was so little as could hardly be scene. He was so earnest and so cholericke, that he did not see the time to bee reuenged according as hee desired; but spurring his horse, he passed so far forwarde, y^e he could giue no blow to the purpose: which the warlike Pagan percepuing, gaue him (before that he could cleare himselfe from him) so huge a blowe athwart the Helme, that it made his teeth chatter in his head; and coming with another with no lesse force, he smote him in the middle of the shield; which although he could not pierce for the finenesse of the mettall, yet he bore it against his head, adding more payne to the former, making him to forget himselfe: and with the third he set vpon his horses necke.

All men wondered at the fiercenesse of the Pagan; but much more at the angry lookes wherewith Garrofileas son turned to see himselfe so ill intreated. Hee expected no defence in his shield, which he threw at his backe, and as an enraged Knight he set vpon him of pique.

Euery body was afraid, and he (as strong as he was) was afraid; for raising himselfe in his stirrops, hee gaue him one of the most cruell blowes that had bene giuen in all those battels: for hee smote him off a great corner of his shield, & the terrible sword falling vpon his left shoulder, left all that side disarmed and sore wounded, and before he could sit himselfe again, he gaue him a thrust, but it was sidelong:

The fourth booke of the third Part

it was great hap that hee had not nayled the one side to the other, but it carried away the side of his breast-plate, & part of his shirt of Maille, casting him backe vpon his horses buttocks. The Timaerian shewed courtesie to many men, but this Flower had much offended him, and so saving him in that taking, trusting much to his Rubican, he meant to end the battell, by treating him vnder his horses tate. But this young man, who had bene in many fights, before he could come at him, made his horse to bound, making him to misse of his cruell intent: and so he passed so farre so, wards, and with such sarie, as made many to laugh, although hee were none of them: he so returned with greater saue, then the Hungrie Lion into the heard. They both together strake vpon their rich Helmete, and saw within them the cleare skie, when it is most darke. They doubled their first blowes, making their blood to beare record of y^e force of their armes: if they had giuen the third, I beleue, that with their lines they had ended the sport: but they both withheld, entering like skilfull men of waire. The Asquian his sword sped best, because that his enemye striking aloft, and finding resistance, letting fall the point of his sword, hee gaue him a pzeud thrust beneath his breast-plate, and bare away more then a hundred Mailles of his shirt, with part of his thigh.

Trebatius his sonne ranne out of his wits, when he felt himselfe hurt in the thigh: hee cared not for such preparati-
ons as men doe vsually make: so he suddenly hurled at him, with a mightie blow vpon the Helme, and made it cleane to his head, giuing him a shrewd hurt: hee came vpon him with an other, which put him quite besides himselfe, and with better harte then before, he closed with him, and without being any way able to defend himselfe, hee pluckt him from his Saddle, leaping with him to the ground, where the Pagan seeing the danger wherein hee was, held the Timaerian fast, where they began a dangerous wrestling, with great quantitie of blood falling from either of them. It made all men to admire, to see how long they did endure the fight,

123456789101112

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

fight, with such force and obstinate, with a fierce plucke, the unseised falling one from another, with great admiration to all that were present, holding the Knight of Fortune for couragious, seeing hee could so long make his part good against the Tinacrian, who (thinking that his long stay would bee noted for cowardise) began to presse his enemy with such force, that he made him to shift from side to side, being almost out of breath; but he defended himselfe so well, as purchased him great credite, but it lasted but a little: for within thre houres after the battell began, the advantage did plainly appeare on the Tinacrians side. Hee perceived it, being willing to shorten the battell, which was likely to haue bene to his owne hurt: for the Boze being well aduised, seeing him comming close, stayd for his comming, and before that he could deliuer his blow, he gaue him one, which made him put his hands and knees to the ground. Where was neuer any knight scene in such a chase as was the Tinacrian; for rising againe vpon his feete, hurling his sword about his head, he gaue him athwart the Helmet, a terrible blow, which made him goe backwarde ready to fall: he holpe him forward with two thrusts one after another, shaking with anger: but he seiled him, and then more light then a Bird he set vpon him, bidding him to yeeld, who for feare of death, and in hope to bee reuenged in the field battell, yeelded, with such feare to the rest which remayned, as is incredible; for now there was no talke but of his great valour.

Many sayd that it was Claridiano; for he had bene long missing from the Greeke Court: for of the rest of the Greeke Princes there wanted not one. The Prince was neuer so wearied in any battell as in this: wherefore to bee cured of his hurts, as other wise to rest himselfe, he speedily went into the Tent where the Nymphes were, who very carefully cured him, which studied nothing else but to giue him content in all things.

Hee againe came forth out of the Tent, whereat they

The fourth booke of the third Part

wentred more then at his battels: for according to the lincynesse of his countenance, it seemed as though he had done nothing. He chose him a great Lance, wayting for him which would next come, which sayled not; for the byrnie Celindo toke the matter in hand, who was knowne to many by his Armes.

Of this battell many were doubtfull, imagining that the unknowne Prince was more couragious then y^e Grak. They made one at another as swift as the wind, at which time there was a great rumour in the campe, about knowing of the knight of fortune: for the Scouldan his father, seeing him so sore hurt, would not that they should proceed with those battels any farther, but that they should reioice the warre, being very desirous to be reuenged for all together: and had not Bembo bene present, without doubt it had bene so, who saw that therein he should hazard his honour, which he dissembled. The wise Lupertius cured him, but could not imagine what knight that should bee which was so couragious and valiant: for the wise Lady had better provided for her Nephew, (for so she toke him) to end these aduentures: who spurring his good horse Rubican, the Scouldan being now turned to behold them, they met in their cariere with so great noyse, as though two great rocks had met. The Tinacrian encountred him so luckily in the middest of the Weer, so as he disarmed his head, and made him to misse the shecke. He returned againe vpon him, holding the successe of that blow for exceeding good fortune: and before that hee could drawe Duke Iulians precious sword, with his hee had given him two blowes one after another, which was a thousand to one, but that he had killed him, hitting him athwart the Helme, without touching the force-part, where a great force was gone.

The enamored young man returned as fierce as a Basiliske, and with his rich sword, smote the Tinacrian vpon the Helmet, which was as much as if hee had smitten vpon a hard well tempered Lell, and therewith made him
shake

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

shake like an Aspen leafe: he returned with another so soon, that before that he could defend himself, or set himself in any good order to fight, he had againe striken him in the same place, and made him bow downe his head to the horses necke. There was neuer seene a readier Knight, then the Sonne of Meridian, who seeing the yong man somewhat pestered, bearing his Sword hand close by his side, he gave him a strong & a luckie thrust, which bere away his haubtyace, taking it with in the mynt: and it was great lucke, that he had not thrust him thorow the arme. Saturne neuer hurted himselfe more angrie against Mars, then the Tinacrian did against the Sonne of Floralinda: so turning his good sword about, he smote away his shield at one blow, cutting those bands which hung on his arme; and but that he drew back, he had put his arme in danger, which notwithstanding did much torment him. They now care no more for defence, but turning their horses close together, as though they smote vpon Anvilles, so did these warriors vpon their Helmes, amazing all that beheld them.

The Knight of the campe (quoth the king of Macedonia, and Grandfather to the Prince) is of a mightie strength, but I beleue that no man can compare with the Knight with the Eagle: And had I not seene his face, thereby assured that it is not Claridiano, I should haue thought that it had bene the same: for I neuer sawe man so like him, in lordly grace, and comelinesse in battailes, as hee is. Your highnesse saith truth, answered the great Zollo, and I beleue that the Pagans haue met with one, who will give them enough to doe. I expect nothing, (quoth the sayre Archiflora) untill the two yong men come in: for men of greater courage the world containeth not.

The warriors left no time, which being out of breath, were yet more furious then the raging sea. It seemed vnto the unknowne Macedonian, that hee spent much time in

The fourth booke of the third Part

that battaile, and the Tinacrian thought no lesse. It seemed also that they agreed in one: for lifting vp their swords, they smote so great blowes, that cleane without any feeling, they fell vpon their horses neckes. Garrofileas sonne within a while came againe to himselfe: hee was neuer wont to charge at aduantage, but now hee was so blind with passion and furie, that he forgate himselfe, carried away with desire to ouercome, and so seeing his enemy, who as yet was scarcely come to his remembrance, with two iumpes he was with him, iust as he came to himselfe; yet he could not strike him, but tooke him at such aduantage, that hee pluckt him out of his Saddle, giuing him so great a fall against the ground, that he could hardly rise, he was so sore bruised therewith.

All the Pagans campe was verie sorry for Don Celindos mishap. Luzelaes Loner leapt after him, and before that he knew where he was, he gaue him two blowes one after another, which put him past all remembrance, leauing him breathlesse vpon the ground, taking from him the best Shield that euer hee got, and was glad in his soule, that he had so ended the battaile.

Each did those foure shining Lampes of beauty, extoll the baliaunce of the Tinacrian. Let vs attribute it, quoth the sayre Policena, to our fauour: for it is not possible that it should come elswhere. He would make a new challenge hereupon, sayd the sayre Aurelia: for I rather beleue, that it proceedeth from the Ladies which hee bringeth in his companie, who are endued with no lesse beautie then courtesie, in fauouring so warlike a Knight. Well may hee be called fortunate, sayd the sayre Jewish Aramisa, seeing that they strue to giue him contentment, who are able to giue and take it away, in despite of loue it selfe. Where remaineth yet (sayre Ladies, quoth the secretly enamoured Rosalinda) so much for him to doe, that in my opinion, this may be referred to the end of all these battailes. She sayd this in regard of Bembo, whome she
loved.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

loved with her soule. The pudent attempt of Fleralifa put them from this matter, who seeing her brother euer come, there was no wonder that he wold it selfe so malicious. This Lady had a most delicate horse: for in his course he would haue outrunne euen thought it selfe. Shee gaue him the spurre, who passed his carriere swifter then any Eagle, and at their meeting made a greater myele, then when a great high built house falleth to the ground: they passed with an excellent grace the one from the other.

There was no man among the Crakes that knew the Lady, for she came disguised, for feare that the Knight should refuse the battaile against her. And hereupon was much suspicion among them, who this might be, seeing it was the first that matched the yong man in the carriere. The Lady was of a mightie courage: for if Mars himselfe had bene in the field, he wold not haue refused him in the single combat, with that Lords sword, which was the Trojans greatest enemy. Shee made towards the Creek so speedily, that it was his good will, although hee much felt the blow: for in receiving it, it made him bow downe as low as his Saddle. The Lady lost no opportunitie; for shee was one that used all diligence: and so, before that the Gallant could recover himselfe, shee, which loved him farre better then her owne soule, gaue him a second.

¶ Strange effects of love! The warlike Damsell entred with her shield some what farre from her brest, and came so neere to him, that before that he could deliver his blowe, shee gaue him so strong a thrust, as had almost set him besides his saddle, and made him to lose the halfe of his strength. The Lady gat hereby, other wise it had gone hard with her; for with that little which shee gaue her, shee made her to see a thousand scars vnder her faire browes, and troubled her so with the blow, that thereby he gat meanes suddenly to giue her another.

The fourth booke of the third Part

He smote her crosse the Helme, and smote her so much to one side, that he had almost ouerthrowne her to the ground.

There was neuer any Duncelike her, for she piced the young man so well, that shee put the battaile a thousand times in doubt, which his Lady gaue him to vnderstand. for she carreyed her selfe so in her standing, as though the blowes which he receiued vpon his armour, had pierced to her heart. The Tinaccian perceiued it, and imagining as it was, hee charged the Daughter of Meridian in such sort, as made all the assistants to wonder. The Ladies haue made so no signe to that Knight (sayd Venus) for the fiercenesse wherewith he set vpon his aduersarie, can proceede from no other cause: for nothing doth so much encourage warriours, as the fauour of their Ladies. The second Venus sayd not so, without reason: for hauing seene his Ladies countenance, hee was so grieued, that hee would that that Knight had beene Mars. But for all that he could doe, the Lady defended her selfe so well as could bee wished.

The Tinaccian entred like a master at the warrres, meaning at his pleasure to haue giuen her a great blow, bearing his sword aloft: but the warlike Patron vnderstood his pretence, and suffering him to come neere to her, with an excellent quicknesse shee foyled his ward, and with her sword in both hands, shee gaue the Duncelike vpon the Weuer, one of the most cruell blowes that euer hee receiued in his life: for falling vpon his horses necke, the bloud began to spout out at his mouth and eyes. There came a cold sweate all ouer those 2. Ladies, when they saw their Poliphobus in y taking. But that being past, there was neuer any Lion so furious as he shewd himselfe. For very desperately he flung his shield at his backe. There were few in the place but were afraide of his angrie countenance: and gnashing his teeth, he spurred his angrie Rubican, and was so soone with her, that she had no time to defend her: for he smote her vpon the rich Helme so as with, that he could not pierce

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

pierce it, yet he brake all the rivets on that side: which the yong man well perceived, and giuing her another, that the bloud sprung out, hee set hand to her Helmet, and with a touch pluckt it away, leauing her conered with a fine Chaine of gold. All the companie was stricken with admiration, when they perceiued that shee was a woman. The Ducene of Lira knew her, and doubting that Poliphebus would haue vled her discourteously, she would haue gone down to entreate him to giue ouer the battaile, for the great loue which she bore her, euer since they had bene together in *Tinacria*, as is aforesayd: But the Greeke was so grateful, considering how much loue this Lady had shewen him in time past. He sayd vnto her, You hauing so good assurance of your part, valorous Lady, haue longed your beautie, to seeke it with your victorious hands, which if in ought I haue offended, as I doubt not but that I haue much, you may with lesse cost take iust reuenge, although that coming hither vpon commandement, it may somewhat excuse mee. The victorie is yours, and so are all in the world due to your beautie and worthinesse, and so I beseech you in token thereof, to take my shield. To beare a pawn from so warlike a Knight, (quoth the Lady) ought to haue bene done by some valorous knight, for it is not iust that we should take that, which to your worth belongeth, seeing that you haue so well woonne it: for I am yours, overcome in battaile, which other wise I will not bee.

She would haue left her shield, which was held for an exceeding greatnesse of mind, for it was one of the fairest in the world. But the *Tinacrian* would not perle thereto, but rather accompanying her forth of the Lists, offered her his seruice: and so returned to his tent, desisting the rest of the battels vntill the enening; for these already ended, had somewhat wearied him. Bembo seeing what honour that Knight had gotten vpon his deare friends, came forth like a Lyon. There was a great hope of those which remained, that they should againe recouer that, which the

The fourth booke of the third Part

rest had lost. In the standings, whether the Emperoz commanded meate to be brought for dinner, there was no speech so long as it lasted, but of the valour of this Knight. If ever he had neede, saye Ladies, of your fauour, sayd Liciana, it will be this euenig: for I am of opinion, that there remaine some behind, which will put him to his shifts: and God grant that hee fall not into their danger. Wee shall not, sayd the saye Rosamundi: for sith that these Ladies fauours haue serued his turne, so; to good a beginning, and middle it will be (no doubt) sufficient, to make a glorious end of that which remaineth. They all wished it, so; they loved him in their soules, and were neuer well, vntill they might againe returne to see him. Those of the campe stayed not long at dinner, they were so sharpe set: and the Creekes being aware of their coming, came to the standing windowes to behold them, whose sight do serueth a new Chapter.

CHAP. XXVI.

Of the cruell battaile fought betweene the youth Cleobulo, and Poliphebus of Tinacia, with what happened to Florisante of Argentaria.



Raire Ladies, by offencrauing your ayde (as is reason) I am become troublesome to you. But my necessity, & so great occasion is offered me, that I cannot forbear to repaire anew vnto you, for some new fauour, whereby I may bee able with a pleasing stile, to deliuer vnto you, the manner of foure of y^e most famous battels that euer were fought in the world: so; they which fought them, were the flower of all valiance, and so; such a cause, as would haue made a Lambe a Lion. There were many cruell blowes giuen, but those which the Ladies gaue to these youths, could neuer be cured, but by them which gaue them. No man employes him

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

himselfe so well, nor with more reason, then the sonnes of Eufronisa, which (notwithstanding their brave and courageous hearts) yeelded their soules to two Princesses of Grecia, whose brave beantie would haue expelled the first Venus. Wheto whom the gentle Leobulo subiected himselfe, was the gallant Aurelia, daughter of the valorous Tartarian Zoylo, and the fayre Princess Tighiafi, whose loue gaue occasion to this Prince, and his elder brother, to worke wonders, as I will (the Muses assisting mee) declare in the fourth part. Well did Luperius know what peace would grow of these warres, and that hee should be a friend to the Grecks. But hee was so much offended for the imprisonment of his fellow Scholler Selagio, that he sought to bee reuenged of the Greeke Princes. The destruction of Troy was neuer so much desired, as was now the ruine of Grecia. And although that he would that these youtnes should haue dyed thereby, to haue despighted Rosabel, yet he forbore, to the end he might see the blood which they would shed in the Greeke fields, and in the behalfe of the Pagans. And for this cause, seeing the furious enemy, with whom they were to encounter, and the lucke of his hand, hee sent them certaine most rich enchanted Armours, which were of the best in the world, all russet, with certaine knots of colours, which made a marueylous faire shew. They both bare one deuice: for the gallant Claribel had chosen for his Soueraigne Lady, the fayre Policena, daughter of the valorous Polidolphus, and of the second Venus. In the middell of their shields they bare the Coat of Lions, giuing him for tribute the spoyles of their hearts and soules, with these words:

What may accounted pleasure,
Which doth yeeld no greater smart,
If loue therein haue no part?

Both the camps tooke great pleasure, to see these two:

The fourth booke of the third Part

gallant contented youtbes; which passing over the place, tooke the first standing, although there were some question about it, for the Knight with the Eagles had first desired the battell. Brufaldoro was almost mad, because he could not be first. The brave Lord of Achais challenged it to bee his. These five had fallen out about it, had not the Emperour of the Romanes, and theouldan of Spiquea taken up the matter, which brought them to agreement, which was, that they should draw lots: whereunto they agreed, because they would not fall out. The first lot happened to him, which in all was equall to the best, which was Leobelle, and the second to his brother, the third to the Knight with the stars, and next after him to Brufaldoro, and the last of all to the furious Bembo, who was as fierce as a Lion, who imagined that after those Knights, there would bee no meanes left for him to fight the battell: but the Timacrian did so well discharge himselfe, that hee gave them all their hands full. The youth came into the field, with so gallant a countenance, that all affected him: for putting up his Beauer, hee went to the Timacrian, who entertained him verie courteously, for they were marvellouslike: to whom the valereous youth said,

Righte Knight with the Eagle, although it bee a presumption for me to enter into the Lists with you, yet, for that my Ladie is fairer then thee, whom you have made Table of your scule, if you please, let our battell begin presently: if not, I will give place to these Princes which remaine to give end to theirs. The Greeke did highly esteeme the good speeches of the young man, imagining that they proceeded from a pure noble mind, & made answer, To the end, valereous Knight, that I might not fight with you, I would bee glad that you were excluded out of my Cartell: but being of the Pagans Campe, my challenge is to be verthard to extend as wel to the knights as the Ladies. The young man gave him no other answer, then by turning about his horse, and putting downe his Beauer, and tooke
so

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

so much ground as might suffice for his carriere. The Tinacrian did the like. Here, oh Philosophes of Pernassus, your helpe is wanting: and in no occasion, O Mercurie, thou canst employ thine better, then to explaine, with what grace the one parted from the other. As for me to intermeddle in the matter, I shal but wrong those valorous knights, which made the one towards the other, and came so soone together, as could not be imagined. Their strong encounters would haue soone broken the hard rocks: but they met with so hard bysses, that the haumers being shivered into small splinters, flew vp into the ayre as high as the clouds; true witnesses of the mightie strength of those two warriors, which without any meuing, as though they had bene lockt in their Sables, with a singular good grace passed along the one by the other: they returned with their swords aloft, and terrible were their blowes. The sparkles which flew from their shields, seemed to set them on fire. The Tinacrian lost the reynes of his bydle, and thought that the last day had bene come, hee heard such thundring about his eares: and out of his mouth came abundance of bloud, and hee was a while past remembrance. But the young man which had received a full blow, and from the best arme in the world, whose sword hath the best edge, fell vpon his Saddle bow bereft of his senses.

But his horse carried him ten paces off, and euerie body looked when he would fall: but when he came againe to himselfe, there was no Serpent that was troben vpon, nor Lyon in a feuer, that was so furious. The courage hee with which he came, made the sparkles of fire to flie out of his eyes. The Tinacrian came againe to himselfe, wondering at the mightie blow which he had received: and seeing his Cousin come so furious, hee thought it were but folly to stay for that blow: and as he was more nimble, and was better mounted, so he bare to one side, making him to lose his blow, which came with such force, that it made him to fall downe vpon his Saddle pumrell, so hard, that when he would haue set

The fourth booke of the third Part

led himselfe againe, he was not able : and the horse flinging his head at liberty, with two boundings cast him to ground, although he fell vpon his feete. The Eagle neuer stooped with greater fury after her pray, then the Timaerian did after the young man, which was not yet fifteen yeeres old : he was one of the most light young men of the world : and when hee came to perfect age, no man excelled him ; and so with a leape he came to the place where the Eagle alighted, and with a strong thrust hee bare him a great way backwards. His strong Armour saved his life ; for the sword had pierced thorow both his sides, had not such cunning handes forged it.

The Eagle stood no longer vpon his skill, seeing himselfe so battered ; but layd on such load vpon the new Louer, that he put him quite out of breath, not without losse of some blood. for against the Eagles sword there was no enchantment that could preuaile. Hee gaue him crosse the Helmet a cruell blow, hee thought by his staggering that he would haue fallen. Neuer was man so furious : for noting his enemies strength, he began to make bene fit of his skill. And the Timaerian meaning to ouerthrowe him with some side-blow, let fall his sword, and setting forwarde his other foot, with his shield ouer his head, gaue him an unhappy thrust, which the Eagle thought had put him in danger : for glancing, it chaunced to hit in the closing of the armour, where it entred into his left arme, drawing out blood in streames : & not therewith content, he pitcht his knee to ground, & smote him althwart the right thigh, giuing him another wound, although not great : hee could not escape, but that the Timaerian would giue him another knocke at his ease ouer the shield, & smote away a great part thereof : & trenchant sword fighting vpon the Helmet, gaue him so terrible a blow, that he set him vpon his hands & knees vpon the ground : he would haue layd him all along, striking him vpon the shoulder : but the young man stood firme, & laid hands on the son of Trebarn, who was not retchlesse, for y^e is most dangerous in such cases,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

cases, but suddenly drew out that famous dagger, with which
so many high enterprises were to be accomplished, and gave
him 2. Stabs, far enough more dangerous than the youth did
imagine: for trusting to his armour (which indeed was good)
he took no care to ward them, he thought he had bin woun-
ded to the death, & so in despaire (caused through his hurts) he
set his left hand upon his dagger hand, which he cross with
his right, & with maine force wrested it out of his hand, and
would have stricken him there with, and (without doubt) had
killed him, if he had not taken hold of his wrist, which he held
faster, then if it had bin tied with a Cable rope. Eufronisæes
sonne did not let slip the occasion: for seeing the Greekes buffe-
d, and his right arme at libertie, he wonderfully gat hold of
his legs, & lifted him from ground, who seeking to save him-
selfe, set with his head first to ground, pulling y^e youth down
after him: one sought to get advantage of another, and so
tumbling over the field, till they both were all bloody: at that
availling not, as light as two birds, they skipt to their wea-
pons. The youth was not so much vnto the, neither so rea-
dy, nor strong, by reason of his age, as his wel grown kin-
sman, who had the best sword & armour in the world. There
was small advantage to be gotten in this second battaile,
for that they were both so well armed: but the time came
when they were armed alike, & the youth came to riper age,
when he made him to sweate drops of blood, recovering
then, that which he loſt before. But now it was impossible to
match the Timacian, which in armes was so skillfull. But
for all this he so plyed him, that hee made him to shift from
this side to that, being galled with his wounds, & much more
with the feare to lose the battel: but this was y^e Timacians
day, as he made it well appeare: for the young man entred
with an excellent ward, which gaue great contentment to all
men, saying, that if hee & his brother lived to come to perfect
age, they would be the best men at armes in the world, as in-
deed they were. There was much sorow in al y^e camp, especi-
ally the knight with y^e stabs grieved (who loved him dearly)

The fourth booke of the third Part

When he saw that hee with the Eagle breaking his ward, on a sabaine cut away a great part of his Helmet, and the sword slit downe upon his breast: he also cut away the skirt of his breast-plate, with more then halfe of his Laces, and made him to shake like one that were in great feare: but the paine (which was great) being past, with his sword in both hands hee returned, and before that the Brooke could step from him, hee was likely to have laid him all along. The blow was so furious, and it was so great, that it dyed much blood, and put him out of breath.

Garrosileas sonne well perceived it, and holding the victorie for certaine, crossing his sword aloft, hee bare by a weake blow, through want of blood; and closing with him, he lifted him up from ground, before hee could recover his breath; and so in his Armes he sent him to the Knight with the Starres, his shield remaining with the Tinacrian. The two youtnes were so well belov'd in all the Pagan's camp, that a man cannot imagine what sorrow there was made for the overthrow of Leobello, and chiefly Bembo, who lov'd himselfe; and he with the Starres wept blood out at his eyes, in steade of teares. The gallant Claribel was so vexed, that he was besides himselfe: they began to disarme him, with such griefe to the King of Silepsia, and Sufonisa, as though that the one had knowne him for his nephew, and the other for her sonne.

When came Lupertius, who with his cunning stopped his blood, saying, that it was nothing: wherewith they were appeased all, saving the Ladies, who gave the Knight with the Eagle, a thousand curses. They were about to returne to the Campo, but it staid them to see the brave Brusaldoro, who seeing the Princes busie about Leobello, leaped into the Likes, more furious then the raging Sea. The Tinacrian was glad at the heart; for hee had many a day desired this battell, as hath bene before declared, about a Pagan's wife: hee knew him by his Armes, which was, a halfe Bowe in a blew sledo. The young man made halfe, because that

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

that Claribel should not challenge the fight, whose lot it was. In comming nere to the Shore, he said, He thinketh by your Armes, Sir Knight, that you should bee the King of Mauritanie, to fight with whome I haue much desired. The time is come (quoth the Shore) wherein we may end it, seeing thou hast so much desired it, but I would faine know with whome I should fight this battell. I will tell thee, said the couragious Tinacrian, vpon condition, that thou wilt sweare vnto me by the order of Knighthood, to keepe it secrete, until my challenge be ended. I will doe so, said the Shore. Then thou shalt know (answered the young man) that I am hee, to whome at Sea thou gauest the order of Knighthood, and which brought thy wife from the hands of those fierce Giants: and I am glad that so old a challenge shall now be ended, for I will not giue it ouer, until one of vs lie in the dust. Nothing could so well haue pleased the Pagan, who no lesse desired it then the Croake. Without answering one word, he went to his place, while as the young man refreshed himselfe, praying to the god of his Father to graunt him victorie, against that furious Pagan, with a determination to forsake his Law and to bee baptized. With this new bold, hee returned, more couragious, then with any thing that the Nymphes had giuen him, which charged him to be verie circumspect: for it should bee behouefull in this battell, because it should be the last. They were all verie attentive, without mouing so much as their eye-lids, for feare, that in the meane space they should encounter, and they not see them.

There was neuer any Galley that went so swift with sayles and Mares, driven by a fresh gale, as they flew one against another, ending their carrere, with farre greater noyse then the Sea maketh, when in a tempest it assaileth the firme rockes. On the shoares vnder they brake their Launces, as if they had haue little redes. The one passing by the other without any mouing, they turned their bodies, with their naked swords in their hands, giuing such blowes

The fourth booke of the third Pare

as caused great feare, euen in those which were farthest off. They were expert in Armes, and therefore they made good thewe, with charging and retiring with such speed, that thought could not ouertake them. The Greeke had the advantage, by reason of his rich Armour and weapons: for he neuer gaue blow but it was bloody: and although that he saw not his blood, he was so weakened with the blowes which he receiued, that it put him out of breath. The Knight entred, bearing his sword aloft, meaning to haue ouerborne him with a course: but the Pagan who in strength was equall to Milo, drawing backe his sword to one side, gaue him two thrusts one after another, which seemed vnto the Greeke as though he had broken all his ribs: He staid so long, by reason of his paine, that the furious African had meanes to strike him behind vpon the Helme; which although that the hardnesse thereof gaue him life, yet it could not save him from turning his head more to one side then he had would: he trusting in y^e strength of his armes, would needs close with him; but his presumption cost him deare: for y^e valorous Tinacrian, who although almost choked with blood, which ran out of his mouth downe his throte, had not therefore lost any part of his vnderstanding; but seeing him coming, he spurred his good horse Rubican so hard, y^e he made him to run vpon the Poyes horse: there was neuer seen a more fearfull shock in y^e world; for whether y^e Poye would or no, he fell, horse and man to the ground, which gaue him a shrewd fall. The braue Rubican fell backwards, setting his buttocks on y^e ground, so brused with the encounter, that hee could goe no farther forwards. The Greeke leapt from him, very glad that he was on foote; for in that maner he would haue giue the god Mars batteil. The Painim was also glad, who was both light and valiant, so as fortune gaue to them both that which they desired. They came one towards another like Gallers of sence: for the Painim bearing his shield at his brest, and his sword aloft, made towards the fierce young man, who came quite contrary; for

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

he bare all his bodge firme vpon his left foote: they came to crossing of their swords, each of them knowing the valour of his aduersarie. This ward lasted but a little while: for Trebatius his sonne changing footing, lifted vp his right arme, and suddainely with all his strength, strake him vpon the top of his Helmet with his rich sword, hee rapt away his Plumes, with part of his gilded Crest: and stepping backe, drawing his sword after him, he gaue him a thwart blow, which was the luckiest that hee gaue in all this battell: for hitting him below the skirt of his breast-plate, it strake away aboue a hundred peeces of his shirt of Mayle, cutting his Aces, and therewith part of his thigh, he could not so safely doe it, but that the Mauritanian fastned a blow vpon his most strong shield, and bare it to his head with such force, that it made him cast bloud out at his mouth and eares; he thought it had beene night, hee saw his Helmet so full of flarres.

The Pagan in these cases was not so carelesse, but that hee would giue him another before hee should recouer himselfe, and made him set his hands to the ground; hee would haue shouldered him, but hee found him as firt as a rocke, and came so nere vnto him, that the Tinacrian could not strike him, but casting his Shield at his backe, hee took hold of him, which he did so suddainely, that hee had almost throwne him to the ground.

The King of Mauritania recouered himselfe, and taking good footing, they began so to wrestle, that Mars did enuie them: the one assailed to trippe by the others heeles; they trample, they sweate, sometimes they gripe, and sometimes they locke legges, that it was wonderfull; all the companie did wonder, to see the furious obstinacie of these two warriours.

Sometimes wheeling about, they seemed as though they would haue fallne to the ground, sometimes they grasped, so as they were cleane out of breath: it seemed vnto the that

The fourth booke of the third Part

in this maner they spent much time, and so with a streng
whelling about, the one hurled the other away from him,
with greater force the if they had bin shot out of a Cannon.
They both fel on their knees, but it seemed, y in touching the
ground, they recovered new strength, by their furious run-
ning to their weapons, beginning the battaile anew, much
more cruell then at the first. Vulcan his workman made no
greater noise, when they forged Achilles Armour, then did
these two warriors, tormenting their flesh. These honours
did this second battaile endure, without any shew of wea-
rinesse, or any aduantage. The Tinacrian was in such a
rage, to see how that Knight did defend himselfe, and offend
him, that hee hastened his blowes in such sort, as hee
was dyed all ouer with blood. The Spoeze was hurt in
foure places, and the Tinacrian in two, both in the ioynts
of his armour. They both agreed to rest them: for there
was neuer any such battaile scene, that lasted so long, nor
that was maintained with such generositie; the couragi-
ous Tinacrian walking vp and downe, saying, Truly, I
know not how thou shouldst be called the sonne so such a fa-
ther, seeing that in his presence, and of thy misfortune, with so
many brothers and kinsfolkes, one of you hath brought
thee into this estate. The brave Spoeze was no lesse gree-
ued at the long day, who a thousand times renounced his
gods. This did so much grieve them, that in all haste (as
fierce as two Lyons, they ranne to their weapons. But in
this battaile, the aduantage appeared in the Creek, where
of all men were glad (I meane those which were of his
faction) but Bradorante was hee which most greeued at it:
for seeing y Brufaldro was once overcome, it should be no
disgrace for him to overcome him also, and for the other lesse
honour. He roared like a Bull, that he had not first challen-
ged the battaile: and had it not bene for the Emperour of
the Romanes, and the Soldan of Siquia, which pacified
him, he had, without doubt, leapt into the Lists, & challenged
them both the battaile. But they perswaded him to defer it
vntill

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

untill the battaile in the field, for that none of them but would be there. Florishta prevailed much with him, whome the fierce Pagan adored, who made him to do whatsoeuer hee would, concerning Brusalcoro, who now maintained not the battaile as at the beginning: for the yong man now ranged him at his command, and without doubt had overcome him, if the sunne had not ended their dayes wroke, which was the cause that the Iudges came betwixt them, alleading, that according to the lawes of the Grekes, they might no longer proceede in that battaile: which much grieved the Timacrian, who would rather haue ended that, then all the rest which remained, for that he had so much desired it. But for that hee would not giue any Agne of ill behauiour, hee withdrew, and the Barbarian went out of the Lists on foote, vnable to get to his horse, he was so sorely wounded. Hee went vp into the Chariot amongst the Ladies, returning with them to the campe, and the Grecke Ladies to the Citie, carrying with them matter enough, to talke of the ballancie of those two warriors, affirming that they had not their Peeres in the world. For this occasion stayed the messenger of Arbolinda, Princesse of Scotland, who turned in Leues fire for Florisarte of Argentaria, who coming vnto him, for hee had learned which was hee, and giuing him the letter, hee sayd that hee came from Artunio his old Squire, who was newly come to the campe, desiring him that the next day hee might haue an answer. The constant Loeu secke the Letter, and withdrawing himselfe from the Squire, hee went to his lodging, and reading it, saw that it layd thus:

The Letter.

THe forgotten Artunio, to the valorous Prince of Argentaria and Tharsis, greeting. I doe not write, soueraine Knight, for that I am perswaded that absence

The fourth booke of the third Part

hath beene of power to make thee to change thy faith, as to call to thy memory, and to put thee in mind of the promise which thou diddest make to mee, to loue whome I would. Now is the time come to accomplish it: for the contentment was so great which I receiued in thy companie, that I haue procured by all possible meanes, to requite thy fayth. Be reuiued, if thou wilt bee adored: and because thou mayst see to whom thou gauest thy fayth, if thou dost remember her picture, thou shalt see the substance, which shall bee the Lady clad in greene, cut vpon cloth of gold, hard by the Princeesse of Rome: and thou shalt see, that her beautie deserueth constant affection. I desire no answer, vntill thou shalt see her whom thou hast loued, whom thou oughtest to loue, and by whome thou art beloued. The Gods keepe thee, and grant thee that rest which thou desirest.

It is not possible to describe the ioy, which this enamoured young man conceiued of this ioyfull newes, that his Lady was in the Campe: hee was a thousand times in the mind, to goe the next day disguised, to fight with the Knight with the Eagle: but hee had gotten little thereby; for the Tinacrian was too hard for him, who departed to his Lady, sufficiently ashamed, for that he could not overcome the Wagan: but they with the loue which they bare, did comfort him; to whome after the day was shut in, the Nymphes spake in this maner: Malicious Prince of Tinacria, you may well account your selfe for one of the most fortunate Knights of the world, hauing obtained such a father and brothers, which are held for the light thereof: and also for that the heauens haue preserved this Princeesse to be your wife, with the victories which you haue obtained in her seruice, which haue bene so many, as could not bee imagined in any other Knight but of you. The rest which remaineth, cannot be
ended.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ended, because there is this day a most mightie Pagan come, who is King of Comagena, with a great armie, and hath besieged a citie of importance, called Hircambela, destroying all the marches thereof: and so the tience being broken, there will bee no time to end your businessse: content you with that which is past, which hath bene so much, as will make them remember it so long as they live. There is no more to be done, but to morrow to make your selfe known to your warlike father, who will be very glad of you: as for vs, we were commaunded by this soueraigne Ladies aunt, that wee should accompanie her thus farre: and so she having no more neede of our companie, wee will to morrow returne to her, attending the time wherein we shall meet again with great contentment. Present this sent unto your father, for no Prince in the world hath received a better gift. The Armes which she gave vs for the last battaile with the Captaine of the Goozes, wee will leave to you: for seeing you shall often meete with him in sundrie battalles, we can with nothing pleasure you more, then with them. Some sorrow the three Princes shewed, when they understood that the Simps would be gone: but seeing that there was no remedie, they must haue patience.

Then came his beloved nephew Rosabel, who euerie night came disguised to see his Uncle, for there were no kinsmen in the world that more tearfully loued, or that better shewed it then they. They receiued him verie gladly, and hee verie briefely told them the newes of the siege of Hircambela, and how that succour was sent thither, vnder the conduct & command of the Prince Meridian, and how angrie his Grandfather was therewith, determining to giue them the field battaile presently.

The Goozes were no lesse sozie therat, especially the mightie Bembo, and because they should not thinke that it was done through his procurement, hee presently sent to excuse himselfe to the Graekes, and to Poliphebus,

The fourth booke of the third Part

which was noted in him for great generositie: and so Rosabel tooke his leave, attending newes from Meridian, which is left for another Chapter.

CHAP. XXVI.

How the Prince Poliphebus made himselfe knowne to the Emperour his Father, and of the good reliefe which Meridian brought to the besieged, and of the rest which followed.



The golden Apollo had scarcely discovered his golden lockes, which he had bathed in the Spanish Seas, when in foure parts of the great Citie of Constantinople, they sounded the alarum, in signe that the warres were renewed. The Pagans answered them with their accustomed instruments. All put themselves in a readines. The carefull Generall Oristoldo, angry and ashamed that the Moores had gotten the first onset upon him, went plotting some stratagem, whereby hee might be reuenged of them, and found out so good a one as shalbe declared, which was like to haue bene the totall destruction of the Moores.

All men prepared themselves for the field battell, which should be about eyght dayes thence: for the Emperour was weary of this long warre. The most mighty sonne Poliphebus made no longer stay, but tooke his leave of the Princes, with teares charging them to recommend him unto the wise Ladie. He went forth armed with the best Armour that was in the world, sending his Tent to the Grecke Emperour his father, to whom he went betwene the two Ladies, whose beauty dazeled the Sun, and made the most faire enuious. They were clad in lion colour,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

cut upon blew, and the cuts set with precious Stones of
 sundrie colours: they agreed with the Prince, whose ar-
 mour was of the same colour, set with so many Stones, that
 they could not be beheld, they gaue such a reflection like the
 sunne. The Emperour understood of their coming. Ro-
 sabel and his father, with many Princes, came to receiue
 the Tinnacrian, amazed at his beauty and constitution. Joy-
 ned with these Ladies, they came before his father, all three
 upon their knees, desiring to kisse his imperiall hands:
 who, for that hee knew them not, would not suffer it, allea-
 ging that it was a wrong to those which should doe it. Your
 Maiestie may suffer it, said his Nephew Rosabel, receiuing
 them for your Maiesties children. For the valiant Knight
 with the Eagle, is the famous Prince of Tinnacria, & this
 Lady (pointing to the sayde Rosalinda) is his sister, together
 with this royall Princesse of Egypt, Luzela, whom the hea-
 uens haue giuen to your deere sonne for his wife. The
 grane old Emperour wept for ioy, and embracing them
 he sayd, Now children of my loynes, my mind will bee at
 rest, hauing such a Prince in my companie as you are. The
 Ladies presently tooke him away, chiefly the foure yong
 girles, who had so much fauoured him: with which, and
 the rest of the Princesse, as well hee as the two Ladies,
 passed many things in making acquaintance. They kisse
 the hands of the Emperesse Briana, who entertayned them
 as her owne children. There was no time to stay long,
 for the Prince Meridian had sent word by other messen-
 gers, of the great harme that the Moors had done in all
 the frontiers thereof. This was anew to set all the
 Greeke campe in an vprore. To the Tartarian Prince
 Zoylo, was committed the leading of the Apulians and
 The Salians, with some part of the Frenchmen, for the
 arrere garr: (to the end yf they met with the enemye, they
 should fight with them, if they should see themselves in state
 to do it) there was neuer a famous Prince but went with
 Zoylo, euen to the Prince Poliphebus, al with close carkes,

The fourth booke of the third Part

because they would not be knowne. There was neuer any Captaine that commanded better companies : which the Tartarian knew, and sayd, I say, that small honour will it be to mee to haue this command, although wee ouercome our enemies, seeing what Knights are heere. Whatsoeuer the souldiours doe, valorous Prince, sayd the braue Rosicer, is attributed to the Captaine : and seeing that now and euer we are to be yours, you may dispose of vs, and wee will obey you. There went about foure score thousand men, the most expert in all the campe, and with such heads they might well haue giuen a principall battaile. The famous Meridian had taken so good order, that he came iust when the Mozes with great howtings (a common thing among them) beganne to batter that fayre Citie, which was one of the richest in al the Empire. He would not (like an expert Captaine as hee was, hauing but small troopes, and those wearied with the long trauell) put the in danger, by offering battaile to the enemy, who had thise double so many men as hee, and among them many mightie Giants. But he compassed a hill, which was nere, with about 20000. horse, commanding the rest, that without putting themselves in danger, they should charge the arrere gard, to the end that hee (bying succour) might in the meane while put a supply in the Citie. It was an excellent stratageme, and worthy such a Prince as he was. The Macedonians loued him extremely, who knowing his commandement, in verie good order began a skirmish, doing great harme among those, which had the gard of the Mozes baggage, which was such, that the braue Corlenio (for so was the Pagan called) was constrained of necessitie, to returne with part of his campe, to rescue his people. It was good happe for Meridian, who with the greatest courage in y world, spreading the Græke colours, came to the walls, besieged opening the Ports, where some dyed : the most of which were Greckes, whose chiefest care was, to get in to the Citie, the Mozes being in fight with them. But
yet

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

yet in despite of them, they entred, encouraging the besieged, who now made small account of the Pagans, having so good succours, and the new armie which they expected. As it was in time of truce, when the Mooze arrived, he alwaies (to his greater losse) continued in this error, that the Greekes would be carelesse: but perceiving that he was discovered, he sent to craue ayd from the campe. Although they sent it him, and there with the most valorous Princes; yet they came too late: for the Tartarian and those which went with him, knewe the countrey: and by that meanes, before that those of the campe could come, he was with the Pagan with all that noble company, a better then which, Alexander neuer led. The most valorous Captaine, putting by his Wever, said unto them, It shall not be needfull, valorous men of warre, to put you in minde of the harmes receyued of these Pagans: and seeing that fortune hath brought vs hither in so good time, let vs not delay to make them knowe the valour of euery one of vs.

They stayd no longer, but with lowde instruments of warre, shewed themselves to the Pagan: who doubted some ill successe, worthy the basenesse wherewith hee had troubled the two campes.

Whereupon he parted those which fought, and trusting in his campe and great multitude of valiant people, he ordered his battels as well as hee could, making head towards the enemye.

This was not his day; for the Greekes seeing such and so valorous leaders, desired nothing but to come to fight. O, who could assist mee with a little water from Helicon, to refresh my wearied pen, and describe the sundrie adventures happened that day, although (all contrarie to the Moozes!) for this furious companie assailing them, although that in the fore ranckes they found most strong Giants, yet was it a small defence against their armes: for there was none but smote some one to the earth, & some (before they brake their Launces) 2. or 3. They diuided themselves: for Claramante,

The fourth booke of the third Part

Claridiano, & Archifilora, went by themselves, overthrowing the enemies, as the wind doth leaues in Autumn. The furious Spaniard Thorisiano and his sonne, did no lesse on the other side, in companie with Don Heleno, his deare friend, & the faire Rosamundi, then the famous Tinacrian with his brother Rosacler, and his deere nephew: they were seuen in their hands: for they went thow to the armie from side to side, leauing some without heads, others thrust cleane thow, and those which now were at libertie (lately se gior die & amazed, y they were ready to giue by hte Ghost) came forth of the citie, with a desire to be reuenged. Great was the slaughter which they made, although that through the great multitude of enemies, they payed deare for their victory. For the coming of such Princes, was the totall destruction of y Mozes, who had neuer a famous Prince amongst thē, but the braue Moze. A mā cannot imagine what a slaughter they made: for where Brandafidel, Bramidoro, and the gentle Tesereo went, there was no defence against their clubs, for they trode all vnder foot. The greatest part of the Pagans was slain, before that their succors came from the campe. In the auant gard came the flower of Chualry, which were Bembo, Brauorante, Brusaldoro, & the young men, although y Leobulo by reason of his hurts, was not to haue taken armes so soone. On the other side came the fine of the wood, desirous to meete with the Greeks, who being moze ready, seeing themselves reuenged, and so much to their honour, sounded a retreat, garding their backs with y Citie wals, leauing the enemy with lesse then y third part of their people. And the greatest euil was, that Poliphebus, desirous to make shew of himselfe, in company with his brother and nephew, tooke the Standard of Comagena, & the King coming to the rescue, lost his life honorably, because it was by the hands of the Tinacrian. This king was cousin and great friend to Bramarante, and vncle to the furious Brauorante, who when he knew of his death, Guakenor durst not tell how angry he was: for before that the Greeks were wholly

with

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Withdrawn, he flew above a hundred of the, & would not returne to the campe without reuenge. The diuelish young man went so compassed with his enemies, that in despite of them hee went into the citie, where I would gladly see the (Homer) to sing the acts which he there performed: he would not refuse to fight with a hundred, for hee fought with them all. He met with the Princes of Hungarie and Bohemia: it was nothing to strike them to the ground, considering what he pretended. He turned to Thorisiano, who he left sencelesse at his horses heels. And the braue Tartarian, although he deserved it not, hee had nere bereaued of life; for casting bloud at his mouth and nostrils, he threw him to ground.

The strong Florisiano and the Prince of Croacia escaped not scotfree, for he left them assented. A proud attempt: firste Prince he threw to the ground, in so ill plight, that it was doubted of their liues. He came to encounter the two famous Giants, Bramidoro, and Brandafidel: to which he had an eie ever since their meeting in the willow valley. He entred betwene them, nothing weyghing their terrible clubbes: and they which were bozne to be feared, nothing feared him: for whozling about their seareful weapons, they both together smote him so strongly, that they made him bow both his knees to the ground, and had taken him, but the terrible young man bestirring himselfe with his broad sword, strake Brandafidels club out of his hands, and came vpon him with another, which set him from him, faster then a good pace, which gaue him place to rise, and ouertake the furious Bramidoro. Hee had paid no lesse then his life, for the displeasure of this angrie young man: for hee made him to fall vpon his hands, and would haue closed to make a final end of him, and had done it, had not the gentle Tifere come, who with a fierce blow, hindered the purpose of the fierce Bravorange. But he paid that which he ought to Poliphobus: for with a thrust he wounded him verie sore in the midst of his brest; and if his sword had entred a little fur-

The fourth booke of the third Part

ther, hee had nayled the one side to the other. Brandasidel came to the rescue, laying hand to his monstrous crooked Jawbion, where with he thought to haue defeated the Pagan, and smote him athwart the Helme, and made him see a thousand starres therein. The Prince of Fraunce, Clarindo, by chance came at one side of him, who was so eager, that he could not strike, although hee would faine, but was likely to haue met with his death: for the Pagan seeing him so nere him, y^e hee could not strike him with his sword, gaue him so sound a knocke with the Hilt, that he laid him at his foete. Gualtenor saith, that had any of the other famous Princes entred with him, the Citty had bene in danger to haue bene surprised: he roared like a Bull at the stake, and was more wight then an Dunc: and thinking that hee should better execute his rage on foete, he forsooke his horse, and so rushed those which came mounted vpon great horses, as though hee had bene an Elephant: with two blowes hee strake downe the two brothers Spaniards, which were held for as valiant as most in the Campe: yet there were so many that desired to come to blowes with him, that y^e place was neuer void, but rather they met him in the way, seeking reuenge. All this did but inflame his rage, had not the Greeke Princes bene aduertised thereof, who desirous to kill him, came in all haste.

The Dane came first vpon his Tirian, very cholericke, for y^e he had ouerthrowne his Captaine, which brought his troupes out of Dacia, who entred pale with anger, and ran vpon him with his horse breast, but hee stirred him as much, as if he had met with a rocke. Then came the braue Clarimance, who had many times made him to feele what hee could doe with his Halbert, who leapt from his horse, to whome euery one gaue place: hee stood somewhat aloofe, and whorling his weapon about his head, smote him ouer the Helmet, and did more then Don Heleno his horse could doe, for he made him set his hands to ground: he seconded it with another, which made him Marke mad: for making
king

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

king no reckoning of the third (although that he saw it coming) hee ioynded with him, giuing him a sadaine blow with both his hands vpon the Helmet, and made him to set both his hands and knees to the ground: no man came to his rescue, for feare to offend him, thinking that he would make an end of the Pagan: but hee was become such a Wasilike, that if the whole Creeke Armie had bene there, hee would not haue refused the battell, against them all. The louer gaue him a thrust in the brest, and had not his armour bene so good, hee had nayled him thereto, and made him make two steps backwards.

By this time had all the sallowe of the Creekes compassed him about: and the Tinacrian had so great a desire to trie himselfe against him, that hee leapt from his horse, with his Shield vpon his arme, desiring his brother to leaue that battell to him, wherein he should doe him pleasure. All men desired to content him: for he was beloued of all. The Pagan knew him well by his Eagle, and knowing that he had slaine his good Tinkle, hee assailed him, bidding them both to prepare themselves: which Claramante would not doe by any means, but left the battell for his brother, who as hee came fresh and eager, before hee could turne about, had giuen him two blowes, one after another: there was no enchantment against his weapons, nor force equal to his; for both his knees he made him set to the ground, and reached him another, no lesse then the former.

The Pagan sawe that which hee neuer had seene: for the swordes point entring at a cracke in his brest-plate, as it found a little entrance, it cut the red, till it set out the blood: it was a great chance; and God preserved him, to the end he should bee his friend, and the greatest in the world to this Prince: for falling in loue in Egypt, hee was a meane to put the Ladie into his hand, as shall bee declared in the fourth part of this Historie: and so winding him selfe to one side, the sword slipped out, leauing him wounded, although not much.

The fourth booke of the third Part

The brave Pagans bloud did fræze in his belly, so see it vpon the Grecians sword, and giuing a fierce crie, he assailed him; and but that his nimblenes did much helpe him, I beleue, that hee had incurred great danger: for notwithstanding all this, he hit him a blow vpon the rich shield, and made him runne stambling for wards readie to fall.

The Pagan (to his owne hurt) closed with him: for the Prince was as strong as hee, who letting goe his shield, set hand to his rich dagger. But the Poye had such confidence in his armour, that hee made no accompt thereof, and the young man remembryng the vertue of that weapon, gaue him vpon the top of his shoulder, two sore wounds, one after another, which made much bloud to run out. The Poye was so highly angred, that with a push hee put him far from him: and seeing that it was mere madnesse to striue any longer, hauing no assistance, hee assailed the Knight Flamineo, who was mounted vpon a good horse: hee pluckt him out of his Saddle, pulling him ouer those which were on horsebacke, and with a leape hee gat the Saddle, and rushing through the thickest, aboue foure lost their liues, in the Pagans going forth.

At the top of a hill all the whole armie staid, expecting him, hearing the noyse, but they were not able to come to helpe him: for from the turrets and Barrapets of the wals, they threw so many stones & Darts, that without manifest danger they could not come nere him, and the Pagan escaped not without it: so as when he came to the Campe, he was as wearie, as furious: he would speake to no man, but rather meeting with Brufaldoro, not remembryng their agreement, he set vpon him, roaring like a baited bull. The brave Mauritanian encountered, for hee neuer feared him, where they began one of the most fierce battels that euer was in the world: for they were two of the best Knights therein: but Bembo came to part them. Herein did the Pagans blinnesse appeare, who not respecting him, turned against him, saying, that they should all fight against him, for
his

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

his deare Uncles death could not be reuenged with lesse, then with the destruction of all the world. The great Capitaine would not lay hands on him, although hee had much angered him. All the whole Campe could not haue made him giue ouer the battell, had not Florinda come, whom the Pagan euer since he met her in Mauritania, had chosen for his God: for hee was of opinion, that there was nothing in the world worthy to be regarded, but her beautie. Well did the Lady know how dearely the Pooke did loue her, although it were single loue, for she was otherwise prouided, although she liued the most sorrowfull life of the world, seeing her hope to marry with the Tinnacrian frustrate: yet to appease the battell, she tooke off her Helmet, and putting herselfe betwene them, she sayd, Give roome, Knights, for this battell cannot now be ended, and you wrong the Soul-dan of Piquea his whole campe, if in time of necessitie any of your Armes should be missing.

The Pagan lifted his swoord no more vp, after he heard his mistris voyce. Strange power of affection: for what so many Princes could not doe, was ended with her sight only. I would haue bene very glad, valourous Lady, (said the Mauritanian) if you would haue suffred mee to haue ended it: but seeing it is your pleasure, I leaue it in your hands. Let it rest (sayd the Ladie) untill the field battell be ended. Let it be as you will appoint it (sayd he, now very gentle) which before seemed to be a Lion; for from henceforth in any part I will not breake it: and so they returned to their campe, and although against his will, yet she made him to sup in the Ladies Tent, where (although fained) she shewed him a thousand fauours: they were meanes to withhold him from his fury, for he had determined to pursue them al, to be reuenged of the death of his Uncle.

There was great sorrowe for the losse of that day; and meaning to make amends in the field battell, they concluded that it should be eight daies after. What happened in the meane season, you shall knowe by the next Chapter.

The fourth booke of the third Part

CHAP. XXVIII.

How the Greekes with victorie returned to the Citie, where they made preparation for the field, and how the two youtnes were made knowne to their mother.



With such contentment as winners vse to enioy, most excellent Prince, the Greekes remained in the Citie of Vircambela, wondzing at the furie of that Pagan, holding it for a matter incredible, if with their eyes they had not sene it, and so much to the cost of such personages, as they were.

There was none of the Princes but desired alone to fight with him, especially Poliphebus, of whome the old King of Macedonia (returning to Constantinople) reported wonders; all were glad thereof, especially his Father, who loued him in the same degree, as he did the Emperour Alphebus.

By the Ladies which boldly might doe it, those knights were disarmed, some helping one with their hands, and with their eyes and soule, another. What passed in the Camps was discovered, and how that from thence, eight dayes, they had appointed the field battell: because that by that time, Leobello would be cured of his hurts: Lupertius cured him verie carefully, that all might see how much hee loued them.

One night the discrete Selia came by chance, who had folded them in their swadling cloathes at the time of their birth, being much affected to their valour, without any knowledge

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

knowledge of them, by reason of Eufronisa, who was in the same Tent, shee went to see how hee did of his hurts. Shee came as Lupertius was dressing of him, and as women are verie bold, and being by night, for that shee would seeme to doe him some fauour therein, shee tooke the candle, to giue him light to dresse him: but hee had scarcely lifted by his shirt to see the wounds in his brest (for those were the most cruell,) shee was so much troubled, that shee was readie to let the candle fall out of her hand, and seeing the picture of a Ladies face in the young mans brest, and remembryng that that marke was vpon one of the children borne by the Princeesse Eufronisa, and shee imagining that (without doubt) this was one of them, with verie tope shee was ouercome.

Shee desired to stay with him, to the end to know moze of this matter: fortune was her friend, desiring to doe that Princeesse some new fauour; and there being no fit companie to stay with the Prince, if hee would haue any thing, shee offered her selfe to stay for that purpose: which the young man much esteemed, and moze would haue done, if hee had knowne the occasion thereof: And seeing her selfe alone with him, shee came to his beddes side, saying,

I would, valorous Knight, that you could impart your paine to her, who feeleth the same as much as your selfe.

Your visiting me, faire Damsell, answered the yong man, is a sufficient ease for all that I feele, being from my Ladies the Princeesse Eufronisa: which in conclusion, doth that which is annexed to her valour, which is, to remember them which are in need, as I am.

And to remedie it with losse of her owne contentment, (answered the Damsell) I doe belecue, that shee gladly would doe it. And for my part, I should take it for much fauour, to know what marke that is vpon your brest, which I saw when you were a dressing.

The fourth booke of the third Part

I know not the cause thereof, answered the young man, but that I was borne with this face, and my brother Claribel with an heart crossed, and hitherto we knew no other, but that we were the sennes of the discret Ser gio, for hee brought vs vp: but within these two dayes, hee hath put vs out of doubt, telling vs that we be not his chilozen, but that in Sicilia, neere vnto the Citie of Colbergt, he found vs newly borne, and his mother brought vs vp in stead of her owne children: wherein, as I say, we haue continued untill now, that hee hath otherwise assured vs. The pleasure which this Damself conceived was such, that she presently taking her leaue of him, went into her Ladies Chamber, and without speaking one word, she embraced her. The Princesse maruailing at the newes, asked her the cause thereof, which should not be little. So great (answered the the Damself) is the good, which the heauens (deare Ladie) this day haue done you, that you may liue merrie and contented all the dayes of your life: for know, that the two famous youtnes are your two lost sennes.

The Princesse could giue no answer, she was so surpris'd with suddaine ioy, which was then the greatest that could happen vnto her. Ah, my Selia, I cannot beleue that so great a good as this, can happen vnto so vnluckie a woman, no way deserving it; and therefore it cannot be possibly. Without doubt it is as I tel you, for I haue seene the verie markes wherewith they were borne, and that which Cleobulo hath, I saw this night, when hee was a dressing: and then she told her what had passed betwene the Prince and her, whereof the Princesse was not able to containe the pleasure: and being vnable to make an end of renewing her delight, she said, It behooueth me to see it, to the end to make me liue contented. What shall be an easie matter to doe, answered the Damself: for now euery body being at rest, I wil leade you thither, without discouerie; but why will you not beleue that I haue told
you

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

you of him: She presently came forth with her: for the hope to see him, did encourage her in such sort, that she would adventure to come to the Princes lodging: to whom at her coming she said, My Damisell, Sir Knight, hath told me so many and so rare things of you and your brother, (that being somewhat hard of belasse, although it may be noted for lightnesse) that I in exchange to see it, have put my selfe in danger to be noted. It is to me, Soueraigne Princeesse, a great saucour that which you doe, and the cause being manifest, bringeth therewith the defence: as for the rest, saying it is your pleasure, there is no more to be done, but to see it with your eyes: and so putting his shirt a little by, he shewed that faire face.

The Princeesse had so imprinted it in her heart, that shee presently knew it. She had almost discovered her selfe: but considering what might ensue thereof, and to publish her contentment, shee tooke her leave of him, the most ioyfull of any woman in the world. Well did shee deserue it, having recovered two such sonnes as shee had, being in all so accomplished. Shee was now of opinion, that fortune could doe her no greater pleasure, then that which shee had receyued with the sight of her two sonnes.

They withdrew them to their lodging, with determination neuer to marry, saying she had two such children; neither to make them knowne to the Greeke their father, for feare that they would stay with him in Grece. Here with they passed the seven dayes which remayned: shee in one campe, and he in another; untill that that wished day did come, wherein should be the generall death of him, or of his enemies.

It seemed that Apollo this day hastened his course, to the end that there should want no time for this bloudie warre: he appeared of a bloudie colour, and Mars with his armed Trident appeared low, where with he touched Vulcans Shield. There was neither Faune, Satyre, nor god in the woods, which came not to the top of y^e Mountaines to

The fourth booke of the third Part

for the battell. In the Campe, befoze the Captaine Bemboes Tent, was pitcht vp a blacke Standard, the sides being of colours: a signe that the warres should be made with fire and sword, and bloud, and that he should die for it, which tooke a prisoner: he drew forth his Infanterie, which was innumerable, making thereof his maine battell, joining it with the fierce Parthians, which were aboue a hundred thousand men al Archers, with their bowes and quicquers, wherewith they did notable harme: for being on horsebacke, befoze they came to charge their Launces, they wrought great hurt in the head of the Canallerie, which were diuided into twelue mightie squadrons. Fourth came those two mightie Princes, the Souldan of Niquea, and the Emperour of the Romanes, whose persons compassed with huge Giants, were guarded with no lesse care, then Achilles was with the Piramibons. With the rest of the people he made 2. Battalions: one of which he tooke for himself, leading them to the right hand. At one side of him, went those two braue competitors Brauorante, and Brufaldoro, with the most principal troups of Achaia. In the Arrere gard, with y Africanes came those three mightie young men, he with the Scarres, Claribel, and Leobello, whose comly personages were pleasing to al. The Duke Ferrer bare the Standard royall, with all the fierce Almaines, hauing twentie foure Giants for his gard. On the other side went the mightie Souldan of Egypt, bearing downe towards the valley of willowes: in whose companie went the fine of the faire wood, with the flowre of Giant land, which seemed as high as Pine-trees. The King of Persia, and the mightie Assyrian, had in charge the gard of the Campe: the charge of battering the Citie, with all the Chariots with Siftes, and the strong Castles vpon the mightie Elephants, wherewith they thought it an easie matter to batter it, with all the Rams and engines, which seemed to bee greater then the Citie of Constantinople, was committed to the King of England, with part of the Frenchmen, & a brother of the Duke of Thebes, who was

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

no lesse fit for it, then his brother for the campe: who tooke good order for the gard of the Citie, putting all the Ladies into Mars his Castle, making thereof faire weather. Those which could send favours to their Gallies, did it with a good will, praying to God to give them victory. They expected the coming of Trebatius his power (which seemed no lesse then the Phoenix:) the Captaine generall committed to the Emperour of Trapisonda Alphebus, the leading of one point of the horsemen: who with his beloved Emperesse, and the brave Oristides and his wife, with the Giants of the Islands Balcares, which were about 2000. took downe into the valley, over against the Souldan of Egypt. The other point he recommended to the mighty Trebatius, whose company was no lesse in the towne, then that which Hector had: he went betwene Poliphebus and Rosacier, with his nephew, the valorous Rosabel, Bramidoro and Brandafidel, with the gentle Tifereo and the sonnes of Tituan, tooke charge of his person: the Battalions in the middle he divided, as best fitted: hee reserved the avant garde for himselfe: by him went the flower of Chinalry, Claridiano, and Claramante, with all the Spanyards, Lirians, and Antiochians: although that one halfe of the Spanyards, with part of the Hungarians and Albanais, he had made passe by 2. and 2. & 4. and 4. to the number of 60000. towards the campe, and y^e lodging themselves among those crags and bushes, they should there make a stand, untill y^e he should come to give assault to the campe: it was the greatest stratagemie y^e ever Captaine devised, as shall appeare. In the reere garde came y^e brave Torismundo, & his son, with y^e Princes of Fraunce & Bohemia. On the right wing, with all those of Dacia, went y^e mightie Heleno, with his beloved Rosamundi, armed in their rich armour: 24. Knights of his chamber had charge of his Ladie. The great Tartarian Zollo, & the prince Meridian were left with a maine troop for supplies, with many spare horses for those which should be lost. The Royall Standard was borne by y^e Theban Duke.

The fourth booke of the third Part

Floristano and Polidolpho, with the good king Sacridoro, and the valiant Lisart of Argentarís were reserved, for that the Captaine had sent them to command the Ambuscado, committing to their discretion and valour, a matter of so great importance. Threë times in all the Castles of the Citie, the alarme was given, aduice being given to the famous Astrucio, that then hee should giue the onset vpon his enemies, all the troops being ranged in good order, and in a readinesse to charge. The mightie Aristoldo, armed that day in the most rich armour that he had, with a faire coloured scarfe, which his mother had sent him, in the head of the troopes, his Beauer being put vp, with the but end of his Launce stucke in the ground, spake in this manner:

The Oration.

THIS is the day (most excellent Princes) wherein the heauens and fortune will, that wee shew that valour which it hath giuen vs. In this action it shall be good to die, seeing that herein is purchasèd eternall fame. It resteth in our armes to be conquerours, fighting with courage and discretion. Otherwise in losing our liues, wee lose our fame likewise. Our enemies are in sight, and to those, whom it so much behooueth to doe well, it shall not neede to vse many words, but that euery one consider how much this busines concerneth him; and that in ouercomming, he shall purchase the fame and credite of valiant.

As he had sayd these words, he cast his Generals Trunshion to the ground, and pulling downe his Beauer, hee put himselfe among his louing friends, expecting when the braue Captaine Bembo should doe the like: who before his people, with a couragious mind vsed these words:

Oration.

I Would, mightie Princes, and valorous Knights, that the gods would beare witness, and at this instant make manifest,

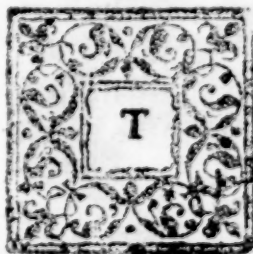
of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

nifest, with what desire I goe vnto this battell, to die for any of you, making our enemies know what equitie, Armes, and hearts we haue. It shal be an easie matter to ouercome, hauing this aduantage, and being three times as many, herein is no more to be said, but to be readie to be commanded, and that euerie one obserue the order wherein hee is set: for this maketh men atchaine noble enterprises. And seeing that you all may be Captaines, to day you ought to bee Souldiers, for that, and the courage of our hearts, will giue vs the victorie: for I, in the Office wherein I am employed, doe meane to die for your seruice.

Hee likewise threw downe his golden Tranchion, and commaunded presently three Clariens to bee sounded, a certaine token that they shoulde presently giue the charge. Hee embraced the two competitors, a custome vsed in his countrie, and worthe to bee noted; for he (say they which haue skill therein) which entreth into the battell, goeth to contend with death. He turned about to see whether they kept their first order, and was verie ioyful to see such Cauallerie: and as they began to ioyne, it was worthe of a new booke, much more of a new Chapter.

CHAP. XXIX.

How the field battell began, and of the perillous combats and famous actes which therein succeeded.



The time is come, worthe Dames, & warlike Princes, if euer there were single combats & louers cases in the world, herein they shall be scene, at life, but with your fauour, for without it, there is no passage to bee giuen to my slow pen, to lay colours on such a peece of painting, as is this,
It where

The fourth booke of the third Part

Wherein an excellent wit and loftie stile is very requisite. A sight worzhie to bee seene, although it made some afraid, but to the rest it yielded new courage, to see so many faire ensignes flying in the aire, so many Coynets wauning, so much Armour glittering, such neighing of horses striking one at another, such thundring of Ordnance, so many instruments of warre, such crying of Souldiours, such encouraging of Captaines, fixing their eyes on the palme of the victorie, which turned the most cowardly Souldier, to a fierce Lion, the noise of the Charriots, and the snorting of the Elephants: hauing seene this, who would not haue thought, but that the last day had bene come? The infantrie of either side extended it selfe at large; whose Pike heads did shine, as they dazelled the Sunne.

The most Christian Emperour full of water, lifted vp his eyes to heauen, saying, Seeing this is thine (O Lord, behold thy people.) Both together in the points met these two angry Captaines, charging the first battels, that it seemed that the earth was not onely oppressed in it selfe: but that the highest heavens were vnhung. In the Avant-guard of these battels, came the flower of both armies: so with the Generall Bembo, were ioyned the two competitors, which aduanced themselves forward. And on our side, the mighty Generall, and Claramante, with the unknowne Crake, which came to ioyne with greater force, then can be imagined. Cristoldo lost his stirrops, but hauing so good a horse, he past feriously along; the like did the fewre which remained: they returned the one against the other with as great courage, as possibly could be imagined. Bembo desirous to strike Claridiano, came so nere, that he could not strike him, and so came to handie gripes: the Crake knew the Pagans strength, and leauing his stirrops, he suffered himselfe to be carried away: but in plucking him from his Saddle, he took so strong hold, that he pluckt him out of his, before that hee was able to quit his stirrops; which if the Crak had known, he would haue trailed him from his horse. It was a luckie chance for Archisiloraes Louer: for as he was stronger then

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

then y^e Horse, so he set him vp against his horse, and with his dagger was like to haue slain him, for he hurt him, although not dangerously. The yong man was almost lost; for the Giants seeing the Dagan in y^e ground, charged with their Squadron, & had troden him vnder foot, had he not bin closed with Bembe: but this & the approach of y^e battels gaue the place to take horse, beginning betwene them anew so furious & battel, as if they had bin alone within the Lists. It lasted not long, for the floods of friends & enemies parted them, being mixed among the troupes: where, oh who is able to expresse what blowes were giuen! about 30000. lost their saddles, & some presently their liues; for they were either troden vnder the horse fote, or smothered with extreme heate, who had scene y^e gallant Claramante with his shield at his backe, charge y^e enemy with his Battel-axe, & at large to let daine at those Giants, which as they were huge & so many, he neuer mist blow, & at euery blow felled one to the ground, stopping the passage against the horsemen: his friends held him so good companie, y^e it gaue great pleasure to behold the: for Claridiano, carefull of his Lady, suffered her not to strike a blow, although she wel made shew of the valor of her person. The warlike Lady charged in so far among y^e Giants, that befoze she was aware, hauing hurt her horse, they had her as fote: her Louer repaired to the noyse, & seeing the Queene a ground, I cannot tel, whether a man should relate what the Creeke did. For 4. Giants being alighted to help their Captaine, which was at handy gripes with the Lady, he laid the on the ground at 4. blowes, and came where y^e Giant was, armed with planks of steele, & his Helme. He let her go, seeing y^e Creeke coming, & prepared for his defence, but it was too late: for befoze he could turne, with y^e furie which did pre-dominate in him, hee smote him with both handes vpon the head, & rашt away a great peece thereof, & of his thirk helme: hee seconded another together with Archusilora; shee with a thrust pearced him thorow, & he, befoze hee fel, had cleft his head, so as the best & fairest hands in the world wrought his death, as any did euer y^e Giant for his death in such manner.

The fourth booke of the third Part

Oristoldo and Claramante would not bee out of the way, when they should assist them. The three famous Pagans turned backwards hearing the noise, and those which were a foote, were like to bee in danger by their comming, for in the Generals gard, they had done much harme. It was strange to see Bembo with his sword died in blood. The furious Brauorante bare that day a great Space of Steele; being stung with the death of his Uncle, hee sufficiently reuenged it, for hee gaue many for one: at his comming hee met with those of the Generals Chamber, and slue three of them at two blowes, and charging the Giants which had the gard of his person, being nothing afraid to see himselfe alone amongst them, he began to stirre in such manner, that if Claramante had not come (hauing first mounted those two pinnaces) hee had made an end of them: but knowing him, they gaue place, whose battell is not to bee forgotten: for the one with his Axe, and the other with his Spade, at euerie blowe made the blood to gush out at their Throats. It was good hap for a great many, and as a man might say, ordained by the heauens: for at one blow with his terrible Axe, hitting close by his hand, hee smote in two peces his Spade of Steele, and it was maruall that he had not done the like by his armes.

Who had then scene the angrie Gorgon, more furious then a Basiliske! hee was nothing amazed, neither did hee strike sayle to furie, but rather drew out a sharpe skreane, wherewith hee would haue smitten the Drake: but it was too late, for he had alreadye the edge of his Axe vpon his Helme: here he saw that which he neuer thought of his weapons; for hitting him athwart the Crest, he smote it cleane away, & a great part of his Steele Cap. Forwards went the louer, glad to see the Standard to march forwards, getting ground. The infibell Bembo perceiued it, and with great furie would haue set vpon him which bare it, which was the good Duke of Thebes: had not his hands bene as good as his iudgement, according to y^e force wherewith he pluckt

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

it, he had ne're caried it. Brufaldoro followed the chase. The old man was in great danger; but his 3. sones which were y^e flowre of the Craks, defended their father as wel as they did the flantard. Onstolde and Clendiano wel saw y^e hurly burly: but the Giants did so much trouble them, that they could not passe: but seeing what was lost in the Standard, notwithstanding he had a good gard, theye winged downe those which stood in his way, the furious Clendiano ran e, and met with Brufaldoro, and taking him at vnwares, it was a maruell that he had not killed him: for in passing by, he gaue him a mighty thrust in one of his sides, which finding entrance in the iointing, came forth againe all drenched in blood. The yong man passed by so swift, that hee could not strike him: but others of lesse worth which remained behind, paid for displeasing him. Bembo would that all the whole army should charge: for y^e being by halfe more then the Crakes, being mixt al together, they might the better one helpe another. The hoene was thus winded, which was a warning to giue the charge. The braue Onstolde well vnderstood it; & retiring with his company, then which, a better was not in the world, he said vnto them, The time is now come, valorous Princes, wherein your valour wil appeare, for Bembo hath giuen signe for the generall charge: and because he shall not thinke that we are carelesse, it shall be good to get the hand of them, which he did: for he presently winded his, so lowd, that all the valleys rang thereof. The Ladies in Mars his Castle knew it, and the Crakes were in such readines, y^e as he left, they marched as swift as the fresh wind. A sorrowfull day for a great many: for there they met with their deaths in a thousand maners.

The earth shrank, it was so oppressed. The Sunne hid his beames, because he would not see so many deaths. The noyse wherewith the battels ioyned, was so terrible, that rebounding vp to the skies, it made there also a great slaughter: for the flying fowles wanting ayre to maintayne their flight, came dead to ground. The 2. Parties at sea, although

The fourth booke of the third Part

they had already sowned, heard the noise which was at land. In came the mighty Trebatius, accompanied with his sons, so furious, that he seemed like death it selfe; they did so well guard him, that he neuer receiued blow. The famous Tinarian was the best armed and mounted of any man in the world; and so earnest, that sometimes his kinsmen could not follow him, notwithstanding that they wrought miracles. But the Pagans were so many, that although that they, where they went, had the aduantage; yet the Mores had it in the rest of the campe, fighting sometimes foure against one, and sometimes at more ease. On that side where the Boulban of Egypt was, there the Greekes had the better; because on that side happened to fight the inuincible Alphebus, with the no lesse furious then redoubted Knight Oristides, who seemed no other, then as Hercules among the Giants in the plaines of Egypt: or as Samson among the Philistines. Lurgandeo reporteth, that befoze y hee had euer drawne his sword, hee had killed ten Giants: those with that in his hand he sought, and not the weake simple Knights. They made a broad street for him: but Don Celindo taketh him in hand, with his sister & friends: he rushed in among them, & vpon a sudden seized vpon Thorilano: he made him lose his regnes, and almost his saddle, and therewith his life, had not Don Argante come at one side, who with his rich sword (when as this braue Emperor would haue seconded his blowe, & therewith haue finished the strife) entred with a strong thrust, which he made at him, hitting him in the breast, striking bp his sword arme with the paine, and so he could not strike the yong man, but turned against the Fenician more fierce then a Leopard, & smote his plumes from his head; & had he boyne his hand a little lower, he had endangered him: he returned a thrust at y Assyrian, who seeing what y knight did, which knew him not (for he would neuer enter into any battell, but as a private soldier) had aduanced himselfe for wards with a desire to strike him: he hit him in the middest of the breast, and vnable

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

able to pierce it for the goodnesse of the mettall, hee pushed him so farre backe, that hee tumbled him out of his saddle. There was neuer a better blowe giuen in all the battell. Claridiana was glad to see it, who had taken Floralisa to taske. Their battell was apart: for the high heauens in valour, although not in beautie, had made them equals. No man came to their ayd, seeing their equalitie in fight. But Don Celindo, who was of greater force then the Troiane, sorry for his friends blowe, parted from him, and assailed the Trapisonda Lord. He was neuer weary with fighting, for therewith he was refreshed: he let him enter, and with all his might, stepping aside, as he was more nimble & valiant, seizing vpon him with his armes, he pluckt him out of his saddle: and but for feare to bee ouerborne by the beasts which the Giants rode on, he had kild him: hee let him goe, spurning him with his fecte: but he was presently remounted. The Souldan of Egypt was extreemely sorry, to see that of his side they had the worst of the battell, and therefore he fought not, but did more in giving directions: for by turnes he brought new succours where they were ready to fly. Those in the middest charged with all possible force. Rosabel his sonnes, and the unknowne young man with his barres, had descended more lower into the valley. They seemed like the bright Sun beames, amidst the black clouds, and amazed all the army, to see how they plaid the devils. They resembled Aeneas in strength, and Cesar in fighting. They left not a knight wounded; for they strake them all strake dead.

The orchard keepers beat not downe fruite so fast with their long poles, as they did the Grækes with their sharpe swords. No man durst abide them: and so climbing vp a little hils side, and seeing that in all the rest of the battell, their friends as fast as they could goe, did get ground (& although y they saw them fall by heaps, yet they were so many, that there was no man mist) leauing y standard in his hands, who well knew how to defend it, they came downe y hils side.

The fourth booke of the third Part

The two brothers wore severall coloured Scarfes, which their mother had given them, although not by that name, but as their country woman: they were sene by both armies. Hee which went to mee them, was no lesse then the fierce Don Heleno, with his beloned Ladie, who was knowne to haue the aduantage of all men, with those cruell Armes, which sometime did belong to Semiramis: on his left side went that valiant Spaniard Thorismundo, to whose trust might be committed any charge, although not this: for without doubt, Claribel was more valiant, who sel to his lot, who (as this was the first battell that hee had sene) so would he therein purchase same. Hee suffered the Spaniard to enter vpon a faire horse, of the race of Corduba, in whome he did put too much trust & to his valor, giuing the young man a great blow, who was nothing moued therewith, and preparing a second, hee entred, striking him vpon the rich Helmet, which then gaue him his life: but for all that, it set him vpon his Saddle bow, casting bloud out at his Thro, and with another, hee would haue ended the warre, and had done it, had not his sonne come running, who seeing his father in such case, drawing force out of feare, with both his hands took reuenge: it was enough to make him to lose his blow, for thereby hee recovered his Fathers life, who with the helpe of his sonne, set vpon the young youth, who was glad thereof, the better to make them to know the strength of his armes, which tired him more then they knew for.

This was nothing to the battell betwene Don Heleno, and Rosamundi, with his brother and the Knight with the scarres. Shee reposed great trust (as there was reason) in her rich weapons, and for that cause, shee ioynd euerie stroke with the youth, cutting both his armour and his flesh: he went more enraged then a chafed Bull, to see himselfe so hurt: so before that hee could cleare himselfe from this Ladies hands, he had receiued foure wounds, which were the first that he had receiued in all that battell. The Ladie was

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

no lesse tyred and endangered, then if she had bene cruelly wounded: for in parting from him, and at the arrivall of troupes of either side, shee was constreyned to put vp her Beuer to take breath. Don Heleno came to her, intreating her to goe forth of the battell. Doe not desire it, my beloved Heleno, answered the Patrone: for what pleasure can she which louth you, haue in rest, without your presence: and to bee perswaded to this, were a notabill iniurie: for yet my mind both serue me to conquere another, Don Heleno: and therewith she pulled downe her Beuer; and calling for a Launce to them which had the charge to giue the, she turned to her husband, saying, Now see what it is to haue you by my side. It seemeth that fortune had brought into her presence, the King of the profound Iland, in proportion like to a strong Wine tree: hee had a crowne vpon his head, and aboue a thousand Giants in his company. The Dame meant to charge him, passing through those Giants: and sure, there was neuer any better encounter giuen with a Launce: for hitting him in the middle of the shield, she sowed it fast to his brest, striking a sadome of the launce thorow the other side. Her Knights did much reioyce thereat, holding themselves for happie, to serue such a Ladie. He which most reioyced, was the Dacian; and to be equal with her, with a new Launce aboue hand, hee bereaued a Giant of his life, whereat the Ladie was very glad.

Now was he with the starres parted from the Spaniards, both the one and the other entring among the thickest of their enemies: the which (I meane the Pagans) with their great number, with their ensignes displayd, draue vpon the hill all the Greeke Cauallery to that part where the brane Trebatius was; who seeing the ill successe of the battell, with new grieve recommended it to God. It seemed that his force was two fold increased: for lifting vp his voice, saying, Goe to, my sonnes, this is the most fortunate day for those which shall die, seeing we shall doe it in defence of our country: and if death must come, let vs sell them our liues as

The fourth booke of the third Part

deare as we can. O, who had seene Poliphebus his eyes full of water with his fathers speeches! for all the armie seemed little vnto him: he gaue not one blow, but that therewith he threw downe a Knight. He saw the gentle Epirabio, who to him seemed to be a man of account, although he had befoze ouercome him, and made to him, and giuing him a fierce blow, laying hands vpon him, hee pluckt him from his horse, and for all that his gard could doe, hee tooke him, giuing good direction for the carrying of him to the Citie. There came into that quarter 2. famous warriors, doing many faire exploits vpon the Craks, which were the Princes of Siquea, and of Calidonia. The Tinacrian rushed in betwene them, giuing them so much to doe, that he made them both past remembrance. He closed with Astorildo, & trusting to his Rubican, he ouerbare him to the ground with his horse best: he would haue kild him, for he meant to leap vpon him, if the signe agreed vpon with Astorildo had not lettred him, so the end that they should repaire to the campe: who windeed his horne so lowd, that it resounded, making both armies afraid, sauing those two, the Uncle and Nephew, Poliphebus and Rosabel, who seeing that their people had somewhat the better, asking their fathers blessing, departed when the Generall sounded. In their passage they encountered the flowre of the Spanes: for the furious Rubican mettelh with no body, but he treadeth them vnder his feete. The valiant Nephew Rosabel vpon his courser doth no lesse: for with his horses best, & with the strength of his arme he leaueth no man aliu. They were beheld by all the campe, & knowne to some, who although they followed the chase, it was to their owne hurt: for these 2. went, resolved to passe any aduenture, were it neuer so difficill. Rosabel saw certaine Crake Knights, at whose feete were 2. Knights at the point either to die, or bee taken prisoners: for there followed the 2. Spanish brothers, and the Princes of Bohemia and Hungarie: each of which had 24. Knights in his gard: whose betters were not in the army. Liranaes lower knew
them

Of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

them both, which were no lesse then his Ladies father & her brother. His bloud fræzed in his body to see the: for he presently imagined how soe Liriana would be for any hurt that might happen vnto them. The Uncle & Nephew furiously entred, and the troupe knowing the same place, thinking y they had come to y same purpose that they were. The yong man being somewhat doubtfull of his father in law, leapt into the middle of y preale, and in going thitherwardes, the Souldan thinking y he would strike him, as he was a man of high courage, he gaue him a strong blow. Trebacijs his nephew stipt aside, letting y blow passe, & then closing with him, hee took him in his armes, saying, Soft, Soueraigne Souldan, I know no cause why you should so thete your selfe towards your daughter & me, and therefore you shall see how much you are in the wrong, seeing I could in despite of all mine enemies kill you, or take you prisoner: but I will not, but performe y dutie of a sonne, & so will doe ener: and so giuing a leape with him, hee set him vpon a mighty horse of one of the Cræks. And to do his kinsma a pleasure, Poliphebus had done the like by Lindoriano: and so without speaking one word more, or attending any answer, they kept on their way: for vpon a little hill they saw the Generall. The father & son were so amazed with the gentle acts of the Cræke (both which they knew, the one by his deuce of the Eagle, & the other by his voice) y they knew not what to say. The can fro here forth, my beloued son, beare armes (quoth the Souldan) against those which haue giuen vs our liues & liberties: I haue heretofore told your Maiesty (quoth the sonne) that y gods doe take especiall care for the Cræke Empire: & seeing we are now in y field, we may not returne againe without some honorable agreement: other wise, we shall remaine with perpetuall infamie. They had no longer time to discourse: for certaine Cræks coming thither, forced the to withdraw to their squadron. A new band of courtesie, if y passion had not blinded them altogether. Great cryings were heard that way which the 2. warriors

The fourth booke of the third Part

toent, which was, that the King of Giant land, with about 200. Giants, had taken their passage, where it is incredible what they did: for giuing head to the best hozles in y^e world, with their shields at their backes, and their swoords in both handes, they did wonders; they were euen together: for they were equall in valour, doing things although lawfull, yet pittypfull: for rushing in betwene those Giants, they smote the downe as if they had bin ordinary hozsemen: but they were so many and so strong, that it behoued them to see more then they did. The inuincible Alphebus with his valorous company came to their aid; who knowing them for his friends and nere kinsmen, kept such a stir, that in despite of them they made way to follow on their iourney, leauing about 40. of those Wine trees stretched all along vpon the ground. The mighty Trapisondan followed them not, thinking that they went about some matter of importance; but rather assembling the sonnes of Tituan, he began afresh to charge the Giants. The King of Giant land had long desired to meeete with Alphebus: and now seeing him present, he went to him saying, Now y^e time is come, Crak Prince, that with thy head shalbe restored the damage done to my blood. Hee which meant to preuaile with words, answered him not with words: for hee had scarcely said this, but with a Partisane hee smote him ouer the rich Helmet. The Emperoz of Trapisonda was euen at deaths doore: for the Hagan gaue him another, which made y^e blood gush out at his Mouer. Ther was neuer any Piper, but might be accounted gentle in respect of Alphebus: for befoze that y^e Hoge could againe lift vp his cruel club, he was come cloie to him, and with both his handes smote him vpon the crowne of gold which hee ware: he smote it in peeces, and a great part of the Helmet hee cut from it, leauing him both sore wounded and disarmed: hee came againe with another, which did wholly perfect the victorie: for hitting him there where hee was disarmed, the one halfe of his head hee smote to the ground, leauing him dead and on hozsebacke.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

backs. Whither came so many for reuenge, that the noble Gräke had bene in danger, had not Bramidoro and his friend Brandafidel with Tefereo come to his aide: for to the hope came Brauorante, ouerthrowing more Gräkes then the wind both leaues in Autumn. There began a braue battell, for the Gräke desired it, and the other was ready to die for it. By this time were the two famous warriors come to the little hill, Poliphelus, and Rosabel meeting there the flower, not onely of the Campe, but of the whole world, Claramante, and Claridiano, with the faire Archilora. There was great joy at their meeting: for they did reciprocally loue extremely, and not without great grieve they beheld the successe of the battell: for although that particular men did preuaile, yet the multitude of the rascall & mores was so great, that they gat ground vpon them, although that at Sea the famous Attilio spied better: for therein he was the most expert in the world.

For as being better of sayle, with his greatest vessels he bare towards y^e South, where, with a fine Southeast wind, which blew a faire gale, haling their Tackles close aboard, they weathered the enemies flote, and comming hard aboard them, they cast so much wild fire into it, that they set certaine shippes on fire, which they left burning in a light flame, with such a mortall slaughter of men, as cannot bee imagined: for as the wind from the shore was a helpe vnto them, remaining close aboard the enemies ships, they fired the greatest part, and the best rigged and appointed in the flecte: and but for the losse by land, it had bene great pleasure to haue seene them: but that which made them most to wonder, was, to see come from the South with both sayles and Mares, a great flote, which drawing vnto the shore a little beneath where the battell was fought, vpon a sudden landed so many men, as exceeded the number of two hundred thousand, with about thirtie thousand mightie Giants. They saw them diuided into two battels, and that the one ouer the valley towards the Citie, went in y^e manner of a

The fourth booke of the third Part

Crescent, without charging Launce, or assailing any body, gathering together those which were dispersed ouer þe fields. As the Sunne was then at the highest, shining vpon their armour, it was a faire sight to behold: the other battell wherein there seemed to be a Chariot triumphant, drawn by twelue Elephants, tooke the lower way. Both armies were much troubled herewith: for they well saw that to whether partie this should leane, there the victorie was certaine. Now is there neede of your hoyses swiftnesse, and the valour of your arme, said the Captaine Oristoldo: first to the sonne of Garrofilea, and then to the unknowne Claridiano, who obeying the commandement of the braue and discret Captaine, answered, Let it bee as it shall please you: but it fitteth better for our businesse, seeing that they are friends, that wee should at our pleasure sacke their Campe: for I haue to day a great desire to steale some Ladies, or at the least, if I misse thereof, that ensigne, which is set yonder in the side of the little hill: for they shall not loy at our losses. And therefore, valorous Prince, (with your fauour) I will winne it, and with my owne hand will giue it to the most faire and ingratefull Ladie of the world, in the behalfe of the most faithfull Louer therein, and worth rewarded. Here with they descended downe the hill, farre more swift then thought.

The exploits which were done in this iourne, are not to be written in so true a Historie as is this, which I follow: for there were no foure Knights of the most valliant in all the Campe, that durst to stand two blowes: for a stone doth no more easily strike down the tender eares of Cozne, then their swords did fell those Infidels. They threw to the ground aboue two hundred, not wounded, which had beene a greater harme, but stark dead. The furious Giants which opposed themselves against them, could not stay them in their iourne: for against them, like the lightning, finding some resistance, they shewed themselves more furious. As they were perceiued to mount vpon the side of the little hill,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

Some from the Imperiall Standard came to their reliefe, among which were the sonnes of Rosabel: but both one and other came too late: for the furious Claridiano, much stronger then a thunderbolt, rushed in among the flower of the Almaïnes, which had the gard there.

The blowes which they gave, nor the Launces and Darts which they hurled, could not defend them: for without lifting up his sword, he assailed him that had any, striking him downe with his fists, with greater force, then the hungrie Tyger doth the heartes in the mountaines Risci. Hee was assailed by many, but there were aboute twentie Knights which tooke his part, which before had knowne him; with whose aide, and the helpe of the famous Poliphēbus, in the sight of both Camps, he tooke the Standard, which was the richest in all the armie. They crossed the Campe (although with much adoe) which did encourage those which were overcome, to see the Pagans Standard in the hands of the Knight with the Ladies. They came to vnderstand of the armie which was arrived, and seeing by the waning of their colours, that they were Cræke ensignes, without longer stay, holding now the victorie on either side for certaine, in the twinkling of an eye, they came to the place: where the Generall with his friends stayed for them, glad of the exploit which they had done: and the courageous young man, taking the ensigne in his hand, delivered it to his Lady, saying, Although that it be a presumptiue and apparant error, valorous Lady, I bestow this Standard vpon your beaultie and valour: but seeing it is done, and that I haue gotten it in your name, my over-boldnesse is excusable. Upon some other more woorthie (and wereo the Lady) I would you had bestowed it: but comming from you, none will refuse to receiue it (as from the best Knight of the world) and I will this day bee Standard-bearer to all this companie, to charge into the Campe, for it now groweth somewhat late. And setting vpon those which are come to the Campe, it will be their whole ouerthrow to see themselves

The fourth booke of the third Part

assailed by so many: for there is nothing that putteth men in such feare, as to see before their eyes, their goods & friends consumed with fire. And presently they took their way downe the hill, butill they were out of sight of those of the Campe, who were busied with beholding the great armie, which was newly arrived. The five valorous Princes came to the Ambuscado, where Florinarte ioyfully receiued them, and with all speed put their people in order. What followed and who it was which came, shall be declared in another Chapter.

CHAP. XXX.

How the mightie Andronio, Lord of the great Tartaria, came to aide the Greekes, and of the end of the field battel.



How highly gratitude (most excellent Prince) is to be esteemed, it shall bee needlesse with many examples to amplifie, hauing one in sight, as the coming of the famous Tartarian, who as he euer had bene a friend to the Dacian Prince, and to Thorismundo, as in the first and secons parts was declared, who in his countrie hearing of the warres which the Romanes made, determined to come to their aide, with the greatest power that hee was able: hee leued two hundred thousand men, and thirtie thousand Giants, with which (for they were both balliant, and expert in the warres) hee purposed to aide his friends: he came thus late, because hee thought that the warre had beene in Dacia, whither hee went, and there vnderstood of the fierce proceedings of the greatest part of the world. Hee came in good time, and was not a little glad thereof, especially when hee saw that the Greekes had the worse, imagining that his succours would be the better esteemed.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

In coming to land, hee deuised his troopes into two battels: and with the one he sent the mightie Prince Daristes, with 15000. Giants; who taking his fathers blessing, was accompanied with those 25000 Giants, whereof, 100. had charge of his person, which was armed with y^e most costly armour in the camp: for it was set with stones of great price, and in some places, with exquisite workmanship were set great Carbuncles, which when the Sun did shine vpon them, bereaued men of their sight. There was no godlier shew in all the campe; for he was a very youth, not yet 15. yeeres old; but matched the Greeke Princes in valour. Of his Standard, which was of the colour of his Armour, which was Lion-colour, 50. which were the flowres of all the Giants had the gard, which presumed to defend it against both the campe. As he take the way about y^e camp, he might well see the estate of the battel. He hasted to come to the port of Marshis Castle, where all the Ladies were: for he perceiued that the Greeke Cavallery gaue back: and to get before them, he halsted his march, to the end that with his ayd they might be encouraged, coming at the instant, that the ramer of humane harts, the sonne of Venus, attended his coming: for passing before their windowes, that the Ladies might see, and bee scene by him, delighted with his brauery, and the more, for that he came in their ayd, he looked by chaunce, & saw his life, enclosed in a sweet death: for as Rosabella the daughter of Rosacler did shine like the Sun at noone-tide, hee could not resist the heauens which came from her beauty, but that he must yelde, giuing her his soule in exchange, for the pleasure which hee consequed in beholding her: neither did she so escape from his brauery, but that she thought him to be one of the most gallant youths in the world (which in deed was true.) With this new alteration, marshalling his troopes, he stayed, hee was fofull to see himselfe by his fathers direction so well employed, who wheeling along the bottome of the valley, had placed himselfe right ouer against the flowres of the

The fourth booke of the third Part

Warthians, which were those, which of all others had done most harme in Grecia. In the triumphant Chariot they threie leanted three great Clarlens, so lowd, that the noyse was heard ouer all the fields. As they left, the mighty yong Darilled stayed no longer, but with the greatest courage of the world, casting by his golden trunchion, taking a great Hauce in his hand, he turned about to behold his Ladie, which to him seemed now moze beautifull then befoze. I know not how to expresse the noyse which hee made when he gaue the onset: for it seemed that all the whole frame of heauen and earth would haue suncke. At the first encounter they threie to the earth aboue 30000. for as those fierce Giants went in the haunt gard, there was no defence against their armes; for they were the totall confusion of the Pagans.

The fierce yong man hauing well imployed his Hauce, drew out a rich sword, wherewith hee began by the rades which he performed, to resemble Hector of Troy: for hee gaue no blow, but ouerthrewe a knight, and sometime, both horse and man. Wherein did Bemboes wilcome appeare, prouiding for either partie; for against this yong man came Brufaldoro with all his people, who had not yet charged: but his valour could not serue the turne: for the Marzarians, to winne their Princes fauour, fought valiantly. Both Captaines met with their swords aloft. The blowes which they gaue were cruell, for they saue the starres within their Helmes. They came againe with others, which made the blood to gush forth at their visors. When they aduanced themselves, beginning one of the most perillous battels of the world. The Africane was moze accustomed to labour: but the yong man, being in his sprouting youth, and being newly wounded with lome, was so ready to strike and retire with his well made horse, that he made the world sweat drops of blood. Neuer was man seene so furious: for perceyuing that he was none of the Crakes, and to see him so valiant, it put him out of his wittes. This fight lasted
but

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

but a while, for the armies coming to ioyne, made them to part, eche of them going where was most danger, the better to shew their valour. But the Mauritanian had a mishap: for as he charged in among those Giants, working wonders, at the last being so many and well angered, they slue his horse: hee leapt from him like a Bird, and on foote he began to defend himselfe so valourously, that no man durst come neere him, untill that they seeing him somewhat wearied with the Lances, which they darted at him a farre off, then those furious Giants drew neere, putting him in such a straight, that he was out of breath upon his knees in the ground.

But the dead bodie which hee had before him, were as good as a Rampart to defend him, especially against horses, so as they could not trample him vnder their feet; and so he prolonged his life: which had bene but a while, if the most strong Brauorance had not come to part the affray, who like as the Sunne parteth the clouds, euen so made he a lane thereto his enemies: some he trod vnder his feete, others he slue with the sword, and those which came neerest to him, he defeated with his fist.

He saw from his high horse, his braue competitor, and being able, would not leaue to giue him assistance, which hee esteemed to bee nobly done, which in deed was verie worthy.

At his coming, hee bereaued foure or fine of them of their liues, and leaping from his horse, he said, Courage, King of Mauritanian; for Brauorance being here, there is no cause of feare, for the gods will graunt thee life, to lose it by my hands, the time being expired which wee haue agreed vpon. These wordes gaue such paine and courage to the most furious Affricane, that with a leape hee came on foote, saying, Because I will not shew my selfe ingratefull for the helpe, which thou, proud Knight, hast giuen mee, therein giuing mee my life, without stirring any one

The fourth booke of the third Parte

Steppe from this place, I would keepe touch with thy desire and my credit: for my valour is not yet so decayed, that I will giue thee any preeminence. Now to doe it (answered the proud Pagan) agreeth not with my honour: but the time will come, wherein I shall make you knowe the valour of my person.

The two couragious warriors could passe no farther forward; for the Giants were so many which came against them, that they had much to doe to recover their horses: but being mounted, seeming to the world to be friends, they began to keepe themselves side by side, so close and in so good earnest, that they did much harme: but they were but two onely, and had lost through the force of the Warriors, above a flight shot of their ground, retiring backe as farre as the Almains which led the haunt herd, with which they began a new fir: but as they were newly come, and the young man led them, there was no resistance in all the army against the force where with his standards marched. All this, in respect of what his father did at his first coming, is nothing: for with the mighty and triumphant Charriot, with those with the Elephants, hee did most all hurt, with so much glittering armour, with such puissance, with such cries and shoutings, that all the campe was troubled. Mercuell Nero, haddest thou seene this spectacle, how much it would haue eased thy mind! for presently streames of blood began to runne out all the field. I speake it not without teares: for the most part of the Almains and Parthians he tare in pieces.

Mercuell Roselia, it sufficeth that thou wast a Romane; to extend thy wrath so farre, as that thou mightest see the Bracke fields dyed with Romane blood, and of the Almains.

Here the Souldan of Niquea seeing his army goe so wrack, considered of his error. Here the Souldan of Egypt repented for comming to his ayd, although another thing grieved him more then this.

The

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

The mightie Andronic, vpon his Chariot cast his eyes about, to see his two friends: and their great hap would, that hee found them in good time; for they were in danger: for they had entred so farre among the Assyrians, which gaue them so much to doe, that the blood flowed out at their wounds, and had wounded Rosamundi with a stab. With a great cry knowing them, hee entred; calling them by their names: His Chariot ouertizels above two hundred to the ground, and when hee saw them at libertie, hee stayed; and lifting vp his Vener, he intreated them to come vp into his Chariot. They presently knew him, for they knew him as themselves: and they all three leapt vp, putting their horses in sure keeping of those Giants, which took care of them. I cannot in so great a warre spend so much time, as particularly to expresse the pleasure they conceiued in seeing their friends, but will leaue it to their consideration which haue felt the like.

In companie they returned to the Camp, making a great slaughter, so as where so euer they went, the Moors lost ground, the Orakes taking more courage, seeing such succours, and most of all when they heard them sound in their Camp, in signe that they were in distress, which was such, that the most part of those which battered the Citie, were constrained of necessity to leaue the batterie, to goe to succour them.

The braue Carlo of Modica and his valiant squire, were no small let vnto them, being so full for the fauour which Poliphebus had done the young man, giuing him his owne companie, for his greater honour. Those of the ancient Minacria, did so long and so valiantly detaine the Pagans, that the Captaine Generall, with his couragious companions, might set vpon the Campe, although that those Princes, whose force was to bee feared, were left to guard the same, and had defended it (notwithstanding that they were surprised) had not those Pillars of humane fortitude led the way, which were Oristoldo, Claridiano, Claramate, Poliphebus,

The fourth booke of the third Part

Rosabel, and the faire Archimilora, with the beloued Florisarte, who went sorrowfully, in hope to see his friend Artimio, and also to know his Ladie. As hee was put in hope by the letter, the furious Spaniards entred, being greedy of spoyles, doing notable harme: for not content to cut, and overthrow the Tents, they presently set them on fire, which in a Paster noister while, was greater then that of Troy.

They are not things to bee written, what those seuen Princes did in this iourney, for I know not whether I shal be beloued or no: for keeping themselves together, they brought death to those in the Campe, which in the middell of them were slaine and troden vnder foote. In lesse then halfe an houre, they had overthrowne all their enemies: they happened all together to enter a Tent, leaning at the entrance fiftie Spaniard Knights for a gard, which would haue held it against Mars, which Tent was the Emperours, where waied an ensigne both the Armes of Rome: all the Ladies of the Princes were there assembled, which were no lesse faire, then those of the Citie.

The seuen warriors entred, being besteed themselves, to see such bygone beautie. At an instant, they all, excepting the faire Queene, put off their Helmes, putting them out of feare, assuring them, that they should haue no harme, notwithstanding the noise which they heard in the Campe: but it gaue them greater, to see some which they loued better then themselves: for Eufronisa with the sight of Rosabel, was stricken speechlesse.

The faire fearefull Arboliada accompanied her in delight. The mightie Generall which was not acquainted with Loue, became suddenly enamoured: for seeing Clabala, the daughter of the mightie Assyrian, so faire and so young: he gaue her his heart for a recompence: they were some of those, which dearly loued, & which endured much, as shall be declared in the fourth part.

The first which spake, was the beloued Tinacrian, to the faire Eufronisa, saying, I haue trauailed with such
paine,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

paine, most excellent Princeesse, seeing my selfe your de-
 fer, and vpon my word, that I haue sought all meanes to
 accomplish it, to bring you to this Knight, pointing to Ro-
 label, to the end that you take such reuenge of him, as your
 beautie deserueth.

With such hazard to these Ladies, valorous Prince of
 Tinacria, I would not that you should haue accomplished
 it, although that therein you haue done me a fauour, accor-
 ding to the hope conceiued of your valour. There is no re-
 uenge to be taken of this Prince: my griefe sufficeth mee,
 which shall serue for a punishment for his unkindnesse. I
 was neuer so (worthie Princeesse) answered Rosabel: the
 much which I owe you, bindeth me to lose my life for your
 sake. They could no longer continue their discourse: for the
 grieuous Spaniards made such a noyse, and such venting, as
 as though the skies would haue fallen.

Let this satisfaction suffice (said the most faire Quene
 of Lira, putting off her rich Helmet, whose rare beautie
 made them all to wonder) untill you come to the Citie,
 where shall want no meanes to fauour your cause. And so
 I beseech you, in behalfe of all these Knights and my selfe,
 you will be pleased to come with vs: for so faire a prize is not
 to be left for any thing in the world: and more, I being the
 cause, and onely instrument which hath ordained it. To
 many of them, it was no griefe to goe prisoners thither, and
 although that others grieved, yet perforce they dissembled
 it. Heere tooke good order herein: for the faire Arbolinda,
 seeing her beloued Prince Florisarte of Argentaria, was
 glad to goe in his Armes, & Clabela, with Oristoldo, which
 was life to the young man.

Eufronisa at length came to see her selfe in the Armes
 of her beloued Britanion, as though that shee had neuer
 beene there before. Claridiano tooke the Sophie his daugh-
 ter, Claramante the kings of Fenicia, Poliphebus & Soul-
 dans of Egypt: all the rest which I leaue out, whose beautie
 was great, the Spaniards tooke, so as they departed with

The fourth booke of the third Part

the most rich bootie of the world, which were sixteen daughters of the chiefeſt Princes in the Armie, with a ſiſter of Benboes, verie young, whole beautie in her time cauſed no ſmall troubles.

There was much to doe to get the greedy Spaniards out of the Campe, untill that they ſaw their Princes goe poſſeſſed and laden with rich ſpoiles vpon the hill, at which time reſcue came from the Armie, but it was too late: for they had already made their boate, and put the ſame in ſafetie: for hauing the hill at their backes, they would haue defended themſelues againſt all the armie. Theſe warriours deſcended at that point, which leadeth downe into the valley, on which ſide the Citie was not battered, for the ſtrength thereof. There they entred with their pray, a better then which, and without blauiſhed, Alexander neuer tooke with all his Donarchie, neither the famous African, much more victorious.

The newes was preſently knowne in the Armie, where the battell was fought of the taking of theſe Ladies, which was an occaſion to encourage the Pagans. Who had ſenethe mighty Benbo, the renowned Bradorante, with the brothers of the War, with this brackie ſayes! They fought not like men: it is not to be imagined what hurt they did: ſourteen knights of the Greeke Emperours chamber, by their hands loſt their liues, & ſoos a number which were troben vnder ſote and weathers: but yet they had the worſer: and although that the Princes were abſent, that was no hindrance to the victory, which they had wholly ended, had not the marlike Sarmata, and Benbo his mighty couſin come to their aide, who ſeeing him fight ſo deſperately, came to him ſaying,

In ſuch times, valurous Captaine, you are to take order, not with your diſliking, but with fortune, which declareth it ſelfe for your enemy: for ſo for all the Armie at the point to bee loſt. The Campe is ſpoiled, the Sea died in your blood, ſo as there is no remedie, but to take this blow with
patience,

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

patience, and know, that it cometh through the small equitte of your cause, which was great, to couet those spoyles which the heauens had prepared for the Whittish Prince. Loke well to it, for you ought to giue ouer a thousand batfels whatsoeuer, rather then to giue cause of offence to your Ladie, whome you make shew to loue so much: and seeing that she is not able to doe you pleasure, put mee in trust, and I will so employ my selfe, as shal be to the contentment of all.

The discreet Ladie had taken off her Helmet; and thereby the Captaine knew her, who wel considering, that what she had said, was wrought by the Almighty hand, and preferred for some great Christian, hee put the matter in the Princesses hands, willing her to doe as best pleased her: although that being so many, which hold themselves agriened, it will bee a hard matter to obtaine any peace, in the middelt of such a tempest, I desire nothing, but that some occasion may bee offered, wherein I may bee able to doe Liriana any seruice. Leauethis charge to me (quoth the Ladie) for I will obtaine it of those which can doe most in this warre.

Shee tooke so good order, that shee perswaded the Souldan of Miquea to peace, seeing how much it concerned him, seeing he thereby should recouer such friends and kinsmen. Shee obtained the like of the Emperour of the Romanes: and all perceiued, being of the losing side, that it better fitted with their Mobilitie, to offer them peace, then when they had the better of the warre. And as of these men depended the commaund of all the rest, and the new enamoured Oristoldo agreeing herein for the loue of his Ladie, with all haste the retreite was sounded betwene both armies, that valiant Ladie being the occasion of all that good: they were parted at an instant (for it behoued them that were ouercome, seeing it was for their good) and the others, to please their Princes, sheathed their swords.

The fourth booke of the third Part

The Pagans would not that night enter into the Citie, because they would take order for their hurt men, and to burie their dead, which were so many, as made all men amazed thereat: from the Citie they sent many salutes to the Campe, which were not a little esteemed, for the want which there was thereof in both Campes. There was as great joy, as though there had bene no such slaughter.

All the Crakes alwayted the morning, to goe sooth to receive the Moores: what passed, shall bee declared elsewhere: for certainly with iust reason bee may bee wearie, who hath ended a warre so cruell as was this,

CHAP. XXXI.

How the Princes of the Campe entred into the Citie, and of the feasts which were made them: and the Marriages, which were contracted for the confirmation of the peace.



Sweete is peace (most excellent Prince) that Dion said, that a man was to fight a whole yeere, to enjoy one day of peace: it is so pleasing a good, that it cannot bee valued, being so highly extolled. So said hee which desired it, as Aristophanes: That it grieved not the married man, to eate his bread poorly in peace, although it had protected from a cruell warre.

Well did the famous Bembo understand that, when he so easily yeilded to all that which the Princesse of Lacedaemonia required, who the better to make her doings more famous, had spoken to the most principall gallants, to the

of the Mirroure of Knighthood.

end that the next day they should in her company goe forth (as with her which had ended that which seemed impossible) to receiue the Pagans. They were all content to please her, seeing that therein she had done the like by them. The next day with new beautie, not with any bloody colour, the Sonne hee too himselfe, hastening his course to behold so much bravery as there was among those Gallants, which by that time were gone forth of the imperiall Citie in a well marshalled squadron, all light, with their swords onely, with such costly attyre, as a man would not desire to see more in all his life time.

Betweene Claramante and Claridiano, went the sayre Sarmatia, armed with most rich Armour, which Lirgandeo had giuen her, without any Helmet, and in stead thereof, a coloured hatte of the colour of her Armour. with such costly workmanship, that the price thereof could not bee valued.

In the middest of her brest (so, shee bare no Shield) shee wore Peace paynted so at life, that it was very pleasing to behold it, with these wordes :

The name of peace is passing sweete,
Which to obaine,
Wee ought to take payne.

Shee had so good a grace, besides her beautie, that all men reioyced to see her.

By that time beganne to come forth of the imperiall Pavillion, those mightie Monarchs, the Souldan of Aquena, and the Romane Emperour, Constantius, with the Souldan of Egypt, and the rest of the mightie Kings (inhabiting thereabouts, which came to this most sumptuous sight) being in all above thirty. There were neuer scene

The fourth booke of the third Part

so many together, no; that commanded so many countries, in coming so neere that the one might see the other, the warlike Ladie said,

Soueraigne Princes, and valiant Knights, because you shall know how much the Crakes doe esteeme of the peace graunted on your behalfe, they commend them vnto you, praying you to accept of their Citie at your seruice, wherein they will shew you (in doing you seruice) that, if they fought, it was but to come to enioy this day: there is nothing sweete, but what is gotten with paine, which seeing it hath beene betweene both Campes, it is reason that they both should enioy that which is redounded thereof. Valorous Ladie, answered the courteous Bembo, although it were but to be delighted with your valour and discretion, after so many tempests, they were all employed, and we will accept of the fauour which those Princes offer vs, entering into their Citie, from whence it will be more hard for them againe to put vs out, in peace, then in open warre. They all tooke their way towards the Citie, where was nothing to be seene but Knights and Ladies, the sight whereof exceedingly much pleased the Pagans.

I know not how, discrete reader, I am entred, neither the middle, no; ending of these entertainments: for euen to imagine it, is as much as for mee to wade thorow the swolne Sea ofie-foote. Who is able to describe what Bembo felt, when the faire Liriana came to speake to him, saying, I neuer thought, famous Prince, that your arme should haue wrought me so much displeasure: but now to content you, I will requite you, praying you to dispose of all: for although I haue gone with you in the opinion of a tyrant, I will draw you from that by experience. The young man could not suddainely answer her, vntil that feare was past, and then hee said, Most excellent Princesse, I neuer thought that your beautie would one day come to take compassion of my grieffe, but not to remedie it: I neuer pretended, but that all the whole world might knowe, of what
power

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

power my sorrow was: and if I came to this warre, I was forced thereto, to the end to enjoy the sight of you.

Let those old quarrels proceede no farther (said the most sayre Lindabrides) for hearing of this Prince his valour, I had affected him without offence to Claramante: for having him in our power, he shall see, how much worse it shall be for him to get out of our hands, then from the Crake Princes.

As these things passed, it was a life for Bembo: for it seemed to him that fortune would turne to favour him. The excellent Sarmatia had made such haste, and taken so good order, that shee had procured for Bembo, no lesse then for Rosilura, which was, to give him what hee desired, and her, what shee desired, although that Don Celindo was grieved thereat in his soule, who by Lupertius his order, who was there present, was made knowne to bee Meridian his sonne.

Hee restored to the Assyrian, his sonne, and to the King of Fenicia, and the Sophy theirs: a thing which anew renewed their content, and for them also: for they knewe that their father Selagio was at libertie: who what hee did when hee saue himselfe free, shall bee declared hereafter.

The Emperour of the Romanes was very glad, that Don Celindo was so high a Prince, which was the cause why hee gaue him his daughter.

The sayre Arbolinda, upon the way seeing herselfe in the armes of her beloued Florisarte, told him the effect of all her loue: hee made them to betroth Rosabel, and because that there should bee perpetuall peace, they gaue to the prince of Piques, Lindoriano: the sayre Timacrian, Rosilura, whom hee loued as his soule: to Astorildoes lot, fell the faire Clarincea of Celandia: and to the Prince of Fraunce Clarindo, the sayre English Artemisa: to the Princes of Bohemia and Hungarie, to the one, the sayre

The fourth booke of the third Part

Troyla, and to the other, the faire Feniciāna, after to Don Argante.

The mightie Tartarian Darisco was so enamoured of the young Rosabela, that her Greeke parents were glad to giue her, seeing how much they were beholding to him, which cut the heart of the knight with the starrs, so thereupon grew a great quarrell, which lasted long, to the losse of much blood, as you shall heare.

All these marriages were deferred for the space of fifteene dayes, because that Bembo was to be christened, and Poliphebus and his wife, with Lindoriano and his wife.

Triumphes are a preparing, which will bee reported ouer all the world. In the meane time, by an agreement, the Moores discharged their Raides, remainging for ouerrie Monarch, twelue Gallies. They set at libertie all prisoners, and amongst the rest, Epirabio, whom, as hee had deserued, they gaue Lisiana, which hee so much desired. The great Assyrian, Don Clarisel (by the consent of all the Greeke Princes) married with Floralisa.

In this pleasure, remained all those Princes and fayre Ladies, which of all the world were the flowre, when as Selagio framed a new reuenge; for herein is crueltie bepaynted in his colours: hee obtained so much by ouerturning Lupertius his bookes, that hee came to finde this prophesie:

Into Mars his Castle, no man shalbe suffered to enter, but him which mounting vpon the hill Olympus, shall winne the passage, and after that hee is entred, shall bereaue Mars of his Armes.

Hee was verie glad, imagining that no man could doe it: and hee stealing away the greatest part of the Ladies, which were busied with pleasing feasting, being so hard to set them at libertie, hee should remaigne somewhat satisfied.

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

hed. In a moment hee put it in execution: for taking a Chariot with flaming fire, which hee brought into the hall at Constantinople, so as no man could sturre, with such lightnings and thunder, as though heaven and earth should haue come together: which being past, there were missing the fayrest Ladies of the world, which were Policena, Helena, Aurelia, and Rosabela, with the faire Artemisa: and al the Princesses, the daughter of the Scythie, of the Assyrian, of the Phenician, Troyla, and Bembo his sister, although but a girle, and the Souveraine of Egypt. All the Court was in an vppore, and there would goe to seeke them particularly, Rosabel his sonnes, and hee with the starres, with the great Tartarian: but in the meane time in came Nauato, who pacified them, saying, that then to goe to seeke them, was to no purpose: for hee found, that they should not so soon be set at libertie: for there was a prophetic, that untill that the disguised Lion should hold the Queene in his pannes at the poynt of death, who loued him as her selfe, hauing wounded her, and set her in such manner, not springing from thence the furious Wasiliske, which may breake open that which is lockt, it shall be impossible for the world to see the inclosed Symphes. So as, excellent Princes, it behooueth you to make merry (although there be so many Ladies missing) by reason of the peace which hath cost you so much: and because I haue much to doe, and all for your seruice, I can stay no longer, neither see any body, untill all be accomplished: and so he presently vanished, leaving both the Princes and Princesses somewhat satisfied, in that they knew that they were in some part, whither they might goe to seeke them. And so all the gallant youths began to prepare for the feast, untill that one day, all the Ladies passing their time merrily with their Gallants in the midst of the great hall, with all those mighty Princes, discoursing of pleasant matters, the famous Brauorante Hung with his owne honour, rose vp, and began in this maner:

The fourth booke of the third Part

CHAP. XXXII.

How the redoubted Brauorante required the braue Brusaldoro to performe the challenge past and agreed vpon, and of the cruell battell which was betweene them, with that which followed.



Touch in honour (most excellent Prince) is of such force, that there is no pleasure taken in any thing, untill that it bee defaced, or the breach repayed: wee haue an example heereof in the most mighty Brauorante, who being stung with the sight of his fathers Armes in another mans hands, it made him starke mad: and it was a sufficient paine, sith hee felt not how great it would bee to him, to see Floralisia married: but his wits were so troubled with this griefe, that it gaue no place to feele any other, which he plainly discovered: for nothing regarding what discontentment hee should giue therein, in time of so much content, he stood vp and said,

The gods are my witnesse, Soueraigne Princes, what pleasure I conceiued, to see you reconciled for so many yeeres, and that after that you haue shewed the heights of your displeasure, it endeth in such joy, so fixed, that it is needlesse to feare that fortune may alter it.

In generall, wee are all bidizious: for if the Greekes may glorie in that name, the Pagans may also weare garlands of greene oke: but in particular I alone cannot toy in this name, although that for some respects I haue so much deferred that, which ought not to be endured for a minute: and how can it be, that I should line contented, seeing

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

ing my fathers Armes in the handes of Brufaldoro, so much defended by the Grekes, that therein they haue bound mee to doe them seruice so long as I liue: and hauing twise giuen ouer the battaile, for the loue of my Lady Floralisa (and a hundred would:) but shee deferred it vntill the end of these battailes: and seeing that they are so well ended, there is no reason why it should be any longer delayed: for it is a great stayne to my honour, and much for this King to haue challenged mee. And heere, with the Barbarian gaue an end to his discourse, remaining so serious, that all men marueyled at the order which he obserued in his challenge.

The braue Brufaldoro stood by, and with that fiercenesse wherewith the heauens had endued him, hee sayd, I would, Brauorante, long since haue accomplished thy desire: but in time of such ioy as this, to trouble them with new warres after so many past, it is rather a signe of pride, then of any thing else: and because thou shalt knowe, that if I tooke those Armes, I meane to defend them, to morowe I will in the place fasten them to a Lance, from whence if thou take them not, it will bee for want of that valour, whereof thou so much vauntest.

The Pagan leapt out, crying, It is to bee delayed no longer: for there is time enough betwixt this and night to chastise thee.

The braue African had set vpon him, had not the most mightie Timacrian kept betweene them, at whose request it was deferred till the next day. It was a marueylous thing to see; for before that Titans Messengers were departed from their lodgings, the place was all full of people, which attended the sight of the horrible battell. As they were courageous, so were they both desirous: and it seemed to bee one of the most sightly battels of the world, and with much reason: for therein were fewe that could match them.

The fourth booke of the third Part

All the Grækes discoursed of the successe thereof, but durst leane no more to the one then the other, not to disgrace eyther, although that in secret, some more affected Braucorante, for that which they had seene him doe in those toares.

When Apollo began to shew his golden lockes bathed in the Spanish seas, all the Court began to stirre: some set vp tables: others, scaffolds: there was nothing in the place, but was put to vse.

When came forth the Græke Ladies, so sayre, that if the Sunne had not taken care of those warriors, hee could haue taken no benefit of the counsell which he gaue to his ionne, it would so much haue troubled him to see so much rare beauty together, seeing that hee onely for one, left his abode in the heauens, living in a rude office, and held it for greater glozie, then in his rich Charriot to compasse the heauens, who seemed to say, which was for that, that at one side of the place, the two famous warriors presented themselves: with the one, came all the Affricanes: he would not haue his armes brought to him, for hee came in with his Beauer downe, and with his Launce in his hand, with so angrie a pace, that there was great hope of him: hee was covered all ouer with cleane and well tempered Steele, enamelled Greene, with many knots of gold.

In the middell of the Shield, which was of the same colour, hee had his Ladies picture, when hee tooke her from Loure Giant, which he due in requitall for their presumption, with this mot in the borders:

A strong conceite in a louing mind,
Maketh easie what euer it doth find.

Hee rode round about the place, with a greater grace then Mars, casting at one side thereof, a great Launce to be set vp, and thereon to set vp the Armes which had belonged

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

longed to Brauorante: to the end, that hee who gat the victorie, should beare them away for a Trophe and token of his valour.

Hee presently tooke his place, attending the great Scythian, who had chalenged the famous African, if euer there were any in that land.

On the other side came in (in valour) the rare Brauorante, with all the Egyptians (that were left) in his company.

It was a thing worthy to be seene by the Greekes, to see how proudly hee came in, all in cleane tempered Steele, from the head vnto the foote: his colours were Lyon-colour, with many streames of greene, and the skirtes gilt.

There was neuer seene in the world (except it had bene a Giant) a greater or a goodlier Warriour: and in remembrance of the Ladie which hee had chosen for his god, hee bare her paynted so at life in his shield, as when hee met her in the kingdome of Mauritanie, where hee fought for her, as in the beginning of the third part is declared.

The borders were so set with precious stones of such inestimable price, that there was no sayre thewe to be seene. Therein was also a Warriour farre in loue, and betwene the two, these words:

Well may hee presume to winne,
Who first found you,
And by his seruice bound you.

Hee came in, with a sarious aspect confronting his aduersarie. The Judges of the field were the two famous Queenes of beautie: for the African chose for his part, the fayre Archiflora: and the great Brauorante chose his goddess Floralisa, which doing that, which is that office

The fourth booke of the third Part

did appertaine, appointing them an equall space for their carriere, armes, and sunne, they withdrew them to one side, to giue the more roomie.

Although this be the last, faire Dames, there is no reason, that he which in the beginning craved leave to begin this Dilorie, and to giue it, in the middle should now leave to repaire to your beauties, to giue it a pleasing ending, and to extoll the blowes of the most famous warriors vpon the earth: for with angrie paces they set themselves face to face, and the sunne betwene them both staying his course, because they should hasten theirs; which they did more swift then the fresh wind in Autumne.

None of those which beheld them, durst cast their eye aside, for feare to lose the sight of the effect of their swift carriere. They performed it (gallant Ladies) with greater noyse, then the raging Sea maketh, when it threatneth the highest heavens, and being vnable to reach vnto them, contenteth it selfe with beating the rockes vpon the shores side. And although that their Launces had bene Shippes masts, they would haue broken them in small peeces: for they came more strongly seated in their Saddles, then any rocke in the Mountaines, and their Launces being broken into splinters with the force of their encounter, flew into the ayre cleane out of sight. I beleue they flew so high, as to the Throne where the angrie god maketh his abode, who did make their paralelle encounter: they past one by another with a better grace, then he could haue done. They returned in the ayre with their swordes in their hands, with so fierce a countenance, and so proud an aspect, that the most valiant of the Greekes cast their cloakes ouer their faces, because they would not see it, all their blood of their bodies being retired to their hearts.

And seeing that Claramante was afraid, and Claridiano shynke aside, what shall my wearied pen, and my dul short wit, but make an end of this booke, entreating pardon

of the Mirrour of Knighthood.

don for the faults which are in them all, not looking into them, as into a worke of so tender yeeres; but onely into my desire to glue content: What being now entred into moze ryper yeeres, I doe promise the fourth part: in the which, an end shall bee given of this terrible battell, and also of the loue of the vnkynne Crake, with the noble acts of the sonnes of Eufronia: and also of the Knight with the Barres, with the mighty Darisles: for the things which they did in seeking the Ladies, were wonderfull to the world, which both another encourage mee to treat of their loues, which were not comparable with the Quenes of Aira.

Wherefore (worthy Ladies) excuse my errors, and my so abrupt giving over this Villoyle: wherof if I may be assured, I shall begin it with courage, onely to give you contentment.

FINIS.



~~John at my Lodging~~

ma l R R P P R R.

to R n
17

R P

John Burroughs

ma

D
h

